
**Petroleum, petrochemical and natural gas
industries — Fired heaters for general
refinery service**

*Industries du pétrole, de la pétrochimie et du gaz naturel —
Réchauffeurs à brûleurs pour usage général dans les raffineries*

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012



STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012



COPYRIGHT PROTECTED DOCUMENT

© ISO 2012

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either ISO at the address below or ISO's member body in the country of the requester.

ISO copyright office
Case postale 56 • CH-1211 Geneva 20
Tel. + 41 22 749 01 11
Fax + 41 22 749 09 47
E-mail copyright@iso.org
Web www.iso.org

Published in Switzerland

Contents

Page

Foreword	v
Introduction	vi
1 Scope	1
2 Normative references	1
3 Terms, definitions, abbreviated terms and symbols	4
3.1 Terms and definitions	4
3.2 Abbreviated terms and symbols	11
4 General	12
4.1 Pressure design code	12
4.2 Regulations	12
4.3 Heater nomenclature	12
5 Proposals	16
5.1 Purchaser's responsibilities	16
5.2 Vendor's responsibilities	16
5.3 Documentation	16
5.4 Final reports	18
6 Design considerations	18
6.1 Process design	18
6.2 Combustion design	19
6.3 Mechanical design	19
7 Tubes	20
7.1 General	20
7.2 Extended surface	21
7.3 Materials	22
8 Headers	22
8.1 General	22
8.2 Plug headers	23
8.3 Return bends	24
8.4 Materials	24
9 Piping, terminals and manifolds	25
9.1 General	25
9.2 Allowable movement and loads	26
9.3 Materials	28
10 Tube supports	28
10.1 General	28
10.2 Loads and allowable stress	29
10.3 Materials	30
11 Refractories and insulation	31
11.1 General	31
11.2 Brick and tile construction	32
11.3 Castable construction	33
11.4 Ceramic-fibre construction	33
11.5 Multi-component lining construction	35
11.6 Materials	35
12 Structures and appurtenances	36
12.1 General	36

12.2	Structures	36
12.3	Header boxes, doors and ports	37
12.4	Ladders, platforms and stairways	37
12.5	Materials	38
13	Stacks, ducts and breeching	39
13.1	General	39
13.2	Design considerations	39
13.3	Design methods	41
13.4	Static design	41
13.5	Wind-induced vibration design	42
13.6	Materials	43
14	Burners and auxiliary equipment	43
14.1	Burners	43
14.2	Sootblowers	48
14.3	Fans and drivers	48
14.4	Dampers and damper controls for stacks and ducts	48
15	Instrument and auxiliary connections	49
15.1	Flue gas and air	49
15.2	Process fluid temperature	50
15.3	Auxiliary connections	50
15.4	Tube-skin thermocouples	51
15.5	Access to connections	51
16	Shop fabrication and field erection	51
16.1	General	51
16.2	Structural-steel fabrication	52
16.3	Coil fabrication	53
16.4	Painting and galvanizing	54
16.5	Refractories and insulation	54
16.6	Preparation for shipment	55
16.7	Field erection	56
17	Inspection, examination and testing	56
17.1	General	56
17.2	Weld examination	57
17.3	Castings examination	57
17.4	Examination of other components	58
17.5	Testing	59
Annex A	(informative) Equipment data sheets	61
Annex B	(informative) Purchaser's checklist	90
Annex C	(informative) Proposed shop-assembly conditions	94
Annex D	(normative) Stress curves for use in the design of tube-support elements	96
Annex E	(normative) Centrifugal fans for fired-heater systems	111
Annex F	(normative) Air preheat systems for fired process heaters	128
Annex G	(informative) Measurement of efficiency of fired process heaters	186
Annex H	(informative) Stack design	254
Annex I	(informative) Measurement of noise from fired-process heaters	264
Bibliography		300

Foreword

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) is a worldwide federation of national standards bodies (ISO member bodies). The work of preparing International Standards is normally carried out through ISO technical committees. Each member body interested in a subject for which a technical committee has been established has the right to be represented on that committee. International organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO, also take part in the work. ISO collaborates closely with the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) on all matters of electrotechnical standardization.

International Standards are drafted in accordance with the rules given in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

The main task of technical committees is to prepare International Standards. Draft International Standards adopted by the technical committees are circulated to the member bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75 % of the member bodies casting a vote.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of patent rights. ISO shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

ISO 13705 was prepared by Technical Committee ISO/TC 67, *Materials, equipment and offshore structures for petroleum, petrochemical and natural gas industries*, Subcommittee SC 6, *Processing equipment and systems*.

This third edition cancels and replaces the second edition (ISO 13705:2006), which has been technically revised.

Introduction

Users of this International Standard should be aware that further or differing requirements may be needed for individual applications. This International Standard is not intended to inhibit a vendor from offering, or the purchaser from accepting, alternative equipment or engineering solutions for the individual application. This may be particularly applicable where there is innovative or developing technology. Where an alternative is offered, the vendor should identify any variations from this International Standard and provide details.

In International Standards, the SI system of units is used. Where practical in this International Standard, US Customary (USC) units are included in brackets for information.

A bullet (●) at the beginning of a clause or subclause indicates that either a decision is required or further information is to be provided by the purchaser. This information should be indicated on data sheets (see examples in Annex A) or stated in the enquiry or purchase order. Decisions should be indicated on a checklist (see example in Annex B).

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012

Petroleum, petrochemical and natural gas industries — Fired heaters for general refinery service

1 Scope

This International Standard specifies requirements and gives recommendations for the design, materials, fabrication, inspection, testing, preparation for shipment, and erection of fired heaters, air heaters (APHs), fans and burners for general refinery service.

This International Standard is not intended to apply to the design of steam reformers or pyrolysis furnaces.

2 Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

ISO 1461, *Hot dip galvanized coatings on fabricated iron and steel articles — Specifications and test methods*

ISO 1940-1:2003, *Mechanical vibration — Balance quality requirements for rotors in a constant (rigid) state — Part 1: Specification and verification of balance tolerances*

ISO 8501-1, *Preparation of steel substrates before application of paints and related products — Visual assessment of surface cleanliness — Part 1: Rust grades and preparation grades of uncoated steel substrates and of steel substrates after overall removal of previous coatings*

ISO 10684, *Fasteners — Hot dip galvanized coatings*

ISO 13704, *Petroleum, petrochemical and natural gas industries — Calculation of heater-tube thickness in petroleum refineries*

ISO 15649, *Petroleum and natural gas industries — Piping*

IEC 60079 (all parts), *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres*

EN 10025-2:2004¹, *Hot rolled products of structural steels — Part 2: Technical delivery conditions for non-alloy structural steels*

ABMA Standard 9², *Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings*

AMCA 210³, *Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating*

AMCA 801:2001, *Industrial Process/Power Generation Fans — Specifications and Guidelines*

¹ European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Rue de Stassart 36, B-1050 Brussels, Belgium.

² American Bearing Manufacturers Association, 2025 M. Street, NW, Suite 800, Washington, DC 20036, USA.

³ Air Movement and Control Association, 30 West University Drive, Arlington Heights, IL 60004, USA.

ASME B 17.1⁴, *Keys and Keyseats*

ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, *Pressure Vessels*

ASTM A 36⁵, *Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel*

ASTM A 53, *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless*

ASTM A 105, *Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications*

ASTM A 106, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*

ASTM A 123, *Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products*

ASTM A 143, *Standard Practice for Safeguarding Against Embrittlement of Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel Products and Procedure for Detecting Embrittlement*

ASTM A 153, *Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware*

ASTM A 181, *Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings, for General-Purpose Piping*

ASTM A 182, *Standard Specification for Forged or Rolled Alloy and Stainless Steel Pipe Flanges, Forged Fittings, and Valves and Parts for High-Temperature Service*

ASTM A 192, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Boiler Tubes for High-Pressure Service*

ASTM A 193, *Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High-Temperature or High-Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications*

ASTM A 194, *Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure or High-Temperature Service, or Both*

ASTM A 209, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon-Molybdenum Alloy-Steel Boiler and Superheater Tubes*

ASTM A 210, *Standard Specification for Seamless Medium-Carbon Steel Boiler and Superheater Tubes*

ASTM A 213, *Standard Specification for Seamless Ferritic and Austenitic Alloy-Steel Boiler, Superheater, and Heat-Exchanger Tubes*

ASTM A 216, *Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, Suitable for Fusion Welding, for High-Temperature Service*

ASTM A 217, *Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Martensitic Stainless and Alloy, for Pressure-Containing Parts, Suitable for High-Temperature Service*

ASTM A 234, *Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service*

ASTM A 240, *Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications*

ASTM A 242, *Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel*

ASTM A 283, *Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates*

ASTM A 297, *Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Iron-Chromium and Iron-Chromium-Nickel, Heat Resistant, for General Application*

ASTM A 307, *Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength*

4 American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10017, USA.

5 American Society for Testing and Materials, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, USA.

- ASTM A 312, *Standard Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes*
- ASTM A 320, *Standard Specification for Alloy Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for Low-Temperature Service*
- ASTM A 325, *Standard Specification for Structural Bolts, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength*
- ASTM A 335, *Standard Specification for Seamless Ferritic Alloy-Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*
- ASTM A 351, *Standard Specification for Castings, Austenitic, for Pressure-Containing Parts*
- ASTM A 376, *Standard Specification for Seamless Austenitic Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Central-Station Service*
- ASTM A 384, *Standard Practice for Safeguarding Against Warpage and Distortion During Hot-Dip Galvanizing of Steel Assemblies*
- ASTM A 385, *Standard Practice for Providing High-Quality Zinc Coatings (Hot-Dip)*
- ASTM A 387, *Standard Specification for Pressure Vessel Plates, Alloy Steel, Chromium-Molybdenum*
- ASTM A 403, *Standard Specification for Wrought Austenitic Stainless Steel Piping Fittings*
- ASTM A 447, *Standard Specification for Steel Castings, Chromium-Nickel-Iron Alloy (25-12 Class), for High-Temperature Service*
- ASTM A 560, *Standard Specification for Castings, Chromium-Nickel Alloy*
- ASTM A 572, *Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel*
- ASTM A 608, *Standard Specification for Centrifugally Cast Iron-Chromium-Nickel High-Alloy Tubing for Pressure Application at High Temperatures*
- ASTM B 366, *Standard Specification for Factory-Made Wrought Nickel and Nickel Alloy Fittings*
- ASTM B 407, *Standard Specification for Nickel-Iron-Chromium Alloy Seamless Pipe and Tube*
- ASTM B 564, *Standard Specification for Nickel Alloy Forgings*
- ASTM B 633, *Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel*
- ASTM C 27, *Standard Classification of Fireclay and High-Alumina Refractory Brick*
- ASTM C 155, *Standard Classification of Insulating Firebrick*
- ASTM C 332, *Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Insulating Concrete*
- ASTM C 401, *Standard Classification of Alumina and Alumina-Silicate Castable Refractories*
- ASTM C 612, *Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation*
- AWS⁶ D 1.1, *Structural Welding Code — Steel*
- AWS D 14.6, *Specification for Welding of Rotating Elements of Equipment*
- NFPA 70⁷, *National Electrical Code*
- SSPC SP 6/NACE No 3⁸, *Commercial Blast Cleaning*

6 American Welding Society, 550 NW Le Jeune Road, Miami, FL 33126, USA.

7 National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101, USA.

8 The Society for Protective Coatings, 40, 24th Street, Pittsburgh, PA 15222-4643, USA.

3 Terms, definitions, abbreviated terms and symbols

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

NOTE Terms and definitions related to centrifugal fans are given in Annex E.

3.1 Terms and definitions

3.1.1

air heater

air preheater

APH

heat transfer apparatus through which combustion air is passed and heated by a medium of higher temperature, such as combustion products, steam or other fluid

3.1.2

anchor

tieback

metallic or refractory device that holds the refractory or insulation in place

3.1.3

arch

flat or sloped portion of the heater radiant section opposite the floor

3.1.4

atomizer

device used to reduce a liquid fuel oil to a fine mist, using steam, air or mechanical means

3.1.5

backup layer

refractory layer behind the hot-face layer

3.1.6

balanced-draught heater

heater that uses forced-draught fans to supply combustion air and induced-draught fans to remove flue gases

3.1.7

breeching

heater section where flue gases are collected after the last convection coil for transmission to the stack or the outlet ductwork

3.1.8

bridgewall

gravity wall

wall that separates two adjacent heater zones

3.1.9

bridgewall temperature

temperature of flue gas leaving the radiant section

3.1.10

burner

device that introduces fuel and air into a heater at the desired velocities, turbulence and concentration to establish and maintain proper ignition and combustion

NOTE Burners are classified by the type of fuel fired, such as oil, gas, or a combination of gas and oil, which may be designated as "dual fuel" or "combination".

3.1.11**butterfly damper**

single-blade damper, which pivots about its centre

3.1.12**casing**

metal plate used to enclose the fired heater

3.1.13**castable**

insulating concrete poured or gunned in place to form a rigid refractory shape or structure

3.1.14**ceramic fibre**

fibrous refractory insulation which can be in the form of refractory ceramic fibre (RCF) or man-made vitreous fibre (MMVF)

NOTE Applicable forms include bulk, blanket, board, modules, paper, coatings, pumpables and vacuum-formed shapes.

3.1.15**convection section**

portion of the heater in which the heat is transferred to the tubes primarily by convection

3.1.16**corbel**

projection from the refractory surface generally used to prevent flue gas from bypassing the tubes of the convection section if they are on a staggered pitch

3.1.17**corrosion allowance**

material thickness added to allow for material loss during the design life of the component

3.1.18**corrosion rate**

rate of reduction in the material thickness due to chemical attack from the process fluid or flue gas or both

3.1.19**crossover**

interconnecting piping between any two heater-coil sections

3.1.20**damper**

device for introducing a variable resistance in order to regulate the flow of flue gas or air

3.1.21**direct-APH**

heat exchanger that transfers heat directly between the flue gas and the combustion air

NOTE A regenerative APH uses heated rotating elements and a recuperative design uses stationary tubes, plates or cast-iron elements to separate the two heating media.

3.1.22**draught**

negative pressure (vacuum) of the air and/or flue gas measured at any point in the heater

3.1.23**draught loss**

pressure drop (including buoyancy effect) through duct conduits or across tubes and equipment in air and flue gas systems

3.1.24

duct

conduit for air or flue gas flow

3.1.25

fuel efficiency

total heat absorbed divided by the total input of heat derived from the combustion of fuel only (lower heating value basis)

NOTE This definition excludes sensible heat of the fuels and applies to the net amount of heat exported from the unit.

3.1.26

thermal efficiency

total heat absorbed divided by the total input of heat derived from the combustion of fuel plus sensible heats from air, fuel and any atomizing medium

3.1.27

erosion

reduction in material thickness due to mechanical attack from a fluid

3.1.28

excess air

amount of air above the stoichiometric requirement for complete combustion

NOTE Excess air is expressed as a percentage.

3.1.29

extended surface

heat-transfer surface in the form of fins or studs attached to the heat-absorbing surface

3.1.30

extension ratio

ratio of total outside exposed surface to the outside surface of the bare tube

3.1.31

flue gas

gaseous product of combustion including excess air

3.1.32

forced-draught heater

heater for which combustion air is supplied by a fan or other mechanical means

3.1.33

fouling allowance

factor to allow for a layer of residue that increases the pressure drop

NOTE 1 This residue is usually a build-up of coke or scale on the inner surface of a coil.

NOTE 2 The fouling allowance is used in calculating the fouled pressure drop.

3.1.34

fouling resistance

factor used to calculate the overall heat transfer coefficient

NOTE The inside fouling resistance is used to calculate the maximum metal temperature for design. The external fouling resistance is used to compensate the loss of performance due to deposits on the external surface of the tubes or extended surface.

3.1.35**guillotine
isolation blind**

single-blade device used to isolate equipment or heaters

3.1.36**header
return bend**

cast or wrought fitting shaped in a 180° bend and used to connect two or more tubes

3.1.37**header box**

internally insulated compartment, separated from the flue gas stream, which is used to enclose a number of headers or manifolds

NOTE Access is afforded by means of hinged doors or removable panels.

3.1.38**heat absorption**

total heat absorbed by the coils, excluding any combustion air preheat

3.1.39**average heat flux density**

heat absorbed divided by the exposed heating surface of the coil section

NOTE Average flux density for an extended-surface tube is indicated on a bare surface basis with extension ratio noted.

3.1.40**maximum heat flux density**

maximum local rate of heat transfer in the coil section

3.1.41**total heat release**

heat liberated from the specified fuel, using the lower heating value of the fuel

3.1.42**volumetric heat release**

heat released (net) divided by the net volume of the radiant section, excluding the coils and refractory dividing walls

3.1.43**higher heating value
gross heating value**

total heat obtained from the combustion of a specified fuel at 15 °C (60 °F)

3.1.44**lower heating value
net heating value**

higher heating value minus the latent heat of vaporization of the water formed by combustion of hydrogen in the fuel

3.1.45**hot-face layer**

refractory layer exposed to the highest temperatures in a multilayer or multi-component lining

3.1.46**hot-face temperature**

temperature of the refractory surface in contact with the flue gas or heated combustion air

3.1.47

indirect APH

fluid-to-air heat-transfer device

NOTE The heat transfer can be accomplished by using a heat-transfer fluid, process stream or utility stream that has been heated by the flue gas or other means. A heat pipe APH uses a vaporizing/condensing fluid to transfer heat between the flue gas and air.

3.1.48

induced-draught heater

heater that uses a fan to remove flue gases and to maintain a negative pressure in the heater to induce combustion air without a forced-draught fan

3.1.49

interface temperature

calculated temperature between each layer of multilayer or multi-component refractory construction

3.1.50

jump over

interconnecting pipework within a heater coil section

3.1.51

louvre damper

damper consisting of several blades, each of which pivots about its centre and is linked to the other blades for simultaneous operation

3.1.52

manifold

chamber for the collection and distribution of fluid to or from multiple parallel flow paths

3.1.53

man-made vitreous fibre

MMVF

synthetic amorphous glass insulation fibre, based on a calcium, magnesium and silicate chemistry, that has enhanced solubility in body fluids

3.1.54

metal fibre reinforcement

stainless-steel needles added to castable for improved toughness and durability

3.1.55

monolithic lining

single-component lining system

3.1.56

mortar

refractory-material preparation used for laying and bonding refractory bricks

3.1.57

multi-component lining

refractory system consisting of two or more layers of different refractory types

NOTE Examples of refractory types are castable, insulating firebrick, firebrick, block, board and ceramic fibre.

3.1.58

multilayer lining

refractory system consisting of two or more layers of the same refractory type

3.1.59

natural-draught heater

heater in which a stack effect induces the combustion air and removes the flue gases

3.1.60

normal heat release

design heat absorption of the heater divided by the calculated fuel efficiency

3.1.61

pass

stream

flow circuit consisting of one or more tubes in series

3.1.62

pilot

small burner that provides ignition energy to light the main burner

3.1.63

plenum

windbox

chamber surrounding the burners that is used to distribute air to the burners or reduce combustion noise

3.1.64

plug header

cast return bend provided with one or more openings for the purpose of inspection or mechanical tube cleaning

3.1.65

pressure design code

recognized pressure vessel standard specified or agreed by the purchaser

EXAMPLE ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII.

3.1.66

pressure drop

difference between the inlet and the outlet static pressures between termination points, excluding the static differential head

3.1.67

primary air

portion of the total combustion air that first mixes with the fuel

3.1.68

protective coating

corrosion-resistant material applied to a metal surface

EXAMPLE Coating on casing plates behind porous refractory materials to protect against sulfur in the flue gases.

3.1.69

radiant section

portion of the heater in which heat is transferred to the tubes primarily by radiation

3.1.70

radiation loss

setting loss

heat lost to the surroundings from the casing of the heater and the ducts and auxiliary equipment (when heat recovery systems are used)

3.1.71

secondary air

air supplied to the fuel to supplement primary air

3.1.72

setting

heater casing, brickwork, refractory and insulation, including the tiebacks

3.1.73

shield section

shock section

tubes that shield the remaining convection-section tubes from direct flame radiation

3.1.74

sootblower

device used to remove soot or other deposits from heat-absorbing surfaces in the convection section

NOTE Steam is normally the medium used for soot-blowing.

3.1.75

stack

vertical conduit used to discharge flue gas to the atmosphere

3.1.76

strake

spoiler

metal attachment to a stack that can prevent the formation of von Karman vortices that can cause wind-induced vibration

3.1.77

structural design code

structural design standard specified or agreed by the purchaser

EXAMPLE International Building Code.

3.1.78

target wall

reradiating wall

vertical refractory firebrick wall which is exposed to direct flame impingement on one or both sides

3.1.79

temperature allowance

number of degrees Celsius (Fahrenheit) to be added to the process fluid temperature to account for flow maldistribution and operating unknowns

NOTE The temperature allowance is added to the calculated maximum tube-metal temperature or the equivalent tube-metal temperature to obtain the design metal temperature

3.1.80

terminal

flanged or welded connection to or from the coil providing for inlet and outlet of fluids

3.1.81

tube guide

device used with vertical tubes to restrict horizontal movement while allowing the tube to expand axially

3.1.82

tube retainer

device used to restrain horizontal radiant tubes from lifting off the intermediate tube supports during operation

3.1.83

tube support

tube sheet

device used to support tubes

3.1.84**vapour barrier**

metallic foil placed between layers of refractory as a barrier to flue gas flow

3.2 Abbreviated terms and symbols**3.2.1 Abbreviated terms**

APH air preheater

NO_x oxides of nitrogen, i.e. nitrous oxide, nitric oxide

PMI positive materials identification

SCR selective catalytic reduction

3.2.2 Symbols

C fitting loss coefficient from Table F.2

C_1 pressure-drop correction factor for temperature taken from Figure F.8 b)

C_2 roughness correction factor, as follows:

— very rough (e.g. brick):	1,0
— medium-rough (e.g. castable refractory):	0,68
— smooth (e.g. unlined steel):	0,45

$d_{\max}$ largest diameter

d duct inside diameter, in millimetres or inches

D shell diameter, expressed in millimetres (inches)

F_{yr} minimum yield strength of ring stiffener at the shell design temperature, expressed in newtons per square millimetre (pounds per square inch)

F_{ys} minimum yield strength of shell material at design temperature, expressed in newtons per square millimetre (pounds per square inch)

h stack height, expressed in metres (feet)

h_H higher heating value

h_L lower heating value

H_s ring spacing, expressed in millimetres (inches)

M maximum circumferential moment per unit length of shell, expressed in newton metres per metre (inch-pounds per inch)

ΔP corrected pressure drop per 30 linear metres (100 linear feet), expressed in mm H₂O (in H₂O)

ΔP_1 uncorrected pressure drop taken from Figure F.8 a)

$q_{m,a}$	areic mass flow rate, in kilograms per square metre per second ($\text{kg/m}^2\cdot\text{s}^{-1}$) or pounds per square foot per second ($\text{lb/ft}^2\cdot\text{s}^{-1}$)
S_C	Scruton number
t	corroded shell thickness, expressed in millimetres (inches)
v	linear velocity, in metres per second [feet per second (ft/s)]
v_c	critical wind velocity
X	calculated value, expressed in metres (feet)
Z	section modulus of ring, expressed in cubic millimetres (cubic inches)
α_{cr}	critical compressive stress, in newtons per square metre (pounds per square inch)
δ	permitted deviation (execution tolerance)
ρ	flow density, in kilograms per cubic metre (kg/m^3) [pounds per cubic foot (lb/ft^3)]
μ	viscosity, in millipascal-seconds (mPa·s) [centipoise (cP)]

4 General

4.1 Pressure design code

- The pressure design code shall be specified or agreed by the purchaser. Pressure components shall comply with the pressure design code and the supplemental requirements in this International Standard.

4.2 Regulations

- The purchaser and the vendor shall mutually determine the measures required to comply with any local or national regulations applicable to the equipment.

4.3 Heater nomenclature

In a fired heater, heat liberated by the combustion of fuels is transferred to fluids contained in tubular coils within an internally insulated enclosure. The type of heater is normally described by the structural configuration, radiant-tube coil configuration and burner arrangement. Some examples of structural configurations are cylindrical, box, cabin and multi-cell box. Examples of radiant-tube coil configurations include vertical, horizontal, helical and arbor. Examples of burner arrangements include up-fired, down-fired and wall-fired. The wall-fired arrangement can be further classified as sidewall, endwall and multilevel.

Figure 1 illustrates some typical heater types.

Figure 2 illustrates typical burner arrangements.

Various combinations of Figures 1 and 2 can be used. For example, Figure 1 c) can employ burner arrangements as in Figure 2 a), b) or c). Similarly, Figure 1 d) can employ burner arrangements as in Figure 2 a) or d).

Figure 3 shows typical components.

Annex F gives guidelines for the design, selection and evaluation of air preheat (APH) systems. Figures F.1, F.2 and F.3 show typical APH systems.

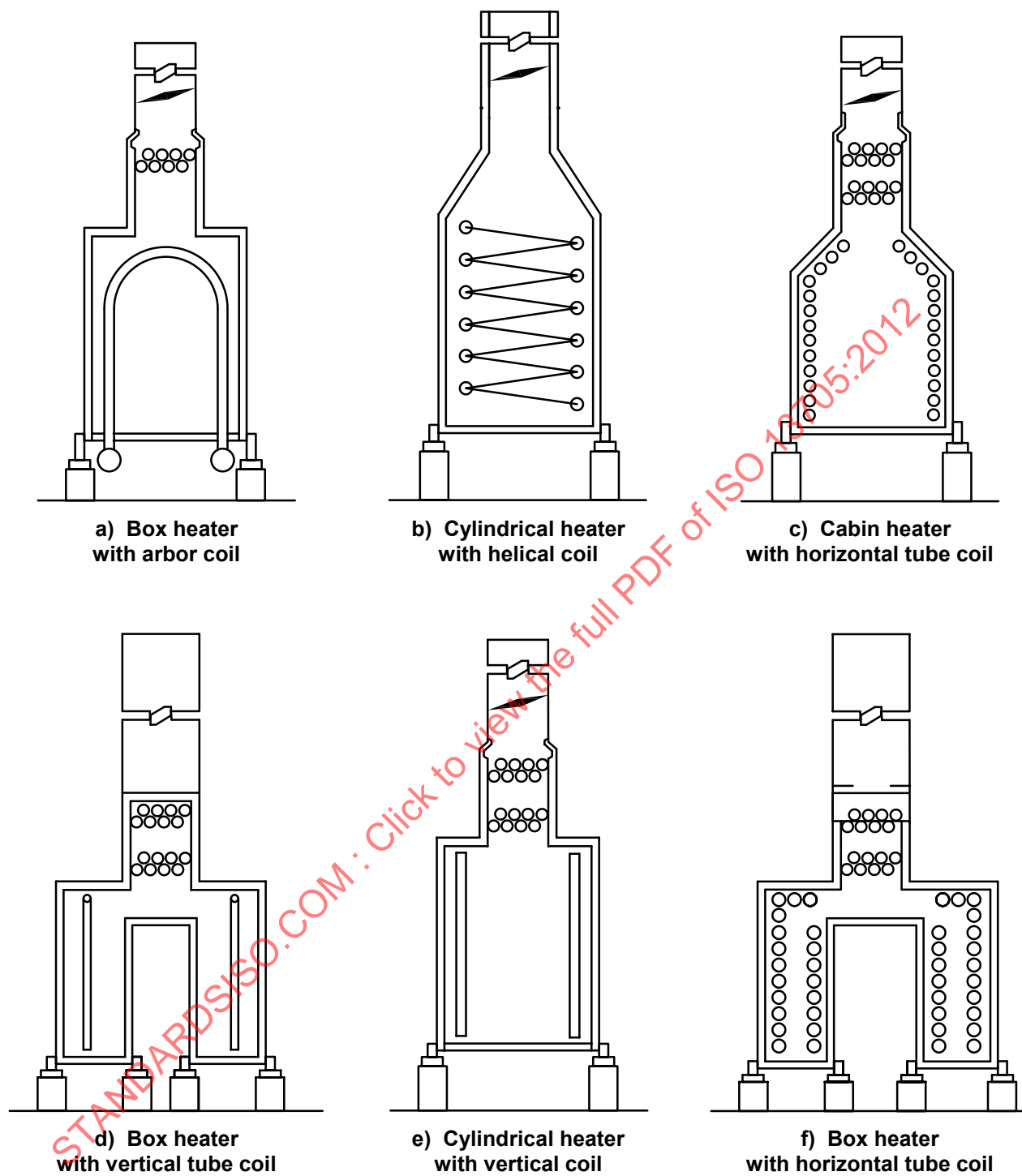


Figure 1 — Typical heater types

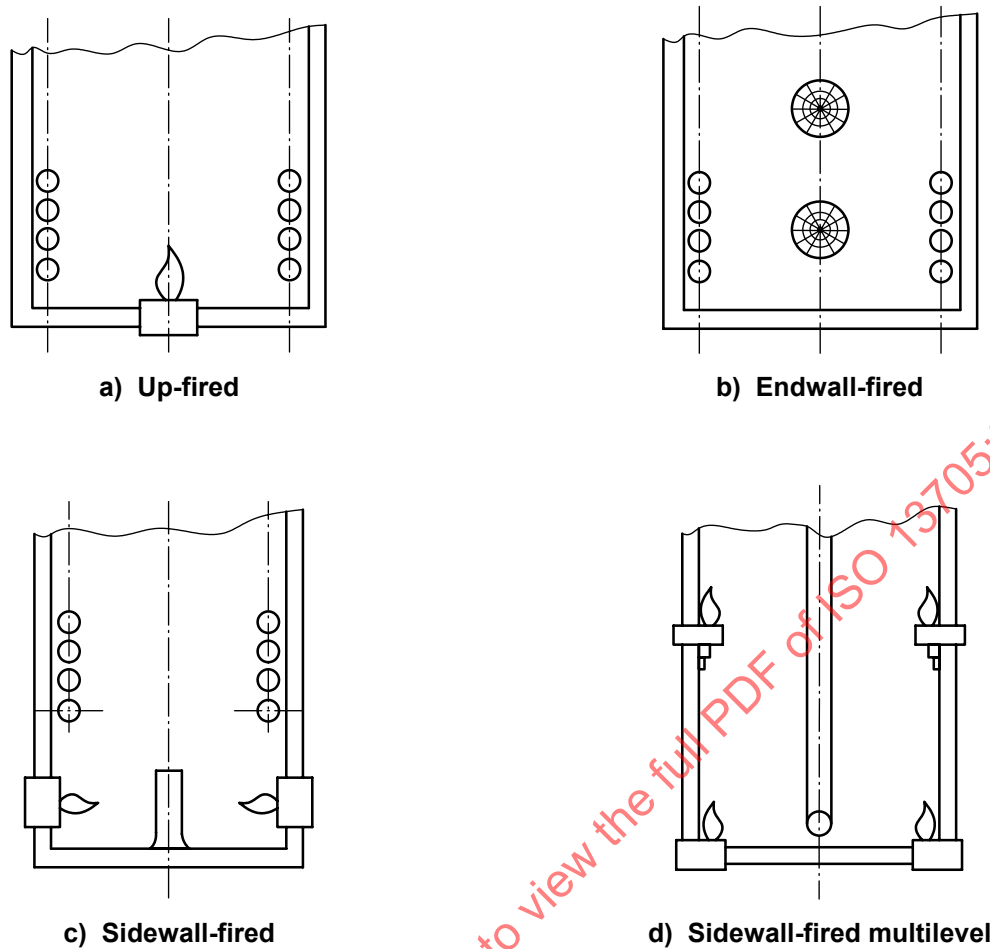
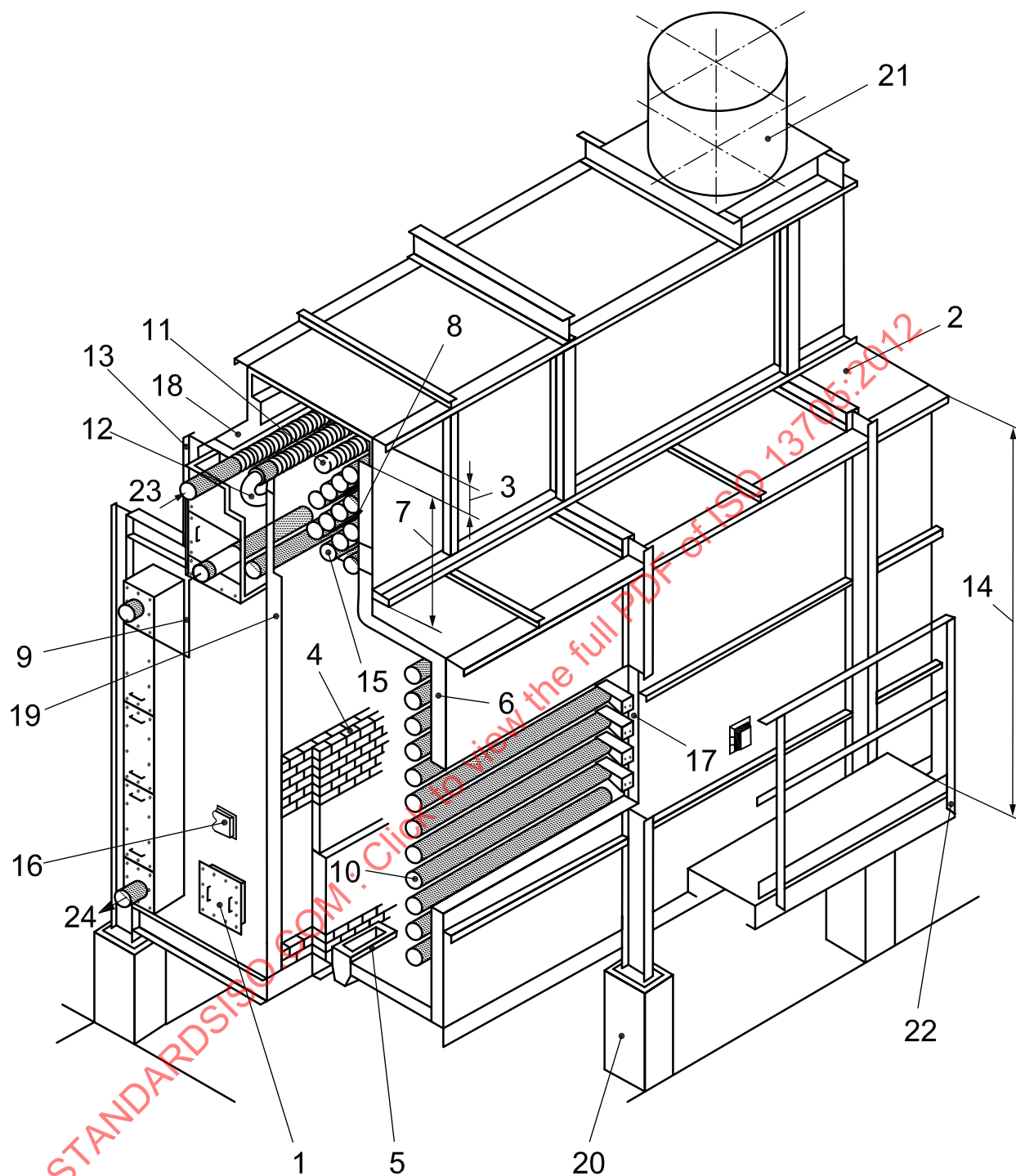


Figure 2 — Typical burner arrangements (elevation view)

**Key**

1 access door	7 convection section	13 header box	19 end-tube sheet
2 arch	8 corbel	14 radiant section	20 pier
3 breeching	9 crossover	15 shield tube	21 stack/duct
4 bridgewall	10 radiant tube	16 observation door	22 platform
5 burner	11 extended surface	17 tube support	23 process in
6 casing	12 return bend	18 refractory lining	24 process out

Figure 3 — Heater components

5 Proposals

5.1 Purchaser's responsibilities

5.1.1 The purchaser's enquiry shall include data sheets, checklists and other applicable information outlined in this International Standard. This information shall include any special requirements or exceptions to this International Standard.

5.1.2 The purchaser is responsible for providing the correct process specification to enable the vendor to prepare the fired-heater design. The purchaser should complete, as a minimum, those items on the data sheet that are designated by an asterisk (*).

5.1.3 The purchaser's enquiry shall state clearly the vendor's scope of supply.

- **5.1.4** The purchaser's enquiry shall specify the number of copies of drawings, data sheets, specifications, data reports, operating manuals, installation instructions, spare parts lists and other data to be supplied by the vendor, as required by 5.2, 5.3 and 5.4.

5.2 Vendor's responsibilities

The vendor's proposal shall include:

- a) completed data sheets for each fired heater and the associated equipment (see examples in Annex A);
- b) an outline drawing showing firebox dimensions, burner layout and clearances, arrangement of tubes, platforms, ducting, stack, breeching, APH and fans;
- c) full definition of the extent of shop assembly (format given in Annex C may be used), including the number, size and mass of prefabricated parts and the number of field welds;
- d) detailed description of any exceptions to the specified requirements;
- e) a completed noise data sheet if specified by the purchaser;
- f) curves for heaters in vaporizing service, showing pressure, temperature, vaporization and bulk velocity as a function of the tube number;
- g) a time schedule for submission of all required drawings, data and documents;
- h) a programme for scheduling the work after receipt of an order; this should include a specified period of time for the purchaser to review and return drawings, procurement of materials, manufacture and the required date of supply;
- i) a list of utilities and quantities required;
- j) if specified by the purchaser, a list of sub-suppliers proposed for the pipes and fittings, coil fabrication, extended surfaces on tubes, castings, steel fabrication, ladders and platforms, refractory supply, refractory installation, APHs, fans, burners and other auxiliary equipment.

5.3 Documentation

5.3.1 Drawings for purchaser's review

The vendor shall submit general arrangement drawings of each heater, for review. The final general arrangement drawings shall include the following information:

- a) heater service, the purchaser's equipment number, the project name and location, the purchase order numbers and the vendor's reference number;

- b) coil terminal sizes, including flange ratings and facings; dimensional locations; direction of process flow; and allowable loads, moments and forces on terminals;
- c) coil and crossover arrangements, tube spacings, tube diameters, tube-wall thicknesses, tube lengths, material specifications, including grades for pressure parts only, and all extended surface data;
- d) coil design pressures, hydrostatic test pressures, design fluid and tube-wall temperatures and corrosion allowance;
- e) a coil design code or recommended practice and fabrication code or specification;
- f) refractory and insulation types, thicknesses and service temperature ratings;
- g) types and materials of anchors for refractory and insulation;
- h) location and number of access doors, observation doors, burners, sootblowers, dampers and instrument and auxiliary connections;
- i) location and dimension of platforms, ladders and stairways;
- j) overall dimensions, including auxiliary equipment.

5.3.2 Foundation-loading diagrams

The vendor shall submit for the purchaser's review foundation-loading diagrams for each heater. The diagram shall include the following information:

- a) number and location of piers and supports;
- b) baseplate dimensions;
- c) anchor bolt locations, bolt diameters and projection above foundations;
- d) dead loads, live loads, wind or earthquake loads, reaction to overturning moments and lateral shear loads.

5.3.3 Documents for purchaser's review

The vendor shall also submit to the purchaser the following documents for review and comment (individual stages of fabrication shall not proceed until the relevant document has been reviewed and commented upon):

- a) structural steel drawings, details of stacks, ducts and dampers and structural calculations;
- b) burner assembly drawings and, if applicable, burner piping drawings;
- c) tube-support details and, if specified by the purchaser, design calculations;
- d) thermowell and thermocouple details;
- e) welding, examination and test procedures;
- f) installation, dry-out and test procedures for refractories and insulation;
- g) refractory thickness calculations, including temperature gradients through all refractory sections and sources of thermal conductivities;
- h) decoking procedures if specified by the purchaser;

- i) installation, operation and maintenance instructions for the heater and for auxiliary equipment such as APHs, fans, drivers, dampers and burners;
- j) performance curves or data sheets for APHs, fans, drivers and burners and other auxiliary equipment;
- k) noise data sheets if specified by the purchaser.

5.3.4 Certified drawings and diagrams

After receipt of the purchaser's comments on the general arrangement drawings and diagrams, the vendor shall furnish certified general arrangement drawings and foundation loading diagrams. The vendor shall furnish design-detail drawings, erection drawings and an erection sequence. Drawings of auxiliary equipment shall also be furnished.

5.4 Final reports

Within a specified time after completion of construction or shipment, the vendor shall furnish the purchaser with the following documents:

- a) data sheets and drawings representing the as-manufactured equipment; in the event field-changes are made, as-built drawings and data sheets shall not be provided unless specifically requested by the purchaser;
- b) certified material reports, mill test reports or ladle analysis for all pressure parts and for alloy extended surfaces;
- c) installation, operation and maintenance instructions for the heater and auxiliary equipment, such as APHs, fans, drivers, dampers and burners;
- d) performance curves or data sheets for APHs, fans, drivers and burners and other auxiliary equipment;
- e) bill of materials;
- f) noise data sheets if specified by the purchaser;
- g) refractory dry-out procedures;
- h) decoking procedures;
- i) test certificates for tube-support castings;
- j) all other test documents, including test reports and non-destructive examination reports.

6 Design considerations

6.1 Process design

6.1.1 Heaters shall be designed for uniform heat distribution. Multi-pass heaters shall be designed for hydraulic symmetry of all passes.

6.1.2 The number of passes for vaporizing fluids shall be minimized. Each pass shall be a single circuit from inlet to outlet.

6.1.3 Average heat flux density in the radiant section is normally based on a single row of tubes spaced at two nominal tube diameters. The first row of shield-section tubes shall be considered as radiant service in determining the average heat flux density if these tubes are exposed to direct flame radiation.

6.1.4 Where the average radiant heat flux density is specified on the basis of two nominal diameters, the vendor may increase the flux rate for other coil arrangements, e.g. for three nominal diameters or double-sided firing, provided the maximum flux, including mal-distribution, does not exceed that based on two nominal diameters.

6.1.5 The maximum allowable inside film temperature for any process service shall not be exceeded anywhere in the specified coil.

6.2 Combustion design

6.2.1 Margins provided in the combustion system are not intended to permit operation of the heater at greater than the design process duty.

6.2.2 Calculated fuel efficiencies shall be based on the lower heating value of the design fuel and shall include a radiation loss of 1,5 % of the calculated normal fuel heat release. Heaters employing flue gas/air preheat systems shall include a radiation loss of 2,5 % of the fuel heat release based on the lower heating value.

6.2.3 Unless otherwise specified by the purchaser, calculated efficiencies for natural-draught operation shall be based upon 20 % excess air if gas is the primary fuel and 25 % excess air if oil is the primary fuel. In the case of forced-draught operation, calculated efficiencies shall be based on 15 % excess air for fuel gas and 20 % excess air for fuel oil.

6.2.4 The heater efficiency and tube-wall temperature shall be calculated using the specified fouling resistances.

NOTE Annex G gives guidance on the measurement of efficiency.

6.2.5 Volumetric heat release of the radiant section shall not exceed 125 kW/m³ (12 000 Btu/h/ft³) for oil-fired heaters and 165 kW/m³ (16 000 Btu/h/ft³) for gas-fired heaters based upon the design heat absorption.

6.2.6 Stack and flue gas systems shall be designed so that a negative pressure of at least 25 Pa (0,10 in of water column) is maintained in the arch section or point of minimum draught location (which is typically below the shield section) at 120 % of normal heat release with design excess air and design stack temperature.

6.3 Mechanical design

6.3.1 Provisions for thermal expansion shall take into consideration all specified operating conditions, including short-term conditions such as steam-air decoking.

- **6.3.2** If specified by the purchaser, the convection-section tube layout shall include space for future installation of sootblowers, water washing or steam-lancing doors.
- **6.3.3** If the heater is designed for heavy fuel-oil firing, sootblowers shall be provided for convection-section cleaning. If light fuel oils such as naphtha are to be fired, the purchaser shall specify whether sootblowers are to be supplied.

6.3.4 The convection-section design shall incorporate space for the future addition of two rows of tubes, including the end and intermediate tube sheets. Placement of sootblowers and cleaning lanes shall be suitable for the addition of the future tubes. Holes in end-tube sheets shall be plugged off to prevent flue gas leakage.

6.3.5 Vertical cylindrical heaters shall be designed with a maximum height-to-diameter ratio of 2,75, where the height is that of the radiant section (inside refractory face) and the diameter is that of the tube circle, both measured in the same units.

6.3.6 For single-fired, box-type, floor-fired heaters with sidewall tubes only, an equivalent height-to-width factor shall be determined by dividing the height of the wall bank (or the straight tube length for vertical tubes) by the width of the tube bank and applying the following limitations:

Design absorption MW (Btu/h $\times 10^6$)	Height-to-width ratio	Height-to-width ratio
	max.	min.
Up to 3,5 (12)	2,00	1,50
3,5 to 7 (12 to 24)	2,50	1,50
Over 7 (24)	2,75	1,50

6.3.7 Shield sections shall have at least three rows of bare tubes.

6.3.8 Except for the first shield row, convection sections shall be designed with corbels or baffles to minimize the amount of flue gas bypassing the heating surface.

6.3.9 The minimum clearance from grade to burner plenum or register shall be 2 m (6,5 ft) for floor-fired heaters, unless otherwise specified by the purchaser.

6.3.10 For vertical-tube, vertical-fired heaters, the maximum radiant straight tube length shall be 18,3 m (60 ft). For horizontal heaters fired from both ends, the maximum radiant straight tube length shall be 12,2 m (40 ft).

6.3.11 Radiant tubes shall be installed with a minimum spacing from refractory or insulation to tube centre-line of 1,5 nominal tube diameters, with a clearance of not less than 100 mm (4 in) from the refractory or insulation. For horizontal radiant tubes, the minimum clearance from floor refractory to tube outside diameter shall be not less than 300 mm (12 in).

6.3.12 The heater arrangement shall allow for replacement of individual tubes or hairpins without disturbing adjacent tubes.

- **6.3.13** If specified by the purchaser, the layout of tubes in the convection section shall incorporate a 450 mm (18 in) fin-tip-to-fin-tip vertical gap or space every eight tube rows to allow access for inspection. Provide a minimum of one access door, having a minimum clear opening of 600 mm $\times$ 600 mm (24 in $\times$ 24 in), in the space between each set of tube sheets in each vertical gap. Permanent platforms are not required.

7 Tubes

7.1 General

7.1.1 Tube-wall thickness for coils shall be determined in accordance with ISO 13704, in which the practical limit to minimum thickness for new tubes is specified. For materials not included, tube-wall thickness shall be determined in accordance with ISO 13704 using stress values mutually agreed upon between purchaser and supplier.

7.1.2 Unless otherwise agreed between the purchaser and supplier, calculations made to determine tube-wall thickness for coils shall include considerations for erosion and corrosion allowances for the various coil materials. The following corrosion allowances shall be used as a minimum:

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| a) carbon steel through C-1/2Mo: | 3 mm (0,125 in); |
| b) low alloys through 9Cr-1Mo: | 2 mm (0,080 in); |
| c) above 9Cr-1Mo through austenitic steels: | 1 mm (0,040 in). |

7.1.3 Maximum tube-metal temperature shall be determined in accordance with ISO 13704. The tube-metal temperature allowance shall be at least 15 °C (25 °F).

7.1.4 All tubes shall be seamless. Tubes shall not be circumferentially welded to obtain the required tube length, unless approved by the purchaser, in which case the location of welds shall be agreed by the purchaser. Electric flash welding shall not be used for intermediate welds. Tubes furnished to an average wall thickness shall be in accordance with suitable tolerances so that the required minimum wall thickness is provided.

7.1.5 Tubes, if projected into header box housings, shall extend at least 150 mm (6 in), in the cold position, beyond the face of the end tube sheet, of which 100 mm (4 in) shall be bare.

7.1.6 Tube size (outside diameter in inches) shall be selected from the following sizes: 2,375; 2,875; 3,50; 4,00; 4,50; 5,563; 6,625; 8,625; or 10,75. Other tube sizes should be used only if warranted by special process considerations.

7.1.7 If the shield and radiant tubes are in the same service, the shield tubes shall be of the same material as the connecting radiant tubes.

7.2 Extended surface

- 7.2.1** The extended surface in convection sections may be studded (where each stud is attached to the tube by arc or resistance welding) or finned (where helically wound fins are high-frequency, continuously welded to the tube). The purchaser shall specify or agree the type of extended surface to be provided. In the case of finning, the purchaser shall specify or agree whether the fins shall be solid or segmented (serrated).

7.2.2 Metallurgy for the extended surface shall be selected on the basis of maximum calculated tip temperature as listed in Table 1.

7.2.3 Extended surface dimensions shall be limited to those listed in Table 2.

Table 1 — Extended surface materials

Material	Studs		Fins	
	Maximum tip temperature		Maximum tip temperature	
	°C	(°F)	°C	(°F)
Carbon steel	510	(950)	454	(850)
2 1/4Cr-1Mo, 5Cr-1/2Mo	593	(1 100)	549	(1 000)
11-13Cr	649	(1 200)	593	(1 100)
18Cr-8Ni stainless steel	815	(1 500)	815	(1 500)
25Cr-20Ni stainless steel	982	(1 800)	982	(1 800)

Table 2 — Extended surface dimensions

Fuel	Studs				Fins					
	Minimum diameter		Maximum height		Minimum normal thickness		Maximum height		Maximum number per unit length	
	mm	(in)	mm	(in)	mm	(in)	mm	(in)	per m	(per in)
Gas	12,5	(1/2)	25	(1)	1,3	(0,05)	25,4	(1)	197	(5)
Oil	12,5	(1/2)	25	(1)	2,5	(0,10)	19,1	(3/4)	118	(3)

7.3 Materials

Tube materials shall conform to the specifications listed in Table 3 or their equivalent agreed by the purchaser.

Table 3 — Heater-tube materials specifications

Material	ASTM specifications	
	Pipe	Tube
Carbon steel	A 53, A 106 Gr B	A 192, A 210 Gr A-1
Carbon-1/2Mo	A 335 Gr P1	A 209 Gr T1
1 1/4Cr-1/2Mo	A 335 Gr P11	A 213 Gr T11
2 1/4Cr-1Mo	A 335 Gr P22	A 213 Gr T22
3Cr-1Mo	A 335 Gr P21	A 213 Gr T21
5Cr-1/2Mo	A 335 Gr P5	A 213 Gr T5
5Cr-1/2Mo-Si	A 335 Gr P5b	A 213 Gr T5b
9Cr-1Mo	A 335 Gr P9	A 213 Gr T9
9Cr-1Mo-V	A 335 Gr P91	A 213 Gr T91
18Cr-8Ni	A 312, A 376, TP 304, TP 304H and TP 304L	A 213, TP 304, TP 304H and TP 304L
16Cr-12Ni-2Mo	A 312, A 376, TP 316, TP 316H and TP 316L	A 213, TP 316, TP 316H and TP 316L
18Cr-10Ni-3Mo	A 312, TP 317 and TP 317L	A 213, TP 317 and TP 317L
18Cr-10Ni-Ti	A 312, A 376, TP 321 and TP 321H	A 213, TP 321 and TP 321H
18Cr-10Ni-Nb ^a	A 312, A 376, TP 347 and TP 347H	A 213, TP 347 and TP 347H
Nickel alloy 800 H/800 HT ^b	B 407	B 407
25Cr-20Ni	A 608 Gr HK40	A 213 TP 310H
^a Niobium (Nb) was formerly called columbium (Cb). ^b Minimum grain size shall be ASTM #5 or coarser.		

8 Headers

8.1 General

8.1.1 The design stress for headers shall be no higher than that allowed for similar materials as given in ISO 13704 and shall be reduced by casting-quality factors if made from castings. Casting-quality factors shall be in accordance with ISO 15649.

NOTE For the purposes of this provision, ASME B 31.3^[15] is equivalent to ISO 15649.

8.1.2 Headers shall be of metallurgy equivalent to the tubes.

8.1.3 Headers shall be welded return bends or welded plug headers, depending on the service and operating conditions.

8.1.4 The specified header wall thickness shall include a corrosion allowance. This allowance shall not be less than that used for the tubes.

8.2 Plug headers

8.2.1 Plug headers shall be located in a header box and shall be selected for the same design pressure as the connecting tubes and for a design temperature equal to the maximum fluid operating temperature at that location, plus a minimum of 30 °C (55 °F).

8.2.2 Tubes and plug headers shall be arranged so that there is sufficient space for field maintenance operations, such as welding and stress relieving.

8.2.3 If plug headers are specified to permit mechanical cleaning of coked or fouled tubes, they shall consist of the two-hole type. Single-hole, 180° plug headers may be installed only for tube inspection and draining.

8.2.4 If plug headers are specified to be used with horizontal tubes that are 18,3 m (60 ft) or longer, two-hole plug headers shall be used for both ends of the coil assembly. For shorter coils, plug headers shall be provided on one end of the coil with welded return bends on the opposite end.

8.2.5 If plug headers are specified for vertical tube heaters, two-hole plug headers shall be installed on the top of the coil and one-hole Y-fittings at the bottom of the tubes.

8.2.6 Headers and corresponding plugs shall be match-marked by 12 mm (0,5 in) permanent numerals and installed in accordance with a fitting-location drawing.

8.2.7 Type 304 stainless-steel thermowells, if required for temperature measurement and control, shall be provided in the plugs of the headers.

8.2.8 Tube centre-to-centre dimensions shall be as shown in Table 4.

Table 4 — Tube centre-to-centre dimensions

Tube outside diameter mm (in)	Header centre-to-centre dimension	
	mm	(in)
60,3 (2,375)	101,6	(4,00) ^a
73,0 (2,875)	127,0	(5,00) ^a
88,9 (3,50)	152,4	(6,00) ^a
101,6 (4,00)	177,8	(7,00) ^a
114,3 (4,50)	203,2	(8,00) ^a
127,0 (5,00)	228,6	(9,00)
141,3 (5,563)	254,0	(10,00) ^a
152,4 (6,00)	279,4	(11,00)
168,3 (6,625)	304,8	(12,00) ^a
193,7 (7,625)	355,6	(14,00)
219,1 (8,625)	406,4	(16,00) ^a
273,1 (10,75)	508,0	(20,00) ^a
NOTE Centre-to-centre dimensions are applicable only to manufacturers' standard header pressure ratings for 5 850 kPa (850 psig) nominal fittings.		
^a This centre-to-centre dimension equals two times the corresponding nominal size and is based on the centre-to-centre dimension for short-radius welded return bends.		

8.2.9 Plugs and screws shall be assembled in the fittings with an approved compound on the seats and screws to prevent galling.

8.3 Return bends

8.3.1 Return bends should be used for the following conditions:

- a) in clean service, where coking or fouling of tubes is not anticipated;
- b) where leakage is a hazard;
- c) where steam-air decoking facilities are provided for decoking of furnace tubes;
- d) where mechanical pigging is the specified cleaning method.

8.3.2 Return bends inside the firebox shall be selected for the same design pressure and temperature as the connecting tubes. Return bends inside a header box shall be selected for the same design pressure as the connecting tubes and for a design temperature equal to the maximum fluid operating temperature at that location plus a minimum of 30 °C (55 °F). Return bends shall be at least the same thickness as the connecting tubes.

8.3.3 Regardless of the location of the welded return bends, the heater design shall incorporate means to permit convenient removal and replacement of tubes and return bends.

8.3.4 Longitudinally welded fittings shall not be used.

8.4 Materials

8.4.1 Plug header and return bend material shall conform to the ASTM specifications listed in Table 5 or to other specifications if agreed by the purchaser.

8.4.2 Cast fittings shall have the material identification permanently marked on the fitting with raised letters or by using low-stress stamps.

Table 5 — Plug header and return bend materials

Material	ASTM specifications		
	Forged	Wrought	Cast
Carbon steel	A 105	A 234, WPB	A 216, WCB
	A 181, class 60 or 70		
C-1/2Mo	A 182, F1	A 234, WP1	A 217, WC1
1 1/4Cr-1/2Mo	A 182, F11	A 234, WP11	A 217, WC6
2 1/4Cr-1Mo	A 182, F22	A 234, WP22	A 217, WC9
3Cr-1Mo	A 182, F21	—	—
5Cr-1/2Mo	A 182, F5	A 234, WP5	A 217, C5
9Cr-1Mo	A 182, F9	A 234, WP9	A 217, C12
9Cr-1Mo-V	A 182, F91	A 234, WP91	A 217, C12A
18Cr-8Ni Type 304	A 182, F304	A 403, WP304	A 351, CF8
18Cr-8Ni Type 304H	A 182, F304H	A 403, WP304H	A 351, CF8
18Cr-8Ni Type 304L	A 182, F304L	A 403, WP304L	A 351, CF8
16Cr-12Ni-2Mo Type 316	A 182, F316	A 403, WP316	A 351, CF8M
16Cr-12Ni-2Mo Type 316H	A 182, F316H	A 403, WP316H	A 351, CF8M
16Cr-12Ni-2Mo Type 316L	A 182, F316L	A 403, WP316L	A 351, CF3M
18Cr-10Ni-3Mo Type 317	A 182, F317	A 403, WP317	—
18Cr-10Ni-3Mo Type 317L	A 182, F317L	A 403, WP317L	—
18Cr-10Ni-Ti Type 321	A 182, F321	A 403, WP321	—
18Cr-10Ni-Ti Type 321H	A 182, F321H	A 403, WP321H	—
18Cr-10Ni-Nb Type 347	A 182, F347	A 403, WP347	A 351, CF8C
18Cr-10Ni-Nb Type 347H	A 182, F347H	A 403, WP347H	A 351, CF8C
Nickel alloy 800H/800HT ^a	B 564	B 366	A 351, CT-15C
25Cr-20Ni	A 182, F310	A 403, WP310	A 351, CK-20 A 351, HK40

^a Minimum grain size shall be ASTM #5 or coarser.

9 Piping, terminals and manifolds

9.1 General

9.1.1 The minimum corrosion allowance shall be in accordance with 7.1.2.

9.1.2 All flanges shall be welding-neck flanges.

9.1.3 Piping, terminals and manifolds external to the heater enclosure shall be in accordance with ISO 15649.

NOTE For the purposes of this provision, ASME B 31.3^[15] is equivalent to ISO 15649.

- **9.1.4** The purchaser shall specify if inspection openings are required; in which case, if agreed by the purchaser, terminal flanges may be used provided that pipe sections are readily removable for inspection access.

9.1.5 Threaded connections shall not be used.

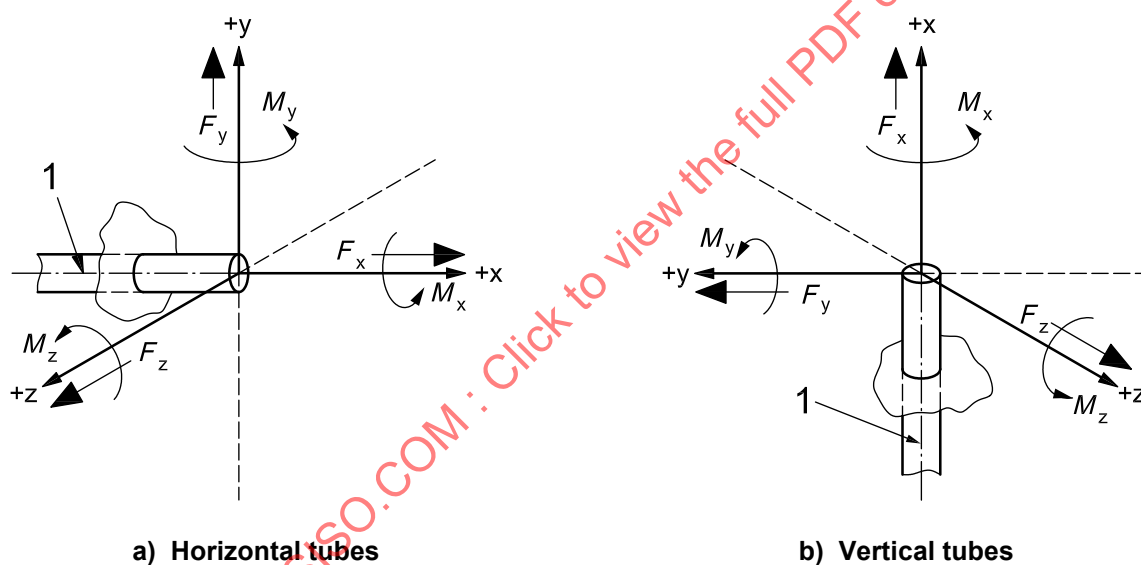
- **9.1.6** The purchaser shall specify if low-point drains and high-point vents are required, in which case they shall be accessible from outside the heater casing.

9.1.7 Manifolds and external piping shall be located so as not to block access for the removal of single tubes or hairpins.

9.1.8 Manifolds inside a header box shall be selected for the same design pressure as the connecting tubes and for a design temperature equal to the maximum fluid operating temperature at that location plus a minimum of 30 °C (55 °F).

9.2 Allowable movement and loads

Heater terminals shall be designed to accept the moments, M , forces, F , or movements shown in Figure 4, and Tables 6 and 7 for tubes and Figure 5 and Tables 8 and 9 for manifolds.



Key

1 tube centreline

Figure 4 — Diagram of forces for tubes

Table 6 — Allowable forces and moments for tubes

Pipe size DN (NPS)	Force						Moment					
	F_x		F_y		F_z		M_x		M_y		M_z	
	N	(lbf)	N	(lbf)	N	(lbf)	N·m	(ft·lbf)	N·m	(ft·lbf)	N·m	(ft·lbf)
50 (2)	445	(100)	890	(200)	890	(200)	475	(350)	339	(250)	339	(250)
75 (3)	667	(150)	1 334	(300)	1 334	(300)	610	(450)	475	(350)	475	(350)
100 (4)	890	(200)	1 779	(400)	1 779	(400)	813	(600)	610	(450)	610	(450)
125 (5)	1 001	(225)	2 002	(450)	2 002	(450)	895	(660)	678	(500)	678	(500)
150 (6)	1 112	(250)	2 224	(500)	2 224	(500)	990	(730)	746	(550)	746	(550)
200 (8)	1 334	(300)	2 669	(600)	2 669	(600)	1 166	(860)	881	(650)	881	(650)
250 (10)	1 557	(350)	2 891	(650)	2 891	(650)	1 261	(930)	949	(700)	949	(700)
300 (12)	1 779	(400)	3 114	(700)	3 114	(700)	1 356	(1 000)	1 017	(750)	1 017	(750)

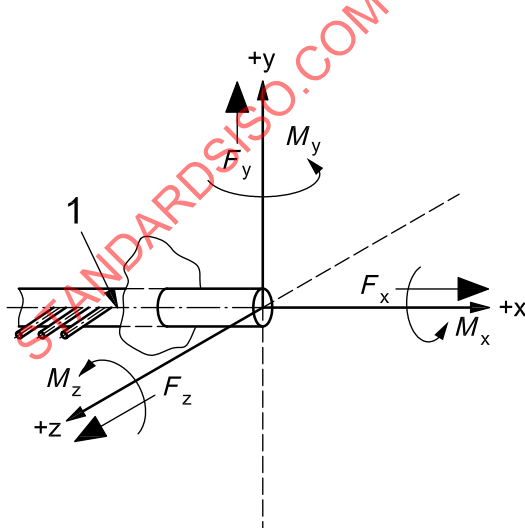
Table 7 — Allowable movements for tubes

Dimensions in millimetres (inches)

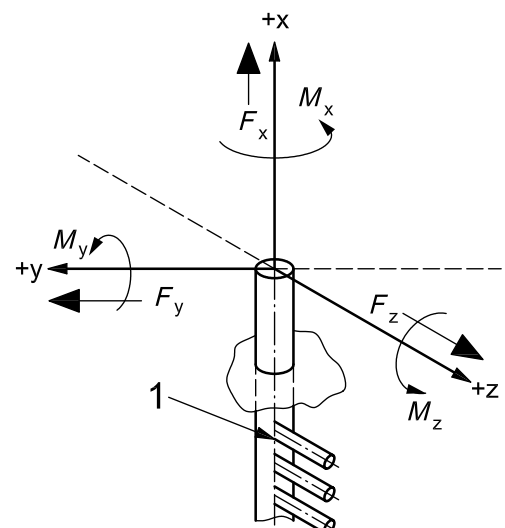
Terminals	Allowable movement											
	Horizontal tubes						Vertical tubes					
	Δx		Δy		Δz		Δx		Δy		Δz	
Radiant	a	a	+ 25	(+ 1)	25	(1)	a	a	25	(1)	25	(1)
Convection	a	a	+ 13	(+ 0,5)	13	(0,5)	—	—	—	—	—	—

NOTE Except where noted, the above movements are allowable in both directions ($\pm$).

^a To be specified by heater vendor.



a) Horizontal manifold



b) Vertical manifold

Key

1 manifold centreline

Figure 5 — Diagram of forces for manifolds

Table 8 — Allowable forces and moments for manifolds

Manifold size DN (NPS)	Force						Moment					
	F_x		F_y		F_z		M_x		M_y		M_z	
	N	(lbf)	N	(lbf)	N	(lbf)	N·m	(ft·lbf)	N·m	(ft·lbf)	N·m	(ft·lbf)
150 (6)	2 224	(500)	4 448	(1 000)	4 448	(1 000)	1 980	(1 460)	1 492	(1 100)	1 492	(1 100)
200 (8)	2 668	(600)	5 338	(1 200)	5 338	(1 200)	2 332	(1 720)	1 762	(1 300)	1 762	(1 300)
250 (10)	3 114	(700)	5 782	(1 300)	5 782	(1 300)	2 522	(1 860)	1 898	(1 400)	1 898	(1 400)
300 (12)	3 558	(800)	6 228	(1 400)	6 228	(1 400)	2 712	(2 000)	2 034	(1 500)	2 034	(1 500)
350 (14)	4 004	(900)	6 672	(1 500)	6 672	(1 500)	2 902	(2 140)	2 170	(1 600)	2 170	(1 600)
400 (16)	4 448	(1 000)	7 117	(1 600)	7 117	(1 600)	3 092	(2 280)	2 305	(1 700)	2 305	(1 700)
450 (18)	4 893	(1 100)	7 562	(1 700)	7 562	(1 700)	3 282	(2 420)	2 441	(1 800)	2 441	(1 800)
500 (20)	5 338	(1 200)	8 006	(1 800)	8 006	(1 800)	3 471	(2 560)	2 576	(1 900)	2 576	(1 900)
600 (24)	5 782	(1 300)	8 451	(1 900)	8 451	(1 900)	3 661	(2 700)	2 712	(2 000)	2 712	(2 000)

Table 9 — Allowable movements for manifolds

Dimensions in millimetres (inches)

Terminals	Allowable movement											
	Horizontal manifolds						Vertical manifolds					
	Δx		Δy		Δz		Δx		Δy		Δz	
Radiant	13	(0,5)	0	(0)	A	a	0	(0)	13	(0,5)	a	a
Convection	13	(0,5)	0	(0)	A	a	—	—	—	—	—	—
NOTE The above movements are allowable in both directions ($\pm$).												
^a Δz is to be specified by heater vendor.												

9.3 Materials

External crossover piping shall be of the same metallurgy as the preceding heater tube; internal crossover piping shall be of the same metallurgy as the radiant tubes.

10 Tube supports

10.1 General

10.1.1 The design temperature for tube supports and guides exposed to flue gas shall be based on design operation of the furnace as follows:

- for the radiant and shock sections and outside the refractory, the flue gas temperature to which the supports are exposed plus 100 °C (180 °F); the minimum design temperature shall be 870 °C (1 600 °F);
- for the convection section, the temperature of the flue gas in contact with the support plus 55 °C (100 °F);
- maximum flue gas temperature gradient across a single convection intermediate tube support shall be 222 °C (400 °F);
- where the radiant tube-support castings are shielded behind a row of tubes, the bridgewall temperature may be used.

No credit shall be taken for the shielding effect of refractory coatings on intermediate supports or guides.

10.1.2 Guides, horizontal radiant-section intermediate tube supports and top supports for vertical radiant tubes shall be designed to permit their replacement without tube removal and with minimum refractory repair.

10.1.3 The unsupported length of horizontal tubes shall not exceed 35 times the outside diameter or 6 m (20 ft), whichever is less.

10.1.4 The minimum corrosion allowance of each side for all exposed surfaces of each tube support and guide contacting flue gases shall be 1,3 mm (0,05 in) for austenitic materials and 2,5 mm (0,10 in) for ferritic materials.

10.1.5 The following shall apply to end-tube sheets for tubes with external headers.

- Tube sheets shall be structural plate. If the tube-sheet design temperature exceeds 425 °C (800 °F), alloy materials shall be used.
- Minimum thickness of tube sheets shall be 12 mm (0,5 in).
- Tube sheets shall be insulated on the flue gas side with a castable having a minimum thickness of 75 mm (3 in) for the convection section and 125 mm (5 in) for the radiant section. (Anchors shall be made from austenitic stainless steel or nickel alloy as listed in Table 11.)
- Sleeves with an inside diameter at least 12 mm (0,5 in) greater than the tube or the extended-surface outside diameter shall be welded to the tube sheet at each tube hole, to prevent the refractory from being damaged by the tubes. The sleeve material shall be austenitic stainless steel.

10.1.6 The following shall apply to the supporting of extended-surface tubes.

- Intermediate supports shall be designed to prevent mechanical damage to the extended surface and shall permit easy removal and insertion of the tubes without binding.
- For studded tubes, a minimum of three rows of studs shall rest on each support.
- For finned tubes, at least five fins shall rest on each support.

10.2 Loads and allowable stress

10.2.1 Tube-support loads shall be determined as follows.

- Loads shall be determined in accordance with acceptable procedures for supporting continuous beams on multiple supports (e.g. AISC^[2]). Friction loads shall be based on a friction coefficient of not less than 0,30.
- Friction loads shall be based on all tubes expanding and contracting in the same direction. Loads shall not be considered to be cancelled or reduced due to movement of tubes in opposite directions.

10.2.2 Tube-support maximum allowable stresses at design temperature shall not exceed the following:

a) dead-load stress:

- 1) one-third of the ultimate tensile strength;
- 2) two-thirds of the yield strength (0,2 % offset);
- 3) 50 % of the average stress required to produce 1 % creep in 10 000 h;
- 4) 50 % of the average stress required to produce rupture in 10 000 h.

b) dead-load plus frictional stress:

- 1) one-third of the ultimate tensile strength;
- 2) two-thirds of the yield strength (0,2 % offset);
- 3) average stress required to produce 1 % creep in 10 000 h;
- 4) average stress required to produce rupture in 10 000 h.

10.2.3 For castings, the allowable stress value shall be multiplied by 0,8 to determine the required casting thickness.

10.2.4 Stress data shall be as presented in Annex D.

10.3 Materials

10.3.1 Tube-support materials shall be selected for maximum design temperatures as shown in Table 10. Other materials and alternative specifications shall be subject to the approval of the purchaser.

- **10.3.2** If the tube-support design temperature exceeds 650 °C (1 200 °F) and the fuel contains more than 100 mg/kg total vanadium and sodium, the supports shall exhibit one of the following design details, as specified or agreed by the purchaser:

- a) constructed of stabilized 50Cr-50Ni metallurgy, without any coating;
- b) for radiant or accessible supports only, covered with 50 mm (2 in) of castable refractory having a minimum density of 2 080 kg/m³ (130 lb/ft³).

Table 10 — Maximum design temperatures for tube-support materials

Material	ASTM specification		Maximum design temperature	
	Casting	Plate	°C	(°F)
Carbon steel	A 216 Gr WCB	A 283 Gr C	425	(800)
2 1/4Cr-1Mo	A 217 Gr WC 9	A 387 Gr 22, Class 1	650	(1 200)
5Cr-1/2Mo	A 217 Gr C5	A 387 Gr 5, Class 1	650	(1 200)
19Cr-9Ni	A 297 Gr HF	A 240, Type 304H	815	(1 500)
25Cr-12Ni	—	A 240, Type 309H	870	(1 600)
25Cr-12Ni	A 447 Type II	—	980	(1 800)
25Cr-20Ni	—	A 240, Type 310H	870	(1 600)
25Cr-20Ni	A 351 Gr HK40	—	1 090	(2 000)
50Cr-50Ni-Nb	A 560 Gr 50Cr-50Ni-Nb	—	980	(1 800)

For exposed radiant and shield-section tube supports, the material shall be 25Cr-12Ni alloy or higher .

11 Refractories and insulation

11.1 General

11.1.1 Selection of refractory and insulating materials is at least partially based on the anticipated operating temperature and the classification temperature for the material. The following temperature definitions are to be used when making refractory selections.

- Rated temperature is a classification temperature for refractory materials, as defined by each refractory manufacturer, in accordance with specifications such as ASTM. Manufacturers most often use the terms “service temperature”, “maximum temperature rating” and “classification temperature” to describe the rated temperature of the refractory product.
- Design temperature is the calculated hot-face temperature plus the required design margin, and the calculated interface temperature plus that same design margin if there is more than a single layer of refractory. The selected design temperature for each layer of refractory shall be equal to or less than the stated continuous-use limit for the refractory product.
- Continuous-use limit temperature is the manufacturer's stated temperature limit at which the refractory product does not suffer degradation during extended use at that temperature. It is also sometimes referred to as the “recommended use limit”.
- Hot-face temperature is the calculated temperature at the refractory surface in contact with the flue gas or the heated combustion air.
- Interface temperature is the calculated temperature at the intersection of each different layer of refractory material if multilayer or multi-component refractory construction is used.

11.1.2 The temperature of the outside casing of the radiant and convection sections and hot ductwork shall not exceed 82 °C (180 °F) at an ambient temperature of 27 °C (80 °F) with zero wind velocity. Radiant floors shall not exceed 90 °C (195 °F).

11.1.3 Walls, arches and floors shall be designed to allow for proper expansion of all parts. Where multilayer or multi-component linings are used, joints shall not be continuous through the lining.

11.1.4 Each layer of refractory shall be suitable for a design temperature at least 165 °C (300 °F) above the calculated hot-face or calculated interface temperature. The minimum design temperature for refractories used in the radiant and shield sections of the heater is 980 °C (1 800 °F).

11.1.5 The floor hot surface shall be a 63 mm (2,5 in) thick layer of high-duty fireclay brick or a 75 mm (3 in) thick layer of castable with a 1 370 °C (2 500 °F) service temperature and a minimum cold crush strength of 3 450 kN/m² (500 psi) after drying at 110 °C (230 °F).

11.1.6 Burner blocks shall be suitable for a service temperature of at least 1 650 °C (3 000 °F).

11.1.7 Target walls with flame impingement on both sides shall be constructed of high-duty firebrick with at least a 1 540 °C (2 800 °F) rating. Bricks shall be laid dry or with mortared joints. Expansion joints shall be packed with ceramic fibre strips having a rated temperature not less than 1 540 °C (2 800 °F).

11.1.8 Target walls with flame impingement on one side shall be of brick or of plastic refractory with a rated temperature of at least 1 540 °C (2 800 °F). Either may be backed by a castable or ceramic fibreboard.

11.1.9 Expansion joints shall be provided around burner blocks, brick and pre-fired shapes.

11.1.10 Access doors shall be protected from direct radiation by a refractory system of at least the same thermal rating and resistance as the adjacent wall lining.

11.1.11 Refractory anchors are not mandatory for floor castable, unless required for shipping considerations.

11.1.12 Maximum temperatures for anchor tips are listed in Table 11.

Table 11 — Maximum temperatures for anchor tips

Anchor material	Maximum anchor temperature	
	°C	°F
Carbon steel	455	850
TP 304 stainless steel	760	1 400
TP 316 stainless steel	760	1 400
TP 309 stainless steel	815	1 500
TP 310 stainless steel	927	1 700
TP 330 stainless steel	1 038	1 900
Alloy 601 (UNS N06601)	1 093	2 000
Ceramic studs and washers	> 1 093	> 2 000

11.2 Brick and tile construction

11.2.1 Brick construction may be used for gravity walls and floors or as hot-face layers.

11.2.2 Radiant chamber walls of gravity construction shall not exceed 7,3 m (24 ft) in height and shall be at least high-duty fireclay brick. The base width shall be a minimum of 8 % of wall height. The height-to-width ratio of each wall section shall not exceed 5 to 1. The walls shall be self-supporting and the base shall rest on the steel wall, not on another refractory.

11.2.3 Gravity walls shall be of mortared construction. The mortar shall be non-slagging, air-setting, chemically compatible with adjacent refractory, including at the rated temperature of the brick.

11.2.4 Vertical expansion joints shall be provided at gravity-wall ends and required intermediate locations. All expansion joints shall be kept open and free to move. If the joint is formed with lapped brick, no mortar shall be used, that is, it shall be a dry joint.

11.2.5 Floor brick shall not be mortared. A 13 mm (0,5 in) gap for expansion shall be provided at 1,8 m (6 ft) intervals. This gap may be packed with fibrous refractory material of similar rated temperature, in strip, not loose bulk, form.

11.2.6 Minimum service temperature for a hot-face brick layer shall be 1 430 °C (2 600 °F) on walls with expected flame impingement and 1 260 °C (2 300 °F) for other exposed-wall applications. Minimum service temperature for shielded walls shall be 1 095 °C (2 000 °F).

11.2.7 All brick linings on vertical flat casing shall be tied back to, and supported by, the structural steel framing members. All tie members shall be austenitic alloy material, except that pipe supports located in the backup layer may be carbon steel. At least 15 % of the bricks shall be tied back. It is not necessary for the brick lining on the cylindrical casing to be tied back if the radius of curvature of the casing keys the bricks.

11.2.8 Brick linings shall be supported by metal support shelves (lintels) attached to the casing on vertical centres not to exceed 1,8 m (6 ft). Support shelves shall be slotted to provide for differential thermal expansion. Shelf material is defined by the calculated service temperature; carbon steel is satisfactory up to 370 °C (700 °F).

11.2.9 Expansion joints shall be provided in both vertical and horizontal directions of the walls, at wall edges and about burner tiles, doors and sleeved penetrations.

11.3 Castable construction

11.3.1 Hydraulic-setting castables are suitable as refractory lining material for all areas of fired heaters. Only premixed refractory products shall be used and the equivalent of a 1:2:4 volumetric mix of lumnite-haydite-vermiculite product shall be limited to use at a design temperature of 1 040 °C (1900 °F). If the lumnite-haydite-vermiculite equivalent is used as a hot-face material, it shall be used only in clean-fuel applications and shall be limited to a maximum thickness of 200 mm (8 in) on arch and wall areas.

11.3.2 For dual-layer castable construction, the hot-face layer shall be a minimum of 75 mm (3 in) thick. Except for the floor, the anchoring systems shall provide independent support for each layer.

11.3.3 Anchoring penetration shall be not less than 70 % of the individual layer being anchored for a castable thickness greater than 50 mm (2 in). The anchor shall not be closer than 12 mm (0,5 in) to the hot-face.

11.3.4 The anchoring spacing shall be a maximum of three times the total lining thickness, but shall not exceed 300 mm (12 in) on a square pattern for walls and 225 mm (9 in) on a square pattern for arches. The anchor orientation shall be varied to avoid creating continuous shear planes.

11.3.5 Anchors for a total castable thickness up to 150 mm (6 in) shall be at least 5 mm (3/16 in) in diameter. For greater castable thicknesses, the anchors shall be at least 6,3 mm (1/4 in) in diameter.

11.3.6 Castable linings in header boxes, breechings and lined flue gas ducts and stacks shall not be less than 50 mm (2 in) thick.

- **11.3.7** In castable linings up to 50 mm (2 in) thick, fencing or wire mesh shall be used for anchoring the lining. The purchaser shall specify or agree if carbon steel material is acceptable.

11.3.8 Metallic fibre may be added for reinforcement only in castables of density 880 kg/m³ (55 lb/ft³) or higher. Metallic fibres shall be limited to no more than 3 % mass fraction of the dry mixture.

11.3.9 Low-iron-content (maximum 1,5 % mass fraction) materials shall be used when the total heavy-metals content of the fuel exceeds 100 mg/kg (100 ppm, by mass).

11.3.10 Castables with low iron content, or heavy-weight castables, shall be used on exposed hot-face walls if the total heavy-metals content, including sodium, within the fuel exceeds 250 mg/kg (250 ppm, by mass). Heavy-weight castables shall have a minimum density of 1 800 kg/m³ (110 lb/ft³) with an Al₂O₃ content of not less than 40 %. In aggregate, the Al₂O₃ content shall be not less than 40 % and the SiO₂ content shall not exceed 35 %.

11.3.11 Hydraulic-setting castables, in particular light-weight and medium-weight insulating castables, are susceptible to the development of alkaline hydrolysis (carbonization) placed under high ambient temperatures and/or high-humidity conditions shortly after placement. See 16.5.8 regarding placement and curing.

11.4 Ceramic-fibre construction

- **11.4.1** If specified or agreed by the purchaser, ceramic fibre in layered or modular construction may be used in all heater areas except stacks, ducts and floors.

11.4.2 The hot-face of layered ceramic-fibre blanket installations shall be a minimum of 25 mm (1 in) thick, 128 kg/m³ (8 lb/ft³) density, needled material. Ceramic fibreboard, if applied as a hot-face layer, shall not be less than 38 mm (1,5 in) thick nor have a density less than 240 kg/m³ (15 lb/ft³). Backup layers of ceramic-fibre blanket shall be needled material with a minimum density of 96 kg/m³ (6 lb/ft³). The size of the ceramic fibreboard, if used as hot-face layer, shall be limited to maximum dimensions of 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in × 24 in) if temperatures of the flue gases are below 1 100 °C (2 000 °F) and 450 mm × 450 mm (18 in × 18 in) if temperatures of the flue gases exceed 1 100 °C (2 000 °F).

11.4.3 Any layer of ceramic fibre shall be suitable for a service temperature at least 280 °C (500 °F) above its calculated hot-face temperature.

11.4.4 The hot-face layer of a ceramic-fibre blanket system shall be anchored at a maximum distance of 75 mm (3 in) from all edges.

11.4.5 The anchor spacing for arches shall not exceed the following rectangular pattern: 150 mm × 225 mm (6 in × 9 in) for 300 mm (12 in) wide blankets; 225 mm × 225 mm (9 in × 9 in) for 600 mm (24 in) wide blankets; 225 mm × 250 mm (9 in × 10 in) for 900 mm (36 in) wide blankets; and 225 mm × 270 mm (9 in × 10,5 in) for 1 200 mm (48 in) wide blankets.

11.4.6 The anchor spacing for walls shall not exceed the following rectangular pattern: 150 mm × 225 mm (6 in × 9 in) for 300 mm (12 in) wide blankets; 225 mm × 300 mm (9 in × 12 in) for 600 mm (24 in) wide blankets; and 270 mm × 300 mm (10,5 in × 12 in) for 1 200 mm (48 in) wide blankets.

11.4.7 Metallic anchor parts that are not shielded by tubes shall be completely wrapped with ceramic-fibre patches or be protected by ceramic retainer cups filled with mouldable ceramic fibre.

11.4.8 Ceramic-fibre blanket shall not be used as the hot-face layer if flue gas velocities are in excess of 12 m/s (40 ft/s). Wet-blanket, ceramic fibreboard, or ceramic-fibre modules shall be used on hot-face layers with velocities greater than 12 m/s (40 ft/s) but less than 24 m/s (80 ft/s). Hot-face refractory with velocities greater than 24 m/s (80 ft/s) shall have castable or external lining.

11.4.9 Ceramic-fibre blanket shall be installed with its longest dimension in the direction of gas flow. The hot-face layer of the blanket shall be constructed with all joints overlapped. Overlaps shall be in the direction of gas flow. Hot-face layers of ceramic fibreboard shall be constructed with tight butt joints.

11.4.10 Ceramic-fibre blanket used in backup layers shall be installed with butt joints with at least 25 mm (1 in) compression on the joints. All joints in successive layers of blanket shall be staggered.

11.4.11 Ceramic-fibre blanket modules shall be installed in soldier-course (with batten strips) patterns. Parquet pattern may be used only on arches.

11.4.12 Module systems shall be installed so that joints at each edge are compressed to avoid gaps due to shrinkage.

11.4.13 Modules applied in arches shall be designed so that anchorage is provided over at least 80 % of the module width.

11.4.14 Anchors shall be attached to the casing before modules are installed.

11.4.15 Anchor assembly shall be located in the module at a maximum distance of 50 mm (2 in) from the module cold face.

11.4.16 Module internal hardware shall be austenitic stainless steel or nickel alloy (see Table 11).

- **11.4.17** If ceramic-fibre construction is used with fuels having a sulfur content exceeding 10 mg/kg (10 ppm, by mass), the casing shall have an internal protective coating, specified or agreed by the purchaser, to prevent corrosion. The protective coating shall be rated for a 175 °C (350 °F) service temperature.

11.4.18 A vapour barrier of austenitic stainless-steel foil shall be provided if the fuel sulfur content exceeds 500 mg/kg (500 ppm, by mass). The vapour barrier shall be located so that the exposure temperature is at least 55 °C (100 °F) above the calculated acid dew point for all operating cases. Vapour-barrier edges shall be overlapped by at least 175 mm (7 in); edges and punctures shall be sealed.

11.4.19 Ceramic-fibre systems shall not be applied for services where the total heavy-metals content in the fuel exceeds 100 mg/kg (100 ppm, by mass).

11.4.20 Ceramic fibre shall not be used in convection sections where sootblowers, steam lances or waterwash facilities are initially provided.

11.4.21 Anchors shall be installed before applying protective coating to the casing. The coating shall cover the anchors so that uncoated parts are above the acid dew-point temperature.

11.5 Multi-component lining construction

11.5.1 Castable layers shall have a minimum thickness of 75 mm (3 in).

11.5.2 The anchoring system shall provide retention and support for each component layer.

11.5.3 Anchor types and installation for individual lining components shall meet the applicable requirements of 11.2, 11.3 and 11.4.

11.5.4 The material used in any layer shall be suitable for service temperatures in accordance with 11.1.4 and 11.4.3.

11.5.5 Brick may be used for hot-face service or as a backup layer if the hot-face layer is brick.

11.5.6 Block insulation shall be made of calcium silicate or mineral-wool fibre, with a minimum service-temperature rating of 983 °C (1 800 °F). Block insulation shall be used only as a backup material, but shall not be used if the fuel sulfur content exceeds 1 % mass fraction in liquid fuel or 100 mg/kg hydrogen sulfide in gas fuel. Block insulation shall not be used as backup material in floor construction.

11.5.7 If insulating block or ceramic fibre is used as backup insulation, the casing shall have a protective coating if the fuel sulfur content exceeds 10 mg/kg. The protective coating shall be rated for 175 °C (350 °F) service temperature.

11.5.8 If used as backup for castable, block insulation or ceramic-fibre blanket shall be sealed to prevent water migration from the castable.

11.5.9 The minimum density of insulating block and ceramic-fibre blanket used as backup materials shall be 130 kg/m³ (8 lb/ft³).

11.6 Materials

11.6.1 Materials shall conform to the following ASTM specifications or equivalent:

- a) fireclay brick, ASTM C 27;
- b) insulating firebrick, ASTM C 155;
- c) castable refractory, ASTM C 401, Class N, O, P, Q or R;
- d) vermiculite sieve analysis, ASTM C 332, Group I density;
- e) insulating block (mineral-slag wool, neutral pH), ASTM C 612, CL5;
- f) haydite, ASTM C 332, Group II:
 - 1) poured application: Fine Aggregate No. 4,
 - 2) gunned application: combined fine and coarse 10 mm (3/8 in) to Fine Aggregate No. 0.

11.6.2 The following materials shall have a composition as follows:

- a) lumnite or calcium aluminate cement: the mass fraction of Al₂O₃ shall be at least 35 %;
- b) ceramic fibre: the mass fraction of Al₂O₃ shall be at least 43 % and the remainder shall be primarily SiO₂ or ZrO₂.

12 Structures and appurtenances

12.1 General

- **12.1.1** The purchaser shall specify or agree the structural design code. Structures shall comply with the structural design code.
- 12.1.2** Minimum design loads for wind and earthquake shall conform to the structural design code.
- 12.1.3** Platform live loads shall be in accordance with the structural design code.
- 12.1.4** Structures and appurtenances shall be designed for all applicable load conditions expected during shipment, erection, operation, and maintenance. Cold-weather conditions shall be considered, particularly when the furnace is not in operation. These load conditions shall include, but are not limited to, dead load, wind load, earthquake load, live load and thermal load.
- 12.1.5** Design metal temperature of structures and appurtenances shall be the calculated metal temperature plus 55 °C (100 °F), based on the maximum flue gas and/or combustion air temperature expected for all operating modes with an ambient temperature of 27 °C (80 °F) in still air.
- 12.1.6** The effect of elevated design temperature on yield strength and modulus of elasticity shall be taken into account (see Table 12).
- 12.1.7** The material of the structures and appurtenances shall be adequate for all load conditions at the lowest specified ambient temperature when the furnace is not in operation.

12.2 Structures

- 12.2.1** All loads from the tubes and headers shall be supported by the structural steel and shall not be transmitted into the refractory.
- 12.2.2** Structural steel shall be designed to permit lateral and vertical expansion of all heater parts.
- 12.2.3** Heater casing shall be plate of a minimum thickness of 5 mm (3/16 in), which shall be reinforced against warping. Casing, if calculated to resist buckling stresses, shall have a minimum thickness of 6 mm (1/4 in). Floor and radiant roof plates shall have a minimum thickness of 6 mm (1/4 in).
- 12.2.4** Heater-casing plate shall be seal-welded externally to prevent air and water infiltration.
- **12.2.5** The heater structure shall be capable of supporting ladders, stairs and platforms in locations where installed or where specified by the purchaser for future use.
- 12.2.6** Flat-roof design shall allow for runoff of rainwater. This can be accomplished by arrangement of structural members and drain openings, by sloping the roof or with a secondary roof for weather protection. If pitched roofs are provided for weather protection, eaves and gables shall prevent the entry of windblown rain.
- **12.2.7** If fireproofing is specified by the purchaser, the main structural columns of the heater from the baseplate to the floor level plus the main floor beams shall be designed for the addition of 50 mm (2 in) of fireproofing.
- 12.2.8** Heaters with horizontal tubes that have return bends inside the firebox shall have removable end panels or panels in the sidewalls to provide access to the return-bend welds.
- 12.2.9** Duct structural systems shall support ductwork independent of expansion joints during operation, when idle or with duct sections removed.
- 12.2.10** The casing shall be reinforced at the burner mounting to maintain the burner alignment during operation. Gaskets shall be provided at each bolted burner mounting flange connection to the heater.

12.3 Header boxes, doors and ports

12.3.1 Header boxes

12.3.1.1 Each header box shall allow for the total tube expansion. A minimum clearance of 75 mm (3 in) shall be provided between the header box door refractory and the header in the hot position.

- **12.3.1.2** Header boxes enclosing plug headers shall have hinged doors or bolted end panels as specified by the purchaser.

12.3.1.3 Header boxes, including doors, shall be of 5 mm (3/16 in) minimum steel plate reinforced against warping. Header boxes shall be removable.

- **12.3.1.4** If specified by the purchaser, to minimize flue gas bypassing, horizontal partitions shall be provided in convection-section header boxes at a spacing no greater than 1,5 m (5 ft).

12.3.1.5 Gaskets shall be used in all header-box joints to achieve airtightness. Where terminals and crossovers protrude through the header box, the opening around the coil shall be sealed to minimize leakage.

12.3.2 Doors and ports

12.3.2.1 Two access doors having a minimum clear opening of 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in × 24 in) shall be provided for each radiant chamber of a box or cabin heater.

12.3.2.2 One access door having a minimum clear opening of 450 mm × 450 mm (18 in × 18 in) shall be provided in the floor for vertical cylindrical heaters. A bolted and gasketed access door shall also be provided in any air plenum below the floor accessway. Where space is not available, access via a burner port is acceptable.

12.3.2.3 One access door having a minimum clear opening of 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in × 24 in), or 600 mm (24 in) in diameter, shall be provided in the stack or breeching for access to the damper and convection sections.

12.3.2.4 One tube-removal door having a minimum clear opening of 450 mm × 600 mm (18 in × 24 in) shall be provided in the arch of each radiant chamber of vertical tube heaters.

12.3.2.5 Observation doors and ports shall be provided for viewing all radiant tubes and all burner flames for proper operation and for light-off.

12.3.2.6 Access doors having a minimum clear opening of 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in × 24 in) shall be provided to ducts, plenums and at all duct connections to APHs and control dampers.

12.3.2.7 Observation doors and ports shall be provided for viewing radiant tube guides, radiant tube supports, and tubes in the lowest row of the convection section.

12.3.2.8 Access doors shall be bolted to minimize air ingress during operation. Access doors weighing greater than 50 kg (110 lb) require lifting lugs. Handles should not be used on doors exceeding 50 kg (110 lb) in weight. Observation ports may be integrated with access doors. Refractory around access doors should be designed and installed to prevent hot flue gas or radiation from causing damage to the door and mounting frame. Floor access doors should have a mechanical support device installed to assist during opening.

12.4 Ladders, platforms and stairways

12.4.1 Platforms shall be provided as follows:

- a) at burner and burner controls that are not accessible from grade;
- b) at both ends of the convection section for maintenance purposes;

- c) at damper and sootblower locations for maintenance and operation purposes;
- d) at all observation ports and firebox access doors not accessible from grade;
- e) at auxiliary equipment, such as steam drums, fans, drivers and APHs as required for operating and maintenance purposes;
- f) at all areas necessary to meet the requirements of 15.5.

12.4.2 Vertical cylindrical heaters with shell diameters greater than 3 m (10 ft) shall have a full circular platform at the floor level. Individual ladders and platforms to each observation door may be used if shell diameters are 3 m (10 feet) or less.

12.4.3 Platforms shall have a minimum clear width as follows:

- a) operating platforms: 900 mm (3 ft);
- b) maintenance platforms: 900 mm (3 ft);
- c) walkways: 750 mm (2,5 ft).

- **12.4.4** Platform decking shall have a minimum thickness of 6 mm (1/4 in) checkered plate or 25 mm × 5 mm (1 in × 3/16 in) open grating, as specified by the purchaser. Stair treads shall be open grating with a checkered plate nosing.

12.4.5 Dual access shall be provided to each operating platform, except if the individual platform length is less than 6 m (20 ft).

12.4.6 An intermediate landing shall be provided if the vertical rise exceeds 9 m (30 ft) for ladders and 4,5 m (15 ft) for stairways.

12.4.7 Ladders shall be caged from a point 2,3 m (7,5 ft) above grade or any platform. A self-closing safety gate shall be provided for all ladders serving platforms and landings. Ladders shall be arranged for side step-off; step-through ladders shall not be used unless specified or agreed by the purchaser.

12.4.8 Stairs shall have a minimum width of 750 mm (2,5 ft), a minimum tread width of 240 mm (9,5 in), and a maximum riser of 200 mm (8 in). The slope of the stairway shall not exceed a 9 (vertical) to 12 (horizontal) ratio.

12.4.9 Headroom over platforms, walkways and stairways shall be a minimum of 2,1 m (7 ft).

12.4.10 Handrails shall be provided on all platforms, walkways and stairways.

12.4.11 Handrails, ladders and platforms shall be arranged so as not to interfere with tube handling. Where interference exists, removable sections shall be provided.

12.5 Materials

- **12.5.1** Materials for service at design ambient temperatures below – 30 °C (– 20 °F) shall be as specified by the purchaser. For ambient temperatures below – 20 °C (– 5 °F), special low-temperature steels shall be considered.

12.5.2 The mechanical properties and the chemical composition of structural, alloy or stainless steels shall comply with ISO Standard requirements or their equivalent.

12.5.3 For metal temperatures lower than 425 °C (800 °F), stacks, ducts and breeching shall be constructed from one of the following structural grades of steel: EN 10025-2:2004, Annex A (grades Fe360, Fe430, Fe510), ASTM (A 36, A 242, A 572), or their equivalent.

12.5.4 If metal temperatures exceed 425 °C (800 °F), stainless or alloy steels shall be used.

12.5.5 The mechanical properties of the steels at temperatures between 0 °C (32 °F) and 425 °C (800 °F) shall be determined according to the values given in Table 12.

12.5.6 If the minimum service temperature is – 18 °C (0 °F) or higher, bolting material shall be in accordance with ASTM A 307, ASTM A 325, ASTM A 193-B7 or equivalent. Below – 18 °C (0 °F), A 193-B7 bolts with A 194-2H nuts, A 320-L7 bolting or equivalent shall be used. No welding is permitted on A 320-L7 or A 193-B7 materials.

Table 12 — Minimum yield strength, F_y , and modulus of elasticity, E , for structural steel

T °C (°F)	EN 10025-2, Annex A: Fe 360		EN 10025-2, Annex A: Fe 430		EN 10025-2, Annex A: Fe 510		ASTM A 36		ASTM A 242		ASTM A 572 grade 50	
	F_y	E	F_y	E	F_y	E	F_y	E	F_y	E	F_y	E
	MN/m ² (psi × 10 ³)	GN/m ² (psi × 10 ⁶)	MN/m ² (psi × 10 ³)	GN/m ² (psi × 10 ⁶)	MN/m ² (psi × 10 ³)	GN/m ² (psi × 10 ⁶)	MN/m ² (psi × 10 ³)	GN/m ² (psi × 10 ⁶)	MN/m ² (psi × 10 ³)	GN/m ² (psi × 10 ⁶)	MN/m ² (psi × 10 ³)	GN/m ² (psi × 10 ⁶)
20 (70)	235 (34,1)	210 (30,5)	275 (39,9)	210 (30,5)	355 (51,5)	210 (30,5)	248 (36,0)	200 (29,0)	290 (42,1)	192 (27,8)	344 (50,0)	207 (30,0)
200 (390)	207 (30,0)	202 (29,3)	242 (35,1)	202 (29,3)	312 (45,3)	202 (29,3)	200 (29,0)	193 (28,0)	261 (37,9)	186 (27,0)	296 (42,9)	200 (29,0)
250 (480)	196 (28,4)	198 (28,7)	229 (33,2)	198 (28,7)	295 (42,8)	198 (28,7)	192 (27,8)	189 (27,4)	254 (36,8)	182 (26,4)	283 (41,1)	196 (28,4)
300 (570)	183 (26,5)	192 (27,8)	214 (31,0)	192 (27,8)	276 (40,0)	192 (27,8)	183 (26,5)	185 (26,8)	246 (35,7)	177 (25,7)	271 (39,4)	191 (27,7)
350 (660)	169 (24,5)	185 (26,8)	197 (28,6)	185 (26,8)	255 (37,0)	185 (26,8)	175 (25,4)	180 (26,1)	238 (34,5)	171 (24,8)	264 (38,3)	186 (27,0)
425 (800)	161 (23,4)	173 (25,1)	178 (25,8)	173 (25,1)	230 (33,4)	173 (25,1)	161 (23,4)	176 (25,5)	229 (33,2)	161 (23,4)	248 (36,0)	173 (25,1)

13 Stacks, ducts and breeching

13.1 General

13.1.1 Clause 13 applies to the structural design of ducts, breeching and self-supporting vertical steel stacks of circular or conical section.

- **13.1.2** The design of stacks, ducts and breechings shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of the codes and standards specified by the purchaser and, as a minimum requirement, shall comply with Clause 13.

13.2 Design considerations

13.2.1 Stacks shall be self-supporting and shall be bolted to their supporting structure.

- **13.2.2** Stack intermediate construction shall be performed with full-penetration welding or, if agreed by the purchaser, shall be bolted.

13.2.3 Breeching and ducting shall be of welded or bolted construction.

13.2.4 External attachments to stacks shall be seal-welded.

13.2.5 Stacks, ducts and breeching mounted on concrete shall be designed to prevent concrete temperatures in excess of 150 °C (300 °F).

13.2.6 Connections between stacks and flue gas ducts shall not be welded.

13.2.7 A corrosion-resistant metal cap should be provided at the top of the stack lining refractory to protect its horizontal surface from the weather.

13.2.8 Linings can be required in steel stacks for one or more of the following purposes:

- a) fire protection;
- b) to protect structural steel from gases of excessively high temperature;
- c) corrosion protection;
- d) to maintain the flue gas temperature at least 20 °C (35 °F) above the acid dew point;
- e) to reduce potential for aerodynamic instability.

13.2.9 The suitability of specialist linings other than refractory should be discussed with the manufacturers but consideration should be given to their strength, flexibility, thermal properties and resistance to chemical attack.

13.2.10 Castable linings shall be secured to stacks, ducts and breeching by suitable anchorage (see 11.3.7).

13.2.11 All openings and connections on the stack, duct or breeching shall be sealed to prevent air or flue gas leakage.

13.2.12 Breeching shall have a minimum clear distance beyond the last (present or future) convection row of 0,8 m (2,5 ft) for access and flue gas distribution. At least one take-off shall be provided every 12 m (40 ft) of convection-section tube length.

13.2.13 Stacks, ducts and breeching shall be designed for all applicable load conditions expected during shipment, erection and operation. Snow and ice shall be considered, particularly when the furnace is not in operation. These load conditions shall include, but not be limited to, dead load, wind load, earthquake load, live load and thermal load.

13.2.14 The combination of loads that could occur simultaneously to create the maximum load condition shall be the design load, but in no case shall individual loads create stresses that exceed those allowed by 13.4. Wind and earthquake loads shall not be considered as acting simultaneously.

13.2.15 The minimum thickness of the stack shell plate shall be 6 mm (1/4 in), including corrosion allowance. The minimum corrosion allowance shall be 1,6 mm (1/16 in) for lined stacks and 3,2 mm (1/8 in) for unlined stacks.

13.2.16 The minimum number of anchor bolts for any stack shall be eight.

13.2.17 Lifting lugs on stacks, if required, shall be designed for the lifting load as the stack is raised from a horizontal to a vertical position.

13.2.18 Design metal temperature of stacks, ducts and breeching shall be the calculated metal temperature plus 50 °C (90 °F), based on the maximum flue gas temperature expected for all operating modes with an ambient temperature of 27 °C (80 °F) with zero wind velocity.

13.2.19 The minimum thickness of breeching and duct plate shall be 5 mm (3/16 in).

13.2.20 Ducts and breeching shall be stiffened to prevent excessive warpage and deflection. Deflection of castable refractory lined ducts and breeching shall be limited to 1/360th of the span. Deflection of other ducts and breeching shall be limited to 1/240th of the span.

13.3 Design methods

Where no specific requirements are given by the purchaser, one of the methods given in H.2 or H.3 should be adopted.

13.4 Static design

13.4.1 All stacks shall be designed as cantilever beam columns.

13.4.2 Linings shall not be considered as contributing to the strength of the stack, duct or breeching.

13.4.3 Discontinuities in the stack shell plate, such as conical-to-cylindrical junctions and non-circular transitions, shall be designed so that the combined membrane and bending stresses in the stack shell or stiffening rings do not exceed 90 % of the minimum yield strength of the respective materials at design temperature.

13.4.4 Openings cut into the stack shall be limited in size to a clear width no greater than two-thirds of the stack diameter. For two openings opposite each other, each chord shall not exceed the stack radius. Openings shall be reinforced to fully restore the required structural capacity of the uncut section.

13.4.5 Apertures in the stack shell plates, other than flue inlets, shall have the corners radiused to a minimum of 10 times the plate thickness.

13.4.6 Changes in cylindrical stack diameters shall be made with cones having an apex angle of 60° or less.

13.4.7 Ring stiffeners provided to carry wind pressure should be designed for the circumferential bending moments.

13.4.8 Circumferential bending moments due to wind pressure may be neglected in unstiffened cylindrical shells if the ratio $R/t \leq 160$, where R is the radius and t is the corroded thickness of the shell.

13.4.9 Stiffening rings are required if $t \leq (5M/9F_{ys})^{0.5}$ and shall be provided as follows:

- a) ring spacing limits: $1 \leq H_s/D < 3$
- b) ring section modulus required: $Z \geq H_s M / (0,6 F_{yr})$

where

- M is the maximum circumferential moment per unit length of shell, expressed in newton metres per metre (inch-pounds per inch);
- F_{ys} is the minimum yield strength of shell material at design temperature, expressed in newtons per square millimetre (pounds per square inch);
- t is the corroded shell thickness, expressed in millimetres (inches);
- H_s is the ring spacing, expressed in millimetres (inches);
- D is the shell diameter, expressed in millimetres (inches);
- Z is the section modulus of the ring, expressed in cubic millimetres (cubic inches);
- F_{yr} is the minimum yield strength of the ring stiffener at the shell design temperature, expressed in newtons per square millimetre (pounds per square inch).

13.4.10 Stack deflection due to static wind loads shall not exceed 1 in 200 of stack height, based on the shell-plate thickness less 50 % of the corrosion allowance and without considering the presence of a lining.

13.4.11 The permitted deviation (execution tolerance), δ , from the vertical of the steel shell at any level above the base of the erected stack shall be determined from Equation (3) in metres or Equation (4) in (feet):

$$\delta = \frac{h}{1000\sqrt{1+50/h}} \quad (3)$$

or

$$\delta = \frac{h}{1000\sqrt{1+164/h}} \quad (4)$$

where

h is the stack height, expressed in metres (feet).

13.5 Wind-induced vibration design

13.5.1 A dynamic analysis shall be made to determine the stack's response to wind and earthquake action. If no specific requirements are given by the purchaser, the methods given in Annex H should be adopted for the dynamics due to wind.

13.5.2 If the critical wind speed for the first mode of vibration of the stack is 1,25 times higher than the maximum (hourly mean) design wind speed (evaluated at the top of the stack), dynamic loads resulting from cross-wind response need not be included in the design load.

13.5.3 If analysis indicates that excessive vibrations due to cross-winds are possible, one of the following methods to reduce vortex-induced amplitudes shall be used.

- a) Increase mass and structural damping characteristics (e.g. use of refractory lining).
- b) Use a mass damper (e.g. tuned pendulum damper).
- c) Use aerodynamic devices (e.g. helical or vertical strakes as described in 13.5.4 and 13.5.5 or staggered vertical plates as described in 13.5.6), the choice of which shall be specified or agreed by the purchaser. Annex H gives recommendations regarding the application of spoilers or strakes.
- d) Modify stack length and/or diameter until acceptable vibration characteristics are achieved.

13.5.4 If strakes are required to disrupt wind-induced vibration, they shall be used on at least the upper third of the stack height.

13.5.5 Helical strakes shall consist of three rectangular strakes of 6 mm (1/4 in) thickness at 120° spacing with a pitch of five diameters and a projection of 0,1 diameters.

13.5.6 Staggered vertical plates shall be not less than 6 mm (1/4 in) thick and not more than 1,5 m (5 ft) long. Three strakes shall be placed at 120° around the stack and shall project 0,10 diameters from the outside of the stack. Adjacent levels of strakes shall be staggered 30° from each other.

13.5.7 If a stack is positioned within close proximity of other tall structures, consideration should be given to the possibility of buffeting effects.

13.5.8 If a stack is positioned adjacent to another stack or tall cylindrical vessel, the minimum recommended spacing between centres is $4d_{\max}$, where $d_{\max}$ is the largest diameter of the adjacent structures. Interference effects may be neglected for spacing between centres of greater than $15d_{\max}$.

13.5.9 For a stack downwind of an adjacent stack or a tall vessel, interference effects shall be accounted for by an increase in wind load.

13.6 Materials

The material of the stack, breeching and duct shall be adequate for all load conditions at the lowest specified ambient temperature when the furnace is not in operation (see 12.5).

14 Burners and auxiliary equipment

14.1 Burners

14.1.1 Burner design, selection, spacing, location, installation and operation shall ensure against flame impingement on tubes, tube supports and flame exiting the radiant section of the heater throughout the entire operating range of the burners. The location and operation of burners shall ensure complete combustion within the radiant section of the heater.

14.1.2 Burners shall be designed in accordance with all local and national statutes and regulations.

14.1.3 For burner clearances, the data given in Table 13 shall be used for natural-draught burners and in Table 14 for forced-draught burners. The tables are based on low NO_x burners which are designed to reduce the formation of NO_x below levels generated during normal combustion in conventional burners.

14.1.4 In addition to 14.1.3, the following shall apply.

- a) The number and size of burners shall ensure that the visible flame length is a maximum of two-thirds of the radiant section height. For floor-fired heaters the CO content at the bridge wall shall be a maximum of 40 ml/m³ (40 ppm, by volume) for gas-fired heaters, or 80 ml/m³ (80 ppm, by volume) for oil-fired heaters, at maximum design firing conditions.
- b) For horizontal opposed firing, the minimum visible clearance between directly opposed firing flame tips shall be 1,2 m (4 ft).

14.1.5 For burners outside the range given in Tables 13 and 14, verifiable data shall be obtained before any design is finalized. For high heat releases, see 14.1.8 for burners and 14.1.10 for pilots.

14.1.6 For other types of burners (e.g. fan-shaped flame or radiant-wall flame), vendor or other verifiable data shall be obtained.

14.1.7 All burners shall be sized for a maximum heat release at the design excess air based on the following:

- a) five or fewer burners: 120 % of normal heat release at design conditions;
- b) six or seven burners: 115 % of normal heat release at design conditions;
- c) eight or more burners: 110 % of normal heat release at design conditions.

- **14.1.8** For liquid-fuel-fired heaters with a maximum heat release greater than 4,4 MW (15×10^6 Btu/h), a minimum of three burners shall be used. Alternatively, if specified or agreed by the purchaser, a single burner with auxiliary guns may be used to permit gun maintenance without shutting down or upsetting the process.

14.1.9 Gas pilots shall be provided for each burner, unless otherwise specified.

Table 13 — Minimum clearance guidelines for natural-draught operation

Burner type	Maximum heat release per burner ^a		Minimum clearance							
			A		B		C		D	
			Vertical to centreline roof tubes or refractory (vertical firing only)		Horizontal from burner centreline to wall tubes centreline		Horizontal from burner centreline to unshielded refractory		Between opposing burners (horizontal firing)	
	MW	(Btu/h × 10 ⁶)	m	(ft)	m	(ft)	m	(ft)	m	(ft)
Oil-firing	1,0	(3,41)	4,3	(14,1)	0,8	(2,6)	0,56	(1,9)	6,5	(21,4)
	1,5	(5,12)	5,6	(18,5)	0,9	(3,0)	0,70	(2,3)	8,8	(29,0)
	2,0	(6,8)	7,0	(22,9)	1,1	(3,5)	0,83	(2,7)	11,2	(36,7)
	2,5	(8,5)	8,3	(27,4)	1,2	(3,9)	0,96	(3,1)	13,3	(43,6)
	3,0	(10,2)	9,7	(31,8)	1,3	(4,3)	1,09	(3,6)	14,8	(48,7)
	3,5	(11,9)	11,0	(36,2)	1,4	(4,7)	1,22	(4,0)	16,4	(53,8)
	4,0	(13,6)	12,4	(40,7)	1,6	(5,2)	1,35	(4,4)	18,0	(59,0)
Gas-firing	0,5	(1,71)	2,6	(8,5)	0,6	(1,9)	0,44	(1,4)	3,4	(11,1)
	1,0	(3,41)	3,6	(11,9)	0,7	(2,4)	0,56	(1,9)	4,9	(16,2)
	1,5	(5,11)	4,6	(15,2)	0,8	(2,8)	0,70	(2,3)	6,5	(21,4)
	2,0	(6,82)	5,6	(18,5)	1,0	(3,2)	0,83	(2,7)	8,1	(26,5)
	2,5	(8,53)	6,7	(21,8)	1,1	(3,6)	0,96	(3,1)	9,6	(31,6)
	3,0	(10,24)	7,7	(25,2)	1,2	(4,1)	1,09	(3,6)	11,1	(36,4)
	3,5	(11,94)	8,7	(28,5)	1,4	(4,5)	1,22	(4,0)	11,9	(38,9)
	4,0	(13,65)	9,7	(31,8)	1,5	(4,9)	1,35	(4,4)	12,6	(41,5)
	4,5	(15,36)	10,7	(35,1)	1,6	(5,3)	1,48	(4,8)	13,4	(44,0)
	5,0	(17,06)	11,7	(38,5)	1,8	(5,7)	1,61	(5,3)	14,2	(46,6)
For horizontal firing, the distance between the burner centreline and the roof tube centreline or refractory shall be 50 % greater than the distances in column B. For combination liquid-and-gas burners, the clearances shall be based on liquid-fuel firing, except if liquid fuel is used for start-up only. For conventional gas burners, the longitudinal clearance may be decreased. This shall be achieved by multiplying dimensions in column A by a factor of 0,77 and column D by a factor of 0,67. For intermediate firing rates, the required clearances may be achieved by linear interpolation. The clearances in column A and column D should be increased by 20 % for low NO_x burners with NO_x levels below 70 mg/m³ (34 ppm, by volume) based on a single burner with natural-gas firing, with 15 % excess ambient air and a firebox temperature of 870 °C (1 600 °F).										
NOTE Fuel-gas composition can affect the flame length.										
^a Lower heating value (LHV).										

Table 14 — Minimum clearance guidelines for forced-draught operations

Burner type	Maximum heat release per burner ^a		Horizontal distance to centreline of wall tubes from burner centreline	
	MW	(Btu/h $\times 10^6$)	m	(ft)
Oil-firing	2,00	(6,820)	0,932	(3,058)
	3,00	(10,240)	1,182	(3,878)
	4,00	(13,650)	1,359	(4,458)
	5,00	(17,060)	1,520	(4,987)
	6,00	(20,470)	1,664	(5,459)
	8,00	(27,300)	1,919	(6,292)
	10,00	(34,120)	2,143	(7,031)
	12,00	(40,950)	2,346	(7,697)
Gas-firing	2,00	(6,820)	0,932	(3,058)
	3,00	(10,240)	1,182	(3,878)
	4,00	(13,650)	1,359	(4,458)
	5,00	(17,060)	1,520	(4,987)
	6,00	(20,470)	1,664	(5,459)
	8,00	(27,290)	1,786	(5,860)
	10,00	(34,120)	1,923	(6,309)
	12,00	(40,950)	2,035	(6,677)
For horizontal firing, the distance between the burner centreline and the roof tube centreline or refractory shall be 50 % greater than the distances shown in the column above. For combination liquid-and-gas burners, the clearances shall be based on liquid-fuel firing, except if liquid fuel is used for start-up only. For intermediate firing rates, the required clearances may be achieved by linear interpolation. Lack of data does not allow other clearances to be specified. At high peak flux, additional clearances may be required.				
^a Lower heating value (LHV).				

14.1.10 If a continuous pilot is provided, it shall meet the following requirements.

- a) The pilot shall have a nominal heat release of 22 kW (75 000 Btu/h). The minimum heat release shall be approved by the purchaser if it is for a high capacity burner whose heat release is 4,4 MW (15×10^6 Btu/h) or greater.
- b) The pilot burner shall be provided with a continuous supply of air, under all operating conditions. This includes operation with the main burner out of service.
- c) The pilot burner shall remain stable over the full firing range of the main burner. It shall also remain stable upon loss of main burner fuel, minimum draught, all combustion air flow rates and for all operating conditions.
- d) The pilot shall be positioned and sized to ensure that it is capable of lighting any of the main burner fuels. The purchaser shall specify the minimum main fuel flow rate during cold-burner light-off.
- e) The pilot shall be capable of relighting an individual main burner over the full range of fuels. The combustion air flow rate might need to be reduced for satisfactory reignition, particularly for forced-draught and low- NO_x burners.

14.1.11 Burner tile installations shall be designed to be supported and to expand and contract as a unit, independent of the heater refractory.

14.1.12 Burner tiles shall be supplied, pre-dried as required, so as to allow full firing after installation without further treatment. Burner tiles fabricated from water-based and hydrous materials shall be pre-dried to no less than 260 °C (500 °F).

14.1.13 The materials used for construction of a burner shall be chosen for strength, as well as temperature- and corrosion-resistance, for the anticipated service conditions. Burner components shall be designed in accordance with the minimum requirements shown in Table 15.

14.1.14 The burner shall maintain flame stability when operating at 33 % of the maximum heat release with air controls set for maximum heat release.

14.1.15 The burner shall use no less than 90 % of the maximum available draught loss at the maximum specified heat release.

14.1.16 The burner fuel valve and air registers shall be operable from grade or platforms. A means shall be provided to view the burner and pilot flame during light-off and operating adjustment.

- **14.1.17** If a natural-draught burner is to be used in forced-draught service, the purchaser shall specify the required heater capacity during natural-draught operation, if required.

14.1.18 Oil burners should be designed to operate at a normal kinematic viscosity of 15 mm²/s (15 cSt) to 20 mm²/s (20 cSt). The maximum shall not exceed 40 mm²/s (40 cSt).

14.1.19 Atomizing steam shall be supplied dry at the burner or with slight superheat.

14.1.20 If volatile fuels, such as naphtha or gasoline, are burned, a safety interlock shall be provided on each burner. The interlock design shall (in sequence) shut off the fuel, purge the oil gun and shut off the purge medium before the gun can be removed.

14.1.21 Oil guns shall be removable while the heater is in operation.

- **14.1.22** The purchaser shall specify whether gas guns, diffusers or the complete burner assembly shall be removable.

Table 15 — Materials of construction

	Component	Operation	Material
Fuel gas (burner and pilot)	Fuel-gas manifold and piping	Normal	Cast iron or carbon steel
		> 100 mg/kg H ₂ S and > 150 °C (300 °F) fuel	AISI 316L stainless steel
	Fuel-gas riser pipe	Normal	Carbon steel
		> 370 °C (700 °F) combustion air	AISI 304 stainless steel
		> 100 ml/m ³ (ppm, v) H ₂ S and either > 150 °C (300 °F) fuel or > 205 °C (400 °F) combustion air	AISI 316L stainless steel
	Fuel-gas tip	Normal	Cast iron or AISI 300 series stainless steel
		> 100 mg/kg H ₂ S and either > 150 °C (300 °F) fuel or > 205 °C (400 °F) combustion air	AISI 310 stainless steel
	Premix venturi	Normal	Cast iron or carbon steel
Fuel oil	Oil-gun receiver and body	Normal	Ductile iron
	Oil-gun tip	Normal	AISI 416 stainless steel
		Erosive oils	T-1 or M-2 tool steel
	Atomizer	Normal	Brass or AISI 300 series stainless steel
		> 3 % (mass fraction) sulfur	AISI 303 stainless steel
	Atomizer body only	Erosive fuel oils ^a	Nitride-hardened alloy
Other	Normal	Carbon steel	
Burner housing	Exterior casing	Normal	Carbon steel
		Preheated combustion air	Insulated carbon steel
	Flame stabilizer or cone	Normal	AISI 300 series stainless steel
		≤ 370 °C (700 °F) combustion air	Mineral wool ^b
		> 370 °C (700 °F) combustion air	Mineral wool covered with erosion protection liner ^b
	Other interior metal parts	Normal	Carbon steel
		> 370 °C (700 °F) combustion air	ASTM A 242 or AISI 304 stainless steel
	Burner tile	Normal	> 40 % alumina refractory
		High intensity combustor	> 85 % alumina castable refractory/firebrick
	Oil-firing tile	≤ 50 mg/kg (V + Na)	≥ 60 % alumina refractory
> 50 mg/kg (V + Na)		> 90 % alumina refractory	
ASTM and AISI material grades are indicative of chemical composition; other grades may be used if they have similar properties.			
^a Erosive fuel oils are those which contain 3 % or more (by mass) of sulfur, catalyst fines or other particulates.			
^b Castables shall be used for oil firing where surfaces can be soaked with fuel oil.			

14.2 Sootblowers

- **14.2.1** Sootblowers shall be automatic, sequential and/or fully retractable, as specified by the purchaser. Sootblowers normally use steam, but other types are available (e.g. air and acoustic devices) and these may be used if specified by the purchaser.
- 14.2.2** Individual sootblowers shall be designed to pass a minimum of 4 500 kg/h (10 000 lb/h) of steam with a minimum steam gauge pressure of 1 030 kPa (150 psi) at the inlet flange.
- 14.2.3** Retractable sootblower lances shall have two nozzles, an air bleed and a check valve to stop flue gas entering. The minimum distance at any position between the lance outside diameter and the bare-tube outside diameter shall be 225 mm (9 in).
- 14.2.4** Spacing of retractable sootblowers shall be based upon a maximum horizontal or vertical coverage of 1,2 m (4 ft) from the lance centreline, or five tube rows, whichever is less. The first (bottom) row of shield tubes may be neglected from sootblower coverage. Tube supports are considered as a limit to individual sootblower coverage.
- 14.2.5** Erosion protection shall be provided for convection-section walls located within the soot-blowing zones, using castable refractory with a minimum density of 2 000 kg/m³ (125 lb/ft³).
- 14.2.6** Retractable sootblower entrance ports (through the refractory wall) shall be provided with stainless-steel sleeves.

14.3 Fans and drivers

Fans and drivers for use with fired heaters shall be designed and built in accordance with the requirements of Annex E.

14.4 Dampers and damper controls for stacks and ducts

- 14.4.1** Butterfly dampers shall be limited to stacks and ducts having a maximum internal cross-sectional area of 1,2 m² (13 ft²).
- 14.4.2** Louvre dampers shall have a minimum of one blade for every 1,2 m² (13 ft²) of internal cross-sectional area in the stack or duct. The blades shall have approximately equal surface areas. Blades shall have opposed movement unless they are located at the fan suction, in which case there will be parallel closing movement opposite to the fan rotation.
- 14.4.3** Damper shafts and bolting shall be of the same materials as the blade.
- 14.4.4** Damper bearings and control mechanisms shall be external. Bearings shall be self-aligning, of non-lubricated graphite and mounted in the bearing manufacturer's standard housing.
- **14.4.5** Control dampers shall be designed to move to the position specified by the purchaser in the event of failure of either the damper control signal or the motive force.
- 14.4.6** Dampers shall be equipped with a visual indicator of external blade position on the damper shaft and on any remote control mechanism.
- 14.4.7** Dampers shall be furnished with a position control mechanism that is operable from grade and is capable of holding the damper blade in any position from fully open to fully closed. The damper controller shall provide positive action to translate the damper blade into either an open or a closed direction.
- 14.4.8** Manual damper operators shall be designed so that one person can, without excessive effort, position the damper blade in any desired position. Wire-rope damper operators shall be a minimum of 3 mm (1/8 in) in diameter, made of austenitic stainless-steel wire rope with galvanized hardware, such as thimbles, turnbuckles and clamps.

14.4.9 Damper materials shall be limited to maximum service temperatures as follows:

- a) carbon steel: 430 °C (805 °F);
- b) 5Cr-1/2Mo: 650 °C (1 200 °F);
- c) 18Cr-8Ni: 815 °C (1 500 °F);
- d) 25Cr-12Ni: 980 °C (1 800 °F).

14.4.10 Stack service temperature shall be defined as maximum predicted stack flue gas temperature plus 140 °C (250 °F).

14.4.11 Stack and flue gas duct dampers shall have blades of minimum thickness 6 mm (0.25 in).

15 Instrument and auxiliary connections

15.1 Flue gas and air

15.1.1 Flue gas and combustion air temperature

15.1.1.1 One connection shall be provided in the flue gas exit of each radiant section for each 9 m (30 ft) of radiant box length or diameter. At least two connections shall be provided.

15.1.1.2 One connection shall be provided in the convection section, preceding the first process or utility coil, if multi-radiant-section heaters or multiple heaters have their flue gas combined to a common convection section, for each 9 m (30 ft) of convection tube length.

15.1.1.3 One connection shall be provided in the convection section immediately after each process or utility coil for each 9 m (30 ft) of convection tube length. A minimum of two connections shall be provided after the last convection coil.

15.1.1.4 Connections shall be provided in each stack and each take-off to a stack.

15.1.1.5 Connections shall be provided in the inlet and outlet air and flue gas ductwork of an air heater and final combustion air to the burners.

15.1.1.6 The connections furnished shall be DN 40 (1½ NPS), 20 MPa (3 000 lb) screwed forged-steel couplings welded to the outside casing plate. If the refractory lining exceeds 75 mm (3 in) in thickness, the opening shall be lined with austenitic stainless-steel pipe (schedule 80). A hex-head forged-steel screwed plug shall be furnished with each coupling. Flanged connections may also be used.

15.1.2 Flue gas and combustion air pressure

15.1.2.1 Two connections shall be provided in each radiant section located 300 mm to 600 mm (1 ft to 2 ft) above the top of the floor refractory.

15.1.2.2 For heaters with horizontal firing, one connection shall be provided at the highest burner centre-line on each burner wall.

15.1.2.3 Two connections shall be provided in each radiant section at the point of minimum draught.

15.1.2.4 A connection shall be provided in the convection-section outlet immediately after the final process or utility coil.

15.1.2.5 Connections shall be provided upstream and downstream of the draught-control dampers.

15.1.2.6 Connections shall be provided in the inlet and outlet ductwork connected with a fan.

15.1.2.7 Connections shall be provided in the inlet and outlet flue gas and combustion air ducting of a combustion air heater.

15.1.2.8 A connection of at least DN 15 (½ NPS) shall be provided at a suitable location downstream of any combustion air-control damper in the burner windbox or plenum.

15.1.2.9 The connections furnished shall be DN 40 (1½ NPS), 20 MPa (3 000 lb) screwed forged-steel couplings welded to the outside casing plate. If the refractory lining exceeds 75 mm (3 in) in thickness, the opening shall be lined with austenitic stainless-steel pipe (schedule 80). A hex-head forged-steel screwed plug shall be furnished with each coupling.

15.1.3 Flue gas sampling

15.1.3.1 Connections shall be provided in the flue gas exit from each radiant section.

15.1.3.2 Connections shall be provided at the convection-section outlet.

15.1.3.3 Connections shall be provided in each stack and each take-off to a stack in compliance with environmental air-quality monitoring requirements as specified by the appropriate regulatory body. Sampling-point locations shall be determined according to environmental requirements regarding upstream and downstream flow disturbances.

15.1.3.4 The connections shall be DN 100 (4 NPS) schedule 80 pipe with a class PN 20 (ASME class 150) raised-face flange. The pipe shall be welded to the outside casing plate and project 200 mm (8 in) to the face of the flange. The heater vendor shall furnish for each connection a class PN 20 (ASME class 150) blind flange with appropriate gaskets for the temperature and corrosive conditions of the flue gas. The pipe shall extend 38 mm (1,5 in) into the heater from the hot-face of the refractory lining.

- **15.1.3.5** Additional connections to meet applicable governmental or local environmental requirements shall be specified by the purchaser.

15.2 Process fluid temperature

- **15.2.1** The heater vendor shall provide fluid thermowell connections in the convection-to-radiant crossovers, if specified by the purchaser.
- **15.2.2** If process-outlet thermowell connections are specified by the purchaser and individual outlets are provided by the heater vendor, the thermowell connections shall be furnished as part of the outlet piping system. If an outlet manifold is furnished, the specified thermowell connections shall be provided by the heater vendor.

15.2.3 Process-fluid thermowell connections shall be DN 40 (1 1/2 NPS) raised-face flanges with a rating adequate for the fluid-design pressure and temperature. The material shall be the same as the tube or pipe to which it is connected.

15.3 Auxiliary connections

15.3.1 Purge-steam connections

15.3.1.1 Purge connections may also be used as snuffing-steam connections.

15.3.1.2 A minimum of two purge connections shall be provided of minimum size DN 20 (¾ NPS) and minimum rating 20 MPa (3 000 lb) for each firebox. The connections shall be DN 40 (1 1/2 NPS) or DN 50 (2 NPS), 20 MPa (3 000 lb) screwed forged-steel pipe couplings, welded to the outside casing plate. Flanged connections may also be used. The openings through the refractory shall be lined with a schedule 80 austenitic stainless-steel pipe.

15.3.1.3 Purge connections shall allow for a flow rate providing a minimum of three firebox volume changes within 15 min.

15.3.1.4 Connections shall be located to preclude impingement on the heater coils and any ceramic-fibre linings, and shall provide even distribution in the radiant section. The minimum size connection to header boxes shall be DN 20 (3/4 NPS). At least one DN 25 (1 NPS) connection shall be provided for each common burner plenum chamber.

15.3.1.5 For forced-draught systems, the forced-draught fan can be used to purge the firebox in lieu of purge steam.

15.3.2 Vent and drain connections

15.3.2.1 Manifold or piping vents and drains shall be a welded coupling of minimum size DN 25 (1 NPS), 40 MPa (6 000 lb), of the same metallurgy as the manifold or piping. Flanged connections may also be used.

- **15.3.2.2** If water washing of either radiant or convection tubes is specified by the purchaser, provisions shall be made for draining water to the outside of the heater using at least one DN 100 (4 NPS) connection with a cap.

15.3.2.3 For header boxes containing flanged or plug fittings, a screwed forged-steel drain connection with hex plug shall be provided, of minimum properties DN 20 (3/4 NPS), 20 MPa (3 000 lb).

15.4 Tube-skin thermocouples

- **15.4.1** The quantity and location of tube-skin thermocouple connections shall be specified by the purchaser. Lead wire, insulators and protective sheaths shall be designed to accommodate all anticipated tube movement.

15.4.2 Protective sheaths shall be made gas-tight and constructed of type 310 stainless steel or other alloy suitable for the operating conditions. Such sheaths shall be attached to the heater tubes by welded clips or bands. All thermocouple assemblies shall terminate on the exterior shell of the fired heater with a thermocouple head.

15.5 Access to connections

15.5.1 All instrument and sampling connections shall be accessible from grade, platforms or ladders.

15.5.2 Thermocouple connections considered as accessible from a platform or grade shall be no more than 2 m (6,5 ft) above the floor of the platform or the grade. Flue gas sampling connections shall be no more than 1,2 m (4 ft) above the floor of the platform or the grade.

15.5.3 Connections considered as accessible from permanent vertical ladders shall be no more than 0,8 m (2,5 ft) from the centrelines of such ladders and at least 0,9 m (3 ft) below the top rung of such ladders.

16 Shop fabrication and field erection

16.1 General

- **16.1.1** The heater, all auxiliary equipment, ladders, stairs and platforms shall be shop assembled to the maximum extent possible consistent with the available shipping, receiving and handling facilities specified by the purchaser. Individual sections shall be properly braced and supported to prevent damage during shipment. All blocking and bracing used for shipping purposes shall be clearly identified for field removal. Coil-flange faces and other machined faces shall be coated with an easily removable rust preventive. Openings in pressure parts shall be covered to prevent entrance of foreign materials.

16.1.2 The vendor shall state the type of protection provided for refractory and insulation to avoid damage from handling or weather during shipment, storage and erection.

16.1.3 All surfaces to be welded shall be free from scale, oil, grease, dirt and other harmful agents. Welding operations shall be protected from wind, rain and other weather conditions that can affect weld quality.

16.1.4 The heater steel structures shall be fabricated in accordance with the structural design code.

16.1.5 Coils shall be fabricated in accordance with the applicable provisions of the pressure design code.

16.2 Structural-steel fabrication

16.2.1 General requirements

- a) Welders for structural-steel fabrication shall be qualified in accordance with the structural design code.
- b) Seam welds between plates shall be continuous, full-penetration welds.
- c) Horizontal exterior welds between plates and structural members shall have a continuous fillet weld on the top side and 50 mm (2 in) long fillet welds on 225 mm (9 in) centres on the bottom side. Diagonal and vertical exterior welds shall have continuous fillet welds on both sides.
- d) Fillet welds shall be of uniform size with full throat and legs.
- e) Welding filler materials shall be in accordance with the structural design code and shall have a chemical composition matching that of the base materials being joined.
- f) Impact test requirements and Charpy values shall be specified by the purchaser for all welds with design metal temperatures below $-30\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($-20\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$) and for submerged arc welds at design metal temperatures below $-18\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$).
- g) Circular and slotted bolt holes in columns and baseplates shall be drilled or punched. Baseplates shall be shop-welded.
- h) The minimum thickness of gusset plates shall be 6 mm (1/4 in).
- i) Shop connections shall be bolted or welded. Field joints between casing plates and stack intermediate joints shall be welded unless full structural-strength flanged connections are supplied. All other field joints shall be bolted. Where field bolting is impractical, erection clips or other suitable positioning devices shall be furnished for field-welded connections.
- j) The minimum size of bolts shall be 16 mm (5/8 in) in diameter, except where the flange width prohibits use of such size bolts. In no case shall bolts be less than 12 mm (1/2 in) in diameter.
- k) Drain holes in structural members shall be a minimum of 12 mm (1/2 in) in diameter. Checkered plate flooring shall be furnished with one 12 mm (1/2 in) diameter drain hole for every 1,4 m² (15 ft²) of floor plate area.
- l) The threads of bolts securing damper blades to the shaft shall be scored or tack-welded after installation.
- m) Attachment of refractory anchors or tiebacks to the heater casing shall be by manual or stud-gun welding. If manual welding is employed, welds shall be "all around".
- n) Suitable lifting lugs shall be provided for the erection of all sections where the section mass exceeds 1 820 kg (4 000 lb). The lifting load used shall be 1,5 times the section mass to allow for impact.

- o) All structural steel and sub-assemblies shall be clearly marked with letters or numbers at least 50 mm (2 in) high for field identification. All loose items such as rods, turnbuckles, clevises, bolts, nuts and washers shall be shipped in bags, kegs or crates. Bags, kegs or crates shall be tagged with the size, diameter and length of contents so that tags for each item are individually identifiable. Tags used for marking shall be metal and markings shall be applied by stamping.
- p) The erection drawings and a bolt list shall be furnished prior to the shipping of heater steel. Erection marks and size and length of field welds shown on erection drawings shall be in lettering at least 3 mm (1/8 in) high. The bolt list shall specify the number, diameter, length and material for each connection. A bill of material shall also be furnished showing the mass of sections over 1 820 kg (4 000 lb).
- q) A minimum 5 % surplus number of bolts and nuts (size and material) used in the erection of the heater shall be furnished.

16.2.2 Heater stacks

16.2.2.1 The stack shall be sufficiently true so that the erected stack, when plumbed, exhibits a maximum horizontal deviation of 25 mm (1 in) per 15 m (50 ft) of height.

16.2.2.2 The maximum perpendicular deviation from a straightedge applied to the stack shell shall not exceed 3 mm (1/8 in) in any 3 m (10 ft).

16.2.2.3 The difference between minimum and maximum diameters at any cross-section along the stack length shall not exceed 2 % of the nominal diameter for that section.

16.2.2.4 Plate misalignment at any stack joint shall not exceed 3 mm (1/8 in) or 25 % of the nominal plate thickness, whichever is less.

16.2.2.5 Vertical-joint peaking shall not exceed a depth of 5 mm (3/16 in) when measured from a 600 mm (24 in) circumferential template centred on the joint.

16.2.2.6 Circumferential-joint banding shall not exceed a depth of 8 mm (5/16 in) when measured from a 900 mm (36 in) straightedge centred on the joint.

16.3 Coil fabrication

16.3.1 Unless otherwise specified by the purchaser, the following welding processes are permitted, provided satisfactory evidence is submitted that the procedure is qualified in accordance with the pressure design code:

- a) shielded metal arc with covered electrodes;
- b) gas tungsten-arc, manual and automatic;
- c) gas welding process for DN 50 (2 NPS) and smaller for carbon steel material;
- d) gas metal-arc welding in the spray transfer range;
- e) flux cored-arc welding with external shielding gas.

16.3.2 Permanently installed backing rings shall not be used.

16.3.3 An argon or helium internal purge shall be used for gas tungsten-arc root pass welding of 2,25Cr-1Mo and higher alloys, except that nitrogen may be used for austenitic stainless steels, unless otherwise specified by the purchaser. The root pass in carbon steel and in alloy steels lower than 2,25Cr-1Mo may be welded with or without an internal purge.

16.3.4 Each weld shall be uniform in width and size throughout its full length. Each weld shall be smooth and free of slag, inclusions, cracks, porosity, lack of fusion and undercut, except to the extent permitted by the

referenced codes. In addition, the cover pass shall be free of course ripples, irregular surfaces, non-uniform head patterns, and high crowns and deep ridges or valleys between heads.

16.3.5 Butt welds shall be slightly convex and uniform in height, as specified in the applicable codes. Limitations on weld reinforcement shall apply to the internal surface as well as the external surface.

16.3.6 Repair welds shall be carried out in accordance with a repair procedure approved by the purchaser. Repairs shall not damage the adjacent base material.

16.3.7 The preheat temperature, interpass temperature and post-weld heat treatment shall be in accordance with the provisions of the applicable codes.

16.4 Painting and galvanizing

16.4.1 Heater steel shall be prepared in accordance with either ISO 8501-1 grade Sa 21/2 or SSPC SP 6, and primed with one coat of inorganic zinc primer to a minimum dry film thickness (DFT) of 75 µm (0,003 in). Surfaces shall be painted in conditions in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations on temperature and relative humidity.

16.4.2 Uninsulated flue gas ducts and stacks and air ducting shall be primed with an inorganic zinc primer. Surface preparation and dry film thickness shall be in accordance with the paint manufacturer's recommendation.

- **16.4.3** If specified by the purchaser, platforms, handrails and toeboards, gratings, stairways, fasteners, ladders and attendant light structural supports shall be hot-dipped galvanized. Galvanizing shall comply with ISO 1461, or the applicable sections of ASTM A 123, ASTM A 143, ASTM A 153, ASTM A 384 and ASTM A 385 or equivalent. Bolts joining galvanized sections shall be galvanized in accordance with ISO 10684 or ASTM A 153, or zinc-coated in accordance with ASTM B 633 or equivalent.

16.4.4 Internal coatings shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturers' recommended practices, including surface preparation and ambient conditions.

16.5 Refractories and insulation

16.5.1 Materials shall be stored in original containers, if possible, and shall be protected from moisture and from atmospheric and foreign contaminants. They shall be kept completely dry and at manufacturer's recommended storage temperature until used. Bricks shall be free of cracks, chips, spalling or other defects.

16.5.2 Prior to installation of refractory, all steel surfaces shall be cleaned to remove dirt, grease, paint, loose scale or other foreign materials.

16.5.3 Water used to install refractories shall be of potable quality and the temperature shall be between 7 °C (45 °F) and 32 °C (90 °F) unless the refractory manufacturer specifies otherwise.

16.5.4 All material shall be prepared and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

16.5.5 The mortar joints in firebrick construction shall be as thin as possible. In applying the mortar, the brick shall be dipped or troweled on two edges. Expansion joints shall be mortar-free. Brick should be placed against the mating surface and tapped gently to ensure uniform joints no more than 1,5 mm (1/16 in) wide.

16.5.6 Anchors with circular bases shall be welded all around. Other anchors shall be welded to casing along both sides.

16.5.7 Chain-link fence anchoring shall be pulled out and held in place after welding, and prior to castable application, to ensure proper position in the castable layer.

16.5.8 The following shall apply to castables.

- a) The surfaces to which castable is applied shall be kept above 7 °C (45 °F) and below 38 °C (100 °F) during installation and curing.
- b) For pneumatic application, the lining shall be applied in horizontal strips working upward from the bottom. It shall proceed continuously to the required thickness in a given area. If the installation is interrupted, the lining shall be cut back immediately to the casing surface. This cut shall be full depth at a 90° angle to the casing surface.
- c) Rebound materials shall not be re-used in applying linings.
- d) Scoring of the castable surfaces shall be in accordance with the vendor's specifications.
- e) Each layer of the castable shall be properly air-cured after installation. To reduce the tendency for hydraulic-setting castables to develop alkaline hydrolysis, an application of an impervious organic coating shall be applied to the hot-face layer immediately after placement and the same coating shall be reapplied shortly after the 24-h cure. The use of forced drying by air movement or low temperature to remove a percentage of the mechanical water prior to the application of the impervious coating can further reduce the possibility of development of alkaline hydrolysis. Alkaline hydrolysis is a naturally occurring phenomenon, such that the use of either or both of the above procedures might not entirely prevent the formation thereof. In instances where alkaline hydrolysis has occurred, the loss in refractory thickness is usually less than 10 mm (0,375 inch). When this occurs, the loose material shall be brushed off and an impervious organic coating applied.
- f) Shop-installed castables shall not be handled or tested for 72 h after installation.

16.6 Preparation for shipment

16.6.1 See also 16.1.1.

16.6.2 See 16.1.2. The following shall also apply.

- a) For shop-lined castable refractory sections, to minimize the tendency for alkali hydrolysis to occur, the sections shall be prepared for shipment in such a way as to allow good air circulation during the entire shipping and storage periods. The use of shrink wrap (airtight packaging) coverings shall be avoided.
- b) For shop-lined fibre refractory sections, shrink wrapping of lined sections is required.
- c) The vendor shall identify on the drawings the maximum number of shop-lined sections that can be stacked and the orientation of sections for shipping and storage purposes.

16.6.3 See 16.2.1 p).

16.6.4 All openings shall be suitably protected to prevent damage and the possible entry of water and other foreign material.

16.6.5 All flange gasket surfaces shall be coated with an easily removable rust preventive and shall be protected by suitably attached durable covers such as wood, plastic or gasketed steel.

16.6.6 All threaded connections shall be protected by metal plugs or caps of compatible material.

16.6.7 Connections that are bevelled for welding shall be suitably covered to protect the bevel from damage.

16.6.8 All exposed ferrous surfaces not otherwise coated shall be given one coat of manufacturer's standard shop primer. Any additional painting requirements shall be specified by the purchaser.

16.6.9 The item number, shipping mass and purchaser's order number shall be painted on the heater and loose components.

16.6.10 All boxes, crates or packages shall be identified with the purchaser's order number and the equipment item number.

16.6.11 The words "DO NOT WELD" shall be stencilled (in at least two places 180° apart) on equipment that has been post-weld heat-treated.

16.6.12 All liquids used for cleaning or testing shall be drained from units before shipment.

16.6.13 Tubes shall be free of foreign material prior to shipment.

16.6.14 The vendor shall advise the purchaser if any pieces are temporarily fixed for shipping purposes. Transit and erection clips or fasteners shall be clearly identified on the equipment and the field-assembly drawings to ensure removal before commissioning of the heater.

- **16.6.15** The extent of skidding, boxing, crating or coating for export shipment shall be specified by the purchaser.
- **16.6.16** Any long-term storage requirements shall be specified by the purchaser.

16.7 Field erection

16.7.1 It shall be the responsibility of the erector to ensure that the heater is erected in accordance with the specifications and drawings furnished by the vendor and in accordance with the applicable clauses of this International Standard.

16.7.2 Castable-lined panels shall be handled to avoid excessive cracking or separation of the refractory from the steel.

16.7.3 Care shall be taken to avoid refractory damage due to weather. Standing water or saturation of the refractory shall be prevented. Protection shall include cover to avoid rain impingement and shall allow drainage, proper fit and tightening of doors and header boxes.

16.7.4 Sections where refractory edges are exposed shall be protected against cracking of edges and corners. External blows to the steel casing shall be avoided.

16.7.5 Field joints between panels shall be sealed in accordance with the heater vendor's requirements.

16.7.6 Construction joints resulting from panel or modular construction shall have continuous refractory cover to the full thickness of the adjacent refractory.

17 Inspection, examination and testing

17.1 General

17.1.1 The purchaser, his designated representative, or both, reserve the right to inspect, after prior notice, all heater components and their assembled units at any time during the material procurement, fabrication and shop assembly to ensure materials and workmanship are in accordance with applicable standards, specifications, codes and drawings.

17.1.2 The vendor shall examine all individual heater components and their shop-assembled units to ensure that materials and workmanship are in accordance with applicable standards, specifications, codes and drawings.

- **17.1.3** If specified by the purchaser, pre-inspection meetings between the purchaser and the fabricator shall be held before the start of fabrication.

17.2 Weld examination

17.2.1 Radiographic, ultrasonic, visual, magnetic-particle or liquid-penetrant examination of welds in coils shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.

17.2.2 The extent of examination of welds in coils, including return bends, fittings, manifolds and crossover piping, shall be as follows.

- a) The root passes of 10 % of all austenitic welds for each welder shall be liquid-penetrant examined following weld-surface preparation in accordance with the pressure design code. If the required examination identifies a defect, further examination shall be performed.
- b) All welds in Cr-Mo steels and austenitic stainless steels shall be 100 % radiographed.
- c) 10 % of all carbon-steel welds by each welder shall be 100 % radiographed. If the required examination identifies a defect, progressive examination shall be performed in accordance with ISO 15649.

NOTE For the purposes of this provision, ASME B 31.3 is equivalent to ISO 15649.

- d) Acceptance criteria of welds shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.
- e) All longitudinal seam welds on manifolds shall be 100 % radiographed. In addition, these welds shall be examined by the liquid-penetrant method (for austenitic materials) or the magnetic-particle method (for ferritic materials).
- f) In cases where weld or material configuration makes radiographic examination difficult to interpret or impossible to perform, such as nozzle (fillet) welds, ultrasonic examination may be substituted. If ultrasonic examination is impractical, liquid-penetrant examination shall be performed (for austenitic materials) or magnetic-particle examination shall be performed (for ferritic materials).

17.2.3 Post-weld heat treatment shall be performed in accordance with the pressure design code. Any required radiographic examination shall be performed after completion of heat treatment.

17.2.4 Proposed welding procedures, procedure qualification records and welding-consumable specifications for all pressure-retaining welds shall be in accordance with the pressure design code and shall be submitted by the fabricator for review, comment or approval by the purchaser.

17.2.5 Welder qualifications and applicable manufacturer's report forms shall be maintained. Examples include certified material mill test reports, AWS or other classification and manufacturer of electrode or filler material, welding specifications and procedures, positive materials identification documentation of alloy materials, and non-destructive examination procedures and results. Unless otherwise specified by the purchaser, records of examination procedures and examination-personnel qualifications shall be retained for at least five years after the record is generated for the project.

17.3 Castings examination

- **17.3.1** Material conformance shall be verified by a review of the chemical and physical test results submitted by the manufacturer. The purchaser shall specify if positive materials identification shall be performed to verify these results.

17.3.2 Shield and convection-section cast tube supports shall be examined as follows.

- a) Tube supports shall be visually examined in accordance with MSS SP 55 and dimensionally checked. Tube supports shall be adequately cleaned to facilitate examination of all surfaces.
- b) Intersections of all reinforcing ribs with the main member shall be either 100 % liquid-penetrant examined (if austenitic) or 100 % magnetic-particle examined (if ferritic). The examination procedures and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.
- c) Radiographic examination of critical sections shall be performed if specified by the purchaser, and the procedure and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.

17.3.3 Cast radiant tube supports, hangers and guides shall be visually examined for surface imperfections using MSS SP 55 as a reference for categories and degrees of severity. Defects shall be marked either for removal or repair, or to warrant complete replacement of the casting. Dimensions shall be verified with checks based on the sampling plan agreed by the purchaser.

17.3.4 Cast return bends and pressure fittings shall be examined as follows.

- a) All cast return bends and pressure fittings shall be visually examined for imperfections in accordance with MSS SP 55, and measured to confirm dimensions in accordance with reference drawings and the sampling plan agreed by the purchaser. Examination shall confirm proper and complete identification as specified in the purchase order.
- b) All surfaces shall be suitably prepared for liquid-penetrant examination (for austenitic materials) or magnetic-particle examination (for ferritic materials); evaluation shall be in accordance with the agreed acceptance levels as specified in MSS SP 93 and MSS SP 53, respectively.
- c) Cast return bends and pressure fittings shall be examined by radiography in accordance with the pressure design code. The sampling quantities and degree of coverage shall be as specified by the purchaser.

17.3.5 Machined weld bevels shall be examined by the liquid-penetrant method. Indications with any dimension greater than 1,5 mm (1/16 in) shall not be permitted.

17.3.6 Repairs shall meet the following requirements.

- Imperfections not meeting the acceptance criteria shall be removed and their removal verified by liquid-penetrant examination. If the cavity formed by removing an imperfection reduces the thickness to below that required for the design, the cavity shall be repaired by welding.
- All repairs shall be verified by liquid-penetrant examination, with the procedure and acceptance criteria in accordance with the pressure design code.
- Major repairs shall be verified by radiography in accordance with the pressure design code. A repair shall be considered major if the depth of the cavity before repair exceeds 20 % of the section thickness or if the length of the cavity exceeds 250 mm (10 in).
- Weld repairs shall be made using welding procedures and welders qualified in accordance with the pressure design code.

17.3.7 Bearing surfaces of all castings shall be free from sharp edges and burrs.

17.4 Examination of other components

17.4.1 Examination of heater steelwork shall be in accordance with the structural design code.

17.4.2 Refractory linings shall be examined throughout for thickness variations during application and for cracks after curing. Thickness tolerance is limited to a range of –6 mm (1/4 in) to +13 mm (1/2 in). Cracks which are 3 mm (1/8 in) or greater in width and penetrate more than 50 % of the castable thickness shall be repaired. Repairs shall be made by chipping out the unsound refractory to the backup layer interface or casing and exposing a minimum of three tieback anchors, or to the sound metal, making a joint between sound refractory that has a minimum slope of 25 mm (1 in) to the base metal (dove-tail construction) and then gunning, casting or hand-packing the area to be repaired.

17.4.3 Finned extended surface shall be examined to ensure fins are perpendicular to the tube within 15°. The maximum discontinuity of the weld shall be 65 mm (2,5 in) in 2,5 m (100 in) of weld. The attachment weld shall provide a cross-sectional area of not less than 90 % of the cross-sectional area of the root of the fin. The cross-sectional area is the product of the fin width and the peripheral length.

17.4.4 Fins and studs shall be examined to verify conformity with specified dimensions.

17.4.5 For rolled-joint fittings, the fitting tube-hole inner diameter, the tube outer diameter and the tube inner diameter (before and after rolling) shall be measured and recorded in accordance with the fitting location drawing. These measurements shall be supplied to the purchaser.

17.4.6 Fabricated supports include both plate-fabricated and multicast techniques. Fabricated convection-tube intermediate supports shall have support lug welds radiographed. Warping of the completed support shall be within the limits permitted by the structural design code.

17.5 Testing

17.5.1 Pressure testing

17.5.1.1 All assembled pressure parts shall be hydrostatically tested to a minimum pressure equal to 1,5 times the coil design pressure, multiplied by the ratio of the allowable stress at 38 °C (100 °F) to the allowable stress at the design tube metal temperature. The following test requirements also apply.

a) The maximum test pressure shall be limited to the extent that the weakest component shall not be stressed beyond 90 % of the material's yield strength at ambient temperature.

b) Hydrostatic test pressures shall be maintained for a minimum period of 1 h to test for leaks.

- **17.5.1.2** If hydrostatic testing or pneumatic pressure-testing of pressure parts is not considered practical, by agreement between the purchaser and the vendor, 100 % radiography shall be performed on all welds and pneumatic leak-testing shall be performed using air or a non-toxic, non-flammable gas. The pneumatic leak test pressure shall be 430 kPa (60 psi) gauge or 15 % of the maximum allowable design pressure, whichever is less. The pneumatic test pressure shall be maintained for a length of time sufficient to examine for leaks, but in no case for less than 15 min. A bubble surfactant shall be applied to weld seams to aid visual leak detection.

17.5.1.3 Water used for hydrostatic testing shall be potable. For austenitic materials, the chloride content of the test water shall not exceed 50 mg/kg (50 ppm, by mass).

17.5.1.4 Unless the test fluid is the process fluid, the test fluid shall be removed from all heater components upon completion of hydrostatic testing. Heating shall not be used to evaporate water from austenitic stainless-steel tubes.

17.5.2 Refractory testing

Installed castable linings shall undergo hammer tests to check for voids within the refractory material. For dual-layer linings, the hammer tests shall be conducted on each layer after curing. Linings shall be struck with a 450 g (1 lb) machinist's ball peen hammer over the entire surface using a grid pattern approximating the following:

- a) for arch areas: 600 mm (24 in) centres;
- b) for sidewall and floor areas: 900 mm (36 in) centres.

17.5.3 Studded tube testing

Each length of a studded tube assembly shall be randomly examined and inspected by hammer testing to verify the adequacy of the stud-to-tube weld.

17.5.4 Positive materials identification

17.5.4.1 Positive materials identification (PMI) is the process of verifying that the chemical composition of a metallic alloy is within the specified limits. It is normally performed on components after they have been installed (or at a stage after which it is no longer possible to mix up the materials).

- **17.5.4.2** PMI programme methods, degree of examination, PMI testing instruments, and tester qualifications shall be agreed upon between the purchaser and the vendor prior to manufacturing. PMI shall not be required for burner components, unless specified by the purchaser.

17.5.4.3 Unless superseded by the purchaser's requirements, 10 % of all alloy components shall be PMI-tested. If random testing is carried out, PMI shall be made on components from different heater numbers. The purchaser may alternatively choose to specify that a PMI test be made on each component.

17.5.4.4 Tabulation of tested items shall be included within all final data books, keyed to weld maps on as-built drawings and mill certification document stampings. Tested items shall be immediately marked.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012

Annex A (informative)

Equipment data sheets

This annex includes data sheets for the following equipment items:

- a) fired-heater data sheets: 12 sheets (6 in SI units, 6 in USC units);
- b) burner data sheets: 6 sheets (3 in SI units, 3 in USC units);
- c) air-preheater data sheets: 4 sheets (2 in SI units, 2 in USC units);
- d) fan data sheets: 4 sheets (2 in SI units, 2 in USC units);
- e) sootblower data sheets: 2 sheets (1 in SI units, 1 in USC units).

See Clause 5 for instructions on using the equipment data sheets. Note that the purchaser should complete, as a minimum, those items that are designated by an asterisk (*).

Fired-heater data sheet		SI units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 1 of 6	
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:			
Service:		Location:			
1	unit:	*number required:			rev.
2	manufacturer:	Reference:			
3	type of heater:				
4	*total heater absorbed duty, MW:				
5	Process design conditions				
6	*operating case				
7	heater section				
8	*service				
9	heat absorption, MW				
10	*fluid				
11	*flow rate, kg/s				
12	*flow rate, m ³ /h				
13	*pressure drop, allowable (clean/fouled), kPa				
14	pressure drop, calculated (clean/fouled), kPa				
15	*avg. rad. sect. flux density, allow., W/m ²				
16	avg. rad. sect. flux density, calc., W/m ²				
17	max. rad. sect. flux density, W/m ²				
18	conv. sect. flux density (bare tube), W/m ²				
19	*velocity limitation, m/s				
20	process fluid mass velocity, kg/s·m ²				
21	*maximum allow./calc. inside film temperature, °C				
22	*fouling factor, m ² ·K/W				
23	*coking allowance, mm				
24	Inlet conditions:				
25	*temperature, °C				
26	*pressure, kPa (ga)				
27	*liquid flow rate, kg/s				
28	*vapour flow rate, kg/s				
29	*liquid relative density (at 15 °C)				
30	*vapour relative molecular mass ¹⁾				
31	*vapour density, kg/m ³				
32	*viscosity (liquid/vapour), mPa·s				
33	*specific heat (liquid/vapour), kJ/kg·K				
34	*thermal conductivity (liquid/vapour), W/m·K				
35	Outlet conditions:				
36	*temperature, °C				
37	*pressure, kPa (ga)				
38	*liquid flow rate, kg/s				
39	*vapour flow rate, kg/s				
40	*liquid relative density (at 15 °C)				
41	*vapour relative molecular mass ¹⁾				
42	*vapour density, kg/m ³				
43	*viscosity (liquid/vapour), mPa·s				
44	*specific heat (liquid/vapour), kJ/kg·K				
45	*thermal conductivity (liquid/vapour), W/m·K				
46	Remarks and special requirements:				
47	*distillation data or feed composition:				
48	short-term operating conditions:				
49					
50	Notes:				
51	1) Relative molecular mass is the SI term used for the more familiar "molecular weight".				
52					

Fired-heater data sheet				SI units		
				rev.:	date:	sheet 2 of 6
Combustion design conditions						
1	operating case					rev.
2	*type of fuel					
3	*excess air, %					
4	calculated heat release (h_L), MW					
5	fuel efficiency calculated, % (h_L)					
6	fuel efficiency guaranteed, % (h_L)					
7	radiation loss, % of heat release (h_L)					
8	flue gas temperature leaving: radiant section, °C					
9	convection section, °C					
10	APH, °C					
11	flue gas quantity, kg/s					
12	flue gas mass flow rate through convection section, kg/s·m ²					
13	draught at arch, Pa					
14	at burners, Pa					
15	*ambient air temperature, efficiency calculation, °C					
16	*ambient air temperature, stack design, °C					
17	*altitude above sea level, m					
18	volumetric heat release (h_L), W/m ³					
19	*emission limits (dry):	mg/m ³ (corrected to 3 % O ₂)		NO _x :	CO:	SO _x
20		kJ/kg (h_L) (h_H)		UHC:	particulates:	
21	Fuel characteristics:					
22	*gas type		*liquid type	*other type		
23	* h_L	kJ/m ³	* h_L	kJ/kg	* h_L	kJ/kg
24	* h_H	kJ/m ³	* h_H	kJ/kg	* h_H	kJ/kg
25	*press. available @ burner	kPa (ga)	*press. available @ burner	kPa (ga)	*press. available @ burner	kPa (ga)
26	*temp. @ burner	°C	*temp. @ burner	°C	*temp. @ burner	°C
27	*relative molecular mass		*viscosity @ °C	mPa·s		
28			*atomizing steam temp.	°C		
29			*pressure	kPa (ga)		
30	component	mole fraction %	component	mass fraction	component	mass fraction
31						
32						
33						
34			*vanadium (mg/kg)			
35			*sodium (mg/kg)			
36			*sulfur			
37			*ash			
38	Burner data:					
39	manufacturer:	size/model No.:	number:			
40	type:	location:	orientation:			
41	heat release per burner, MW	design:	normal:	minimum:		
42	pressure drop across burner @ design heat release, Pa:					
43	distance burner centreline to tube centreline, horizontal, mm:				vertical, mm:	
44	distance burner centreline to unshielded refractory, horizontal, mm:				vertical, mm:	
45	pilot, type:	capacity, MW:	fuel:			
46	ignition method:					
47	flame detection, type:	number:				
48	Notes:					
49						
50						

Fired-heater data sheet		SI units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 3 of 6	
Mechanical design conditions					
1	*plot limitations:	*stack limitations:			
2	*tube limitations:	*noise limitations:			
3	*structural design data:	wind velocity:	*wind occurrence:		
4		snow load:	*seismic zone:		
5	*minimum/normal/maximum ambient air temperature, °C:		*relative humidity, %		
6	heater section:				
7	service:				
8	Coil design:				
9	*design basis: tube wall thickness (code or spec.)				
10	rupture strength (minimum or average)				
11	*stress-to-rupture basis, h				
12	*design pressure, elastic/rupture, kPa				
13	*design fluid temperature, °C				
14	*temperature allowance, °C				
15	corrosion allowance, tubes/fittings, mm				
16	hydrostatic test pressure, kPa				
17	*post-weld heat treatment (yes or no)				
18	* % of welds fully radiographed				
19	maximum (clean) tube metal temperature, °C				
20	design tube metal temperature, °C				
21	inside film coefficient, W/m ² ·K				
22	Coil arrangement:				
23	tube orientation: vertical or horizontal				
24	*tube material (specification and grade)				
25	tube outside diameter, mm				
26	tube wall thickness, (minimum) (average), mm				
27	number of flow passes				
28	number of tubes				
29	number of tubes per row (convection section)				
30	overall tube length, m				
31	effective tube length, m				
32	bare tubes: number				
33	total exposed surface, m ²				
34	extended surface tubes: number				
35	total exposed surface, m ²				
36	tube layout (in line or staggered)				
37	tube spacing, cent. to cent.: horiz. × diag. (or vert.)				
38	spacing tube cent. to furnace wall (min.), mm				
39	corbels (yes or no)				
40	corbel width, mm				
41	Description of extended surface:				
42	type: (studs) (serrated fins) (solid fins)				
43	material				
44	dimensions (height × diameter/thickness), mm				
45	spacing (fins/m) (studs/plane)				
46	maximum tip temperature (calculated), °C				
47	extension ratio (total area/bare area)				
48	Plug type headers:				
49	*type				
50	material (specification and grade)				
51	nominal rating				
52	*location (one or both ends)				
53	welded or rolled joint				
54	Notes:				
55					
56					

Fired-heater data sheet		SI units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 4 of 6	
Mechanical design conditions (continued)					
1	heater section:				rev.
2	service:				
3	Return bends:				
4	type				
5	material (specification and grade)				
6	nominal rating or schedule				
7	*location (f. b. = firebox, h. b. = header box)				
8	Terminals and/or manifolds:				
9	*type (bev. = bevelled, manif. = manifold, flg. = flanged)				
10	inlet: material (specification and grade)				
11	size/schedule or thickness				
12	number of terminals				
13	flange material (ASTM specification and grade)				
14	flange size and rating				
15	outlet: material (specification and grade)				
16	size/schedule or thickness				
17	number of terminals				
18	flange material (specification and grade)				
19	flange size and rating				
20	*manifold to tube connection (welded, extruded, etc.)				
21	manifold location (inside or outside header box)				
22	Crossovers:				
23	*welded or flanged				
24	*pipe material (specification and grade)				
25	pipe size/schedule or thickness				
26	*flange material				
27	flange size/rating				
28	*location (internal/external)				
29	fluid temperature, °C				
30	Tube supports:				
31	location (ends, top, bottom)				
32	material (specification and grade)				
33	design metal temperature, °C				
34	thickness, mm				
35	type and thickness of insulation, mm				
36	anchor (material and type)				
37	Intermediate tube supports:				
38	material (specification and grade)				
39	design metal temperature, °C				
40	thickness, mm				
41	spacing, m				
42	Tube guides:				
43	location:				
44	material:				
45	type/spacing:				
46	Header boxes:				
47	location:	hinged door/bolted panel:			
48	casing material:	thickness, mm:			
49	lining material:	thickness, mm:			
50	anchor (material and type):				
51	Notes:				
52					
53					
54					

Fired-heater data sheet		SI units	
		rev.:	date:
		sheet 5 of 6	
Mechanical design conditions (continued)			
1	Refractory design basis:		
2	ambient temperature, °C:	wind velocity, m/s	casing temperature, °C:
3	Exposed vertical walls:		
4	lining thickness, mm:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °C:	
5	wall construction:		
6			
7	anchor (material & type):		
8	casing material:	thickness, mm:	temperature, °C:
9	Shielded vertical walls:		
10	lining thickness, mm:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °C:	
11	wall construction:		
12			
13	anchor (material & type):		
14	casing material:	thickness, mm:	temperature, °C:
15	Arch:		
16	lining thickness, mm:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °C:	
17	wall construction:		
18			
19	anchor (material & type):		
20	casing material:	thickness, mm:	temperature, °C:
21	Floor:		
22	lining thickness, mm:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °C:	
23	floor construction:		
24			
25	casing material:	thickness, mm:	temperature, °C:
26	minimum floor elevation, m:	free space below plenum, m:	
27	Convection section:		
28	lining thickness, mm:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °C:	
29	wall construction:		
30			
31	anchor (material & type):		
32	casing material:	thickness, mm:	temperature, °C:
33	Internal wall:		
34	type:	material:	
35	dimension, height/width:		
36	Ducts:	Flue gas	Combustion air
37	location:	breeching	
38	size, m, or net free area, m ² :		
39	casing material:		
40	casing thickness, mm:		
41	lining: internal/external		
42	thickness, mm		
43	material		
44	anchor (material & type)		
45	casing temperature, °C:		
46	Plenum chamber (air):		
47	casing material:	thickness, mm:	size, mm:
48	lining material:	thickness, mm:	
49	anchor (material & type):		
50	Notes:		
51			
52			

Fired-heater data sheet				SI units		
				rev.:	date:	sheet 6 of 6
Mechanical design conditions (continued)						
1	Stack or stack stub:					rev.
2	number:	self-supported or guyed:	location:			
3	casing material:	*corrosion allow., mm:	minimum thickness, mm:			
4	inside metal diameter, m:	height above grade, m:	stack length, m:			
5	lining material:	thickness, mm:				
6	anchor (material and type):					
7	extent of lining:		internal or external:			
8	design flue gas velocity, m/s	flue gas temp., °C:				
9	Dampers:					
10	location					
11	type (control, tight shut-off, etc.)					
12	material: blade					
13	material: shaft					
14	multiple/single leaf					
15	provision for operation (man. or auto.)					
16	type of operator (cable or pneumatic)					
17	Miscellaneous:					
18	platforms: location	number	width	length/arc	stairs/ladder	access from
19						
20						
21						
22						
23						
24	type of flooring:					
25	doors:	number	location	size	bolted/hinged	
26	access					
27						
28	observation					
29						
30	tube removal					
31						
32	instrument connections:		number	size	type	
33	flue gas/combustion air temperature					
34	flue gas/combustion air pressure					
35	flue gas sample					
36	snuffing steam/purge					
37	O ₂ analyser					
38	CO or NO _x analyser					
39	vents/drains					
40	process fluid temperature					
41	tube skin thermocouples					
42						
43						
44	painting requirements:					
45	internal coating:					
46	galvanizing requirements:					
47	are painter's trolley and rail included?					
48	special equipment:		sootblowers:			
49			APH:			
50			fan (s):			
51			other:			
52	Notes:					
53						
54						
55						
56						

Burner data sheet		SI units	
		rev.:	date:
		sheet 1 of 3	
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:	
Service:		Location:	
1	General data:		rev.
2	type of heater		
3	altitude above sea level, m		
4	air supply:		
5	— ambient/preheated air/gas turbine exhaust		
6	— temperature, °C (min./max./design)		
7	— relative humidity, %		
8	— draught type: forced/natural/induced		
9	draught available, Pa: across burner		
10	draught available, Pa: across plenum		
11	required turndown		
12	burner-wall lining thickness, mm		
13	heater-casing thickness, mm		
14	firebox height, m		
15	tube-circle diameter, m		
16	Burner data:		
17	manufacturer		
18	type of burner		
19	model/size		
20	direction of firing		
21	location (roof/floor/sidewall)		
22	number required		
23	minimum distance burner centreline, mm		
24	— to tube centreline (horizontal/vertical)		
25	— to adjacent burner centreline (horizontal/vertical)		
26	— to unshielded refractory (horizontal/vertical)		
27	burner-circle diameter, m		
28	pilots:		
29	— number required		
30	— type		
31	— ignition method		
32	— fuel		
33	— fuel pressure, kPa		
34	— capacity, MW		
35	Operating data:		
36	fuel		
37	heat release per burner, MW (h_L)		
38	— design		
39	— normal		
40	— minimum		
41	excess air @ design heat release, %		
42	air temperature, °C		
43	draught loss, Pa		
44	— design		
45	— normal		
46	— minimum		
47	fuel pressure required, kPa		
48	flame length @ design heat release, m		
49	flame shape (round, flat, etc.)		
50	atomizing medium/oil ratio, kg/kg		
51	Notes:		
52			
53			
54			
55			

Burner data sheet		SI units		
		rev.:	date:	sheet 2 of 3
Gas fuel characteristics				
1	fuel type			rev.
2	massic heat value (h_L), kJ/m ³			
3	relative density (air = 1,0)			
4	relative molecular mass			
5	fuel temperature @ burner, °C			
6	fuel pressure: available @ burner, kPa (ga)			
7	fuel gas composition (mole fraction, %)			
8				
9				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				
16				
17				
18				
19				
20	total			
Liquid fuel characteristics				
22	fuel type			
23	massic heat value (h_L), kJ/kg			
24	relative density (at 15 °C)			
25	h/c ratio (by mass)			
26	viscosity, @ °C, mPa·s			
27	viscosity, @ °C, mPa·s			
28	vanadium, mg/kg			
29	potassium, mg/kg			
30	sodium, mg/kg			
31	nickel, mg/kg			
32	fixed nitrogen, mg/kg			
33	sulfur, mass fraction (%)			
34	ash, mass fraction (%)			
35	water, mass fraction (%)			
36	distillation: ASTM initial boiling point, °C			
37	ASTM mid-point, °C			
38	ASTM end-point, °C			
39	fuel temperature @ burner, °C			
40	fuel pressure available @ burner, kPa			
41	atomizing medium: air/steam/mechanical			
42	temperature, °C			
43	pressure, kPa			
44	Notes:			
45				
46				
47				
48				
49				
50				
51				
52				
53				
54				
55				

Burner data sheet			SI units	
			rev.:	date:
			sheet 3 of 3	
Miscellaneous				
1	burner plenum:	common/integral		rev.
2		material		
3		plate thickness, mm		
4		internal insulation		
5	inlet air control:	damper or registers		
6		mode of operation		
7		leakage, %		
8	burner tile:	composition		
9		minimum service temperature, °C		
10	noise specification			
11	attenuation method			
12	painting requirements			
13	ignition port:	size/No.		
14	sight port:	size/No.		
15	flame detection:	type		
16		number		
17	scanner connection:	size/No.		
18	safety interlock system for atomizing medium and oil			
19	performance test required (yes or no)			
20	Emission limits:			
21	firebox bridgework temperature, °C.			
22	NO _x	* ml/m ³ (d) or g/GJ (h _L) (h _H)		
23	CO	* ml/m ³ (d) or g/GJ (h _L) (h _H)		
24	UHC	* ml/m ³ (d) or g/GJ (h _L) (h _H)		
25	particulates	g/GJ (h _L) (h _H)		
26	SO _x	* ml/m ³ (d) or g/GJ (h _L) (h _H)		
27				
28	*corrected to 3 % O ₂ (dry basis @ design heat release)			
29				
30	NOTE 1 At design conditions, a minimum of 90 % of the available draught with air register fully open shall be utilized across the burner. In addition, a minimum of 75 % of the air-side pressure drop with air registers fully open shall be utilized across burner throat.			
31				
32				
33	NOTE 2	Vendor to guarantee burner flame length.		
34	NOTE 3	Vendor to guarantee excess air, heat release and draught loss across burner.		
35				
36				
37				
38				
39				
40				
41				
42				
43				
44				
45				
46				
47				
48				
49				
50				
51				
52				
53				
54				
55				
56				
57				
58				

Air-preheater data sheet		SI units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 1 of 2	
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:			
Service:		Location:			
1	manufacturer:				rev.
2	model:				
3	number required:				
4	heating surface, m ²				
5	mass, kg				
6	approximate dimensions: (h × w × l), m				
7	Performance data				
8	operating case				
9					
10	air side: flow rate entering, kg/s				
11	inlet temperature, °C				
12	outlet temperature, °C				
13	pressure drop: allowable, Pa				
14	pressure drop: calculated, Pa				
15	heat absorbed, MW				
16	flue gas side: flow rate, kg/s				
17	inlet temperature, °C				
18	outlet temperature, °C				
19	pressure drop: allowable, Pa				
20	pressure drop: calculated, Pa				
21	heat exchanged, MW				
22	air bypass rate, kg/s				
23	total air flow rate to burners, kg/s				
24	mixed air temperature, °C				
25	flue gas composition, mole fraction, % (O ₂ /N ₂ /H ₂ O/CO ₂ /SO _x)				
26	flue gas specific heat, kJ/kg·K				
27	flue gas acid dew-point temperature, °C				
28	minimum metal temperature: allowable, °C				
29	minimum metal temperature: calculated, °C				
30	Miscellaneous:				
31	minimum ambient air temperature, °C				
32	site elevation above sea level, m				
33	relative humidity, %				
34	external cold-air bypass (yes/no)				
35	cold-end thermocouples (yes/no): number required				
36	access doors: number/size/location				
37	insulation (internal/external):				
38	cleaning medium: steam or water				
39	pressure, kPa				
40	temperature, °C				
41					
42	Mechanical design:				
43	design flue gas temperature, °C				
44	design pressure differential, kPa				
45	seismic factor				
46	painting requirements				
47	leak test				
48	structural wind load, kg/m ²				
49	air leakage (guaranteed maximum), %				
50					
52	Notes: (all data on per unit basis)				
53					
54					

Air-preheater data sheet		SI units	
		rev.:	date:
		sheet 2 of 2	
Construction data			
1	I cast iron:		rev.
2	number of passes		
3	number of tubes per block		
4	number of blocks		
5	type of surface		
6	tube material		
7	tube thickness, mm		
8	glass block (yes/no)		
9	number of glass tubes		
10	air crossover duct: number		
11	bolted/welded		
12	supplied with clips		
13	water wash: yes/no		
14	type (off-line or on-line)		
15	location		
16			
17	II plate type:		
18	number of passes		
19	number of plates per block		
20	number of blocks		
21	plate thickness, mm		
22	width of air channel, mm		
23	width of flue gas channel, mm		
24	air-side rib pitch, mm		
25	flue gas-side rib pitch, mm		
26	material: plate		
27	rib		
28	frame		
29	air crossover duct: number		
30	bolted/welded		
31	supplied with clips		
32	water wash: yes/no		
33	type (off-line or on-line)		
34	location		
35			
36	III heat pipe:		
37	number of tubes		
38	tubes OD/wall thickness, mm		
39	tube material		
40	tubes per row		
41	number of rows		
42	tube pitch (square/triangular), mm		
43		air side	gas side
44	fins: type		
45	height × thickness × No./m		
46	material		
47	effective length, m		
48	heating surface, m ²		
49	maximum allowable soak temperature, °C		
50	sootblower: yes/no		
51	type		
52	location		
53	Notes:		
54			
55			
56			
57			

Fan data sheet				SI units			
				rev.:	date:	sheet 1 of 2	
Purchaser/owner:				Item No.:			
Service:				Location:			
1	fan manufacturer:			model/size:		arrangement:	
2	service:			number required:			
3	drive system:			fan rotation from driven end:		☐ cw ☐ ccw	
4	gas handled:			relative molecular mass:			
5	site elevation, m:			fan location:			
6	Operating conditions						
7	operating condition/case:			normal	rated	other conditions	
8	mass flow-rate capacity, kg/s						
9	volume flow-rate capacity, m ³ /s						
10	air density, kg/m ³						
11	temperature, °C						
12	relative humidity, %						
13	static pressure @ inlet, Pa						
14	static pressure @ outlet, Pa						
15	performance:						
16	kW @ temperature (all losses included)						
17	fan speed, r/min						
18	static pressure rise across fan, Pa						
19	inlet damper/vane position						
20	discharge damper position						
21	fan static efficiency, %						
22	steam rate, kg/kW·h (turbine only)						
23	fan control:			drive:			
24	air supply			make		type	
25	fan control, furnished by			rated kW		r/min	
26	method:	☐ inlet damper	☐ outlet damper	electrical area classification:			
27		☐ inlet guide vanes	☐ variable speed	class	group	division	
28	starting method			power	volts	ph	Hz
29	Construction features						
30	housing:			bearings:			
31	material	thickness, mm		☐ hydrodynamic	☐ anti-friction		
32	split for wheel removal yes no			type			
33	drains, number/size			lubrication			
34	access doors, number/size			mass flow rate coolant required m ³ /s water @ °C			
35	blades:			thermostatically cont. heaters		☐ yes	☐ no
36	type			temperature detectors		☐ yes	☐ no
37	number	thickness, mm		vibration detectors		☐ yes	☐ no
38	material						
39	hub:			speed detectors:			
40	☐ shrink fit	☐ keyed				☐ non-contact probe	
41	material					☐ speed switch	
42	shaft:					☐ other	
43	material			couplings:			
44	diameter @ brgs., mm			type			
45	shaft sleeves:			make		model	
46	material			service factor			
47	shaft seals:			mount coupling halves			
48	type:			☐ fan			
49				☐ driver			
50	centrifugal force ωr^2 , kg·m ²			spacer	☐ yes	number	length, mm
51	Notes: (all data on per unit basis)						
52							
53							

Fan data sheet				SI units			
				rev.:	date:	sheet 2 of 2	
Construction features (continued)							
1	miscellaneous:						rev.
2	common baseplate (fan driver)		silencer (inlet) (outlet)		inlet (screen) (filter)		
3	bearing pedestals/soleplates		evase		housing drain connection		
4	performance curves		vibration isolation		spark-resistant coupling guard		
5	sectional drawing		type		insulation clips		
6	outline drawing		special coatings		inspection access		
7	inlet boxes		control panel		heat shields		
8	noise attenuation:				masses, kg		
9	maximum allowable sound-pressure level dB(A) @ m				fan driver base		
10	predicted sound-pressure level dB(A) @ m				sound trunk		
11	attenuation method				evase		
12	furnished by				total shipping mass		
13	painting:				connections:		
14	manufacturer's standard					size	rating
15					inlet		orientation
16	shipment:				outlet		
17	domestic	export	export boxing required		drains		
18							
19	erection:						
20	assembled				tests:		
21	partly assembled				mechanical run-in (no load)		
22	outdoor storage over 6 months				witnessed performance		
23	applicable specifications:				rotor balance		
24					shop inspection		
25					assembly and fit-up check		
26							
27							
28	Notes:						
29	Items marked to be included in vendor scope of supply.						
30							
31							
32							
33							
34							
35							
36							
37							
38							
39							
40							
41							
42							
43							
44							
45							
46							
47							
48							
49							
50							
51							
52							

Sootblower data sheet		SI units		
		rev.:	date:	sheet 1 of 1
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:		
Service:		Location:		
1	Operating data:	rev.		
2	fuel oil type/relative molecular mass			
3	sulfur, mass fraction, %			
4	vanadium, mg/kg			
5	nickel, mg/kg			
6	ash, mass fraction, %			
7	lane location			
8	flue gas temperature @ blower, maximum °C			
9	flue gas pressure @ blower, maximum °C			
10	blowing medium			
11	Utility data:			
12				
13	steam _____ kPa @ _____ °C _____ kg/s per blower			
14				
15	air _____ kPa _____ m³/s (N) per blower			
16				
17	power _____ volts _____ phase _____ Hz			
18				
19	Layout data:			
20	tube outside diameter, mm			
21	tube length, m			
22	tube spacing (stag./in line), mm			
23	bank width, m			
24	number of intermediate tube sheets			
25	lane dimension (minimum clearance), mm			
26	maximum cleaning radius, m			
27	extended-surface type			
28	number of extended-surface rows			
29	lining thickness, mm			
30	Blower data:			
31	manufacturer			
32	type			
33	model			
34	number required			
35	number of lanes (rows)			
36	number per lane			
37	arrangement			
38	operation			
39	control required			
40	control panel location (local or remote)			
41	driver type (man., pneumatic or electrical motor)			
42	electrical-area classification			
43	motor-starters classification			
44	motor: kW			
45	enclosure			
46	r/min			
47	lance travel speed			
48	head: material & rating			
49	wall box isolation			
50				
51				
52	Notes:			
53				
54				

Fired-heater data sheet		USC units		
		rev.:	date:	sheet 1 of 6
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:		
Service:		Location:		
1	unit:	* number required:		rev.
2	manufacturer:	reference:		
3	type of heater:			
4	*total heater absorbed duty, Btu/h:			
5	Process design conditions			
6	*operating case			
7	heater section			
8	*service			
9	heat absorption, Btu/h			
10	*fluid			
11	*flow rate, lb/h			
12	*flow rate, b.p.d.			
13	*pressure drop, allowable (clean/fouled), psi			
14	pressure drop, calculated (clean/fouled), psi			
15	*avg. rad. sect. flux density, allow., Btu/h - ft ²			
16	avg. rad. sect. flux density, calc., Btu/h - ft ²			
17	max. rad. sect. flux density, Btu/h - ft ²			
18	conv. sect. flux density (bare tube), Btu/h - ft ²			
19	*velocity limitation, ft/s			
20	process fluid mass velocity, lb/s - ft ²			
21	*maximum allow./calc. inside film temperature, °F			
22	*fouling factor, h - ft ² - °F/Btu			
23	*coking allowance, in			
24	Inlet conditions:			
25	*temperature, °F.			
26	*pressure, (psia) (psig)			
27	*liquid flow, lb/h			
28	*vapour flow, lb/h			
29	*liquid gravity, (°API) (sp. gr. @ 60 °F)			
30	*vapour relative molecular mass			
31	*vapour density, lb/ft ³			
32	*viscosity (liquid/vapour), cP			
33	*specific heat (liquid/vapour), Btu/lb - °F			
34	*thermal conductivity, (liquid/vapour), Btu/h-ft-°F			
35	Outlet conditions:			
36	*temperature, °F.			
37	*pressure, (psia) (psig)			
38	*liquid flow, lb/h			
39	*vapour flow, lb/h			
40	*liquid gravity, (°API) (sp. gr. @ 60 °F)			
41	*vapour relative molecular mass			
42	*vapour density, lb/ft ³			
43	*viscosity (liquid/vapour), cP			
44	*specific heat (liquid/vapour), Btu/lb - °F			
45	*thermal conductivity (liquid/vapour), Btu/h - ft - °F			
46	Remarks and special requirements:			
47	*distillation data or feed composition:			
48	short-term operating conditions:			
49				
50	NOTES:			
51				

Fired-heater data sheet				USC units		
				rev.:	date:	sheet 2 of 6
Combustion design conditions						
1	operating case					rev.
2	*type of fuel					
3	*excess air, %					
4	calculated heat release (h_L), Btu/h					
5	fuel efficiency calculated, % (h_L)					
6	fuel efficiency guaranteed, % (h_L)					
7	radiation loss, % of heat release (h_L)					
8	flue gas temperature leaving: radiant section, °F					
9	convection section, °F					
10	APH, °F					
11	flue gas quantity, lb/h					
12	flue gas mass vel. through convection section, lb/s - ft ²					
13	draught	at arch, in H ₂ O				
14		at burners, in H ₂ O				
15	*ambient air temperature, efficiency calculation, °F					
16	*ambient air temperature, stack design, °F					
17	*altitude above sea level, ft					
18	volumetric heat release, (h_L), Btu/h - ft ³					
19	*emission limits:	ppm, v (d) (corrected to 3 % O ₂)		NO _x	CO:	SO _x
20		lb/Btu (h_L) (h_H)		UHC:	particulates:	
21	Fuel characteristics:					
22	*gas type	*liquid type		*other type		
23	* h_L Btu/(lb) (scf)	* h_L Btu/lb		* h_L Btu/(scf) (lb)		
24	* h_H Btu/(lb) (scf)	* h_H Btu/lb		* h_H Btu/(scf) (lb)		
25	*press. @ burner, psig	*press. @ burner, psi		*press. @ burner, psi		
26	*temp. @ burner, °F	*temp. @ burner, °F		*temp. @ burner, °F		
27	*relative molecular mass	*viscosity @ °F	cSt			
28		*atomizing steam temp. °F				
29		*pressure, psi				
30	component	mole %	component	mass fraction	component	%
31						
32						
33						
34			*vanadium, mg/kg (ppm)			
35			*sodium, mg/kg (ppm)			
36			*sulfur			
37			*ash			
38	Burner data:					
39	manufacturer:	size/model No.:		number:		
40	type:	location:		orientation:		
41	heat release per burner, Btu/h	design:	normal:	minimum:		
42	pressure drop across burner @ design heat release, in H ₂ O:					
43	distance burner centreline to tube centreline, horizontal, in:			vertical, in:		
44	distance burner centreline to unshielded refractory, horizontal, in:			vertical, in:		
45	pilot, type:	capacity (Btu/h):		fuel:		
46	ignition method:					
47	flame detection, type:		number:			
48	Notes:					
49						
50						

Fired-heater data sheet		USC units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 3 of 6	
Mechanical design conditions					
1	*plot limitations:	*stack limitations:			
2	*tube limitations:	*noise limitations:			
3	*structural design data:	wind velocity:	*wind occurrence:		
4		snow load:	*seismic zone:		
5	*minimum/normal/maximum ambient air temperature, °F:		*relative humidity, %		
6	heater section:				
7	service:				
8	Coil design:				
9	*design basis: tube-wall thickness (code or spec.)				
10	rupture strength (minimum or average)				
11	*stress-to-rupture basis, h				
12	*design pressure, elastic/rupture, psi				
13	*design fluid temperature, °F				
14	*temperature allowance, °F				
15	corrosion allowance, tubes/fittings, in				
16	hydrostatic test pressure, psi				
17	*post-weld heat treatment (yes or no)				
18	* % of welds fully radiographed				
19	maximum (clean) tube metal temperature, °F				
20	design tube metal temperature, °F				
21	inside film coefficient, Btu/h ft ² ·°F				
22	Coil arrangement:				
23	tube orientation: vertical or horizontal				
24	*tube material (specification and grade)				
25	tube outside diameter, in				
26	tube-wall thickness, (minimum) (average), in				
27	number of flow passes				
28	number of tubes				
29	number of tubes per row (convection section)				
30	overall tube length, ft				
31	effective tube length, ft				
32	bare tubes: number				
33	total exposed surface, ft ²				
34	extended surface tubes: number				
35	total exposed surface, ft ²				
36	tube layout (in line or staggered)				
37	tube spacing, cent. to cent.: horiz. × diag. (or vert.)				
38	spacing tube cent. to furnace wall (min.), in				
39	corbels (yes or no)				
40	corbel width, in				
41	Description of extended surface:				
42	type: (studs) (serrated fins) (solid fins)				
43	material				
44	dimensions (height × diameter/thickness), in				
45	spacing (fins/in) (studs/plane)				
46	maximum tip temperature (calculated), °F				
47	extension ratio (total area/bare area)				
48	Plug type headers:				
49	*type				
50	material (specification and grade)				
51	nominal rating				
52	*location (one or both ends)				
53	welded or rolled joint				
54	Notes:				
55					
56					

Fired-heater data sheet		USC units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 4 of 6	
Mechanical design conditions (continued)					
1	heater section:				rev.
2	service:				
3	Return bends:				
4	type				
5	material (specification and grade)				
6	nominal rating or schedule				
7	*location (f. b = firebox, h. b. = header box)				
8	Terminals and/or manifolds:				
9	*type (bev. = bevelled, manif. = manifold, flg. = flanged)				
10	inlet: material (specification and grade)				
11	size/schedule or thickness				
12	number of terminals				
13	flange material (specification and grade)				
14	flange size and rating				
15	outlet: material (specification and grade)				
16	size/schedule or thickness				
17	number of terminals				
18	flange material (specification and grade)				
19	flange size and rating				
20	*manifold to tube connection (welded, extruded, etc.)				
21	manifold location (inside or outside header box)				
22	Crossovers:				
23	*welded or flanged				
24	*pipe material (specification and grade)				
25	pipe size/schedule or thickness				
26	*flange material				
27	flange size/rating				
28	*location (internal/external)				
29	fluid temperature, °F.				
30	Tube supports:				
31	location (ends, top, bottom)				
32	material (specification and grade)				
33	design metal temperature, °F				
34	thickness, in				
35	type and thickness of insulation, in				
36	anchor (material and type)				
37	Intermediate tube supports:				
38	material (specification and grade)				
39	design metal temperature, °F				
40	thickness, in				
41	spacing, ft				
42	Tube guides:				
43	location:				
44	material:				
45	type/spacing:				
46	Header boxes:				
47	location:	hinged door/bolted panel:			
48	casing material:	thickness, in:			
49	lining material:	thickness, in:			
50	anchor (material and type):				
51	Notes:				
52					
53					
54					

Fired-heater data sheet		USC units	
		rev.:	date:
		sheet 5 of 6	
Mechanical design conditions (continued)			
1	Refractory design basis:		
2	ambient temperature, °F:	wind velocity, mph/fps:	casing temperature, °F:
3	Exposed vertical walls:		
4	lining thickness, in:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °F:	
5	wall construction:		
6			
7	anchor (material & type):		
8	casing material:	thickness, in:	temperature, °F:
9	Shielded vertical walls:		
10	lining thickness, in:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °F:	
11	wall construction:		
12			
13	anchor (material & type):		
14	casing material:	thickness, in:	temperature, °F:
15	Arch:		
16	lining thickness, in:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °F:	
17	wall construction:		
18			
19	anchor (material and type):		
20	casing material:	thickness, in:	temperature, °F:
21	Floor:		
22	lining thickness, in:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °F:	
23	floor construction:		
24			
25	casing material:	thickness, in:	temperature, °F:
26	minimum floor elevation, ft:	free space below plenum, ft:	
27	Convection section:		
28	lining thickness, in:	hot-face temperature, design/calculated, °F:	
29	wall construction:		
30			
31	anchor (material and type):		
32	casing material:	thickness, in:	temperature, °F:
33	Internal wall:		
34	type:	material:	
35	dimension, height/width:		
36	Ducts:	Flue gas	Combustion air
37	location:	breeching	
38	size, ft, or net free area, ft ² :		
39	casing material:		
40	casing thickness, in:		
41	lining: internal/external		
42	thickness, in:		
43	material:		
44	anchor (material and type)		
45	casing temperature, °F		
46	Plenum chamber (air):		
47	casing material:	thickness, in:	size, ft:
48	lining material:	thickness, in:	
49	anchor (material & type):		
50	Notes:		
51			
52			

Fired-heater data sheet				USC units		
				rev.:	date:	sheet 6 of 6
Mechanical design conditions (continued)						
1	Stack or stack stub:					rev.
2	number:	self-supported or guyed:	location:			
3	casing material:	*corrosion allow., in:	minimum thickness, in:			
4	inside metal diameter, ft:	height above grade, ft:	stack length, ft:			
5	lining material:	thickness, in:				
6	anchor (material and type):					
7	extent of lining:		internal or external:			
8	design flue gas velocity, ft/s:	flue gas temp., °F:				
9	Dampers:					
10	location					
11	type (control, tight shut-off, etc.)					
12	material: blade					
13	material: shaft					
14	multiple/single leaf					
15	provision for operation (man. or auto.)					
16	type of operator (cable or pneumatic)					
17	Miscellaneous:					
18	platforms: location	number	width	length/arc	stairs/ladder	access from
19						
20						
21						
22						
23						
24	type of flooring:					
25	doors:	number	location	size	bolted/hinged	
26	access					
27						
28	observation					
29						
30	tube removal					
31						
32	instrument connections:			number	size	type
33	flue gas/combustion air temperature					
34	flue gas/combustion air pressure					
35	flue gas sample					
36	snuffing steam/purge					
37	O ₂ analyser					
38	CO or NO _x analyser					
39	vents/drains					
40	process fluid temperature					
41	tube skin thermocouples					
42						
43						
44	painting requirements:					
45	internal coating:					
46	galvanizing requirements:					
47	are painter's trolley and rail included?					
48	special equipment:		sootblowers:			
49			APH:			
50			fan(s):			
51			other:			
52	Notes:					
53						
54						
55						
56						

Burner data sheet		USC units	
		rev.:	date:
		sheet 1 of 3	
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:	
Service:		Location:	
1	General data:		rev.
2	type of heater		
3	altitude above sea level, ft		
4	air supply:		
5	— ambient/preheated air/gas turbine exhaust		
6	— temperature, °F (min./max./design)		
7	— relative humidity, %		
8	— draught type: forced/natural/induced		
9	draught available: across burner, in H ₂ O		
10	draught available: across plenum, in H ₂ O		
11	required turndown		
12	burner-wall lining thickness, in		
13	heater-casing thickness, in		
14	firebox height, ft		
15	tube-circle diameter, ft		
16	Burner data:		
17	manufacturer		
18	type of burner		
19	model/size		
20	direction of firing		
21	location (roof/floor/sidewall)		
22	number required		
23	minimum distance burner centreline, ft:		
24	— to tube centreline (horizontal/vertical)		
25	— to adjacent burner centreline (horizontal/vertical)		
26	— to unshielded refractory (horizontal/vertical)		
27	burner-circle diameter, ft		
28	pilots:		
29	— number required		
30	— type		
31	— ignition method		
32	— fuel		
33	— fuel pressure, psi.		
34	— capacity, Btu/h		
35	Operating data:		
36	fuel		
37	heat release per burner, Btu/h (h_L)		
38	— design		
39	— normal		
40	— minimum		
41	excess air @ design heat release, %		
42	air temperature, °F.		
43	draught (air pressure) loss, in H ₂ O		
44	— design		
45	— normal		
46	— minimum		
47	fuel pressure required, psig		
48	flame length @ design heat release, ft		
49	flame shape (round, flat, etc.)		
50	atomizing medium/oil ratio, lb/lb		
51	Notes:		
52			
53			
54			
55			

Burner data sheet		USC units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 2 of 3	
Gas fuel characteristics					
1	fuel type				rev.
2	heating value (h_L), (Btu/scf) (Btu/lb)				
3	relative molecular mass (air = 1,0)				
4	molecular mass				
5	fuel temperature @ burner, °F				
6	fuel pressure: available @ burner, psi				
7	fuel gas composition (mole %)				
8					
9					
10					
11					
12					
13					
14					
15					
16					
17					
18					
19					
20	total				
Liquid fuel characteristics					
22	fuel type				
23	heating value (h_L), Btu/lb				
24	specific gravity/°API				
25	h/c ratio (by mass)				
26	viscosity, @ °F, cSt				
27	viscosity, @ °F, cSt				
28	vanadium, mg/kg (ppm)				
29	potassium, mg/kg (ppm)				
30	sodium, mg/kg (ppm)				
31	nickel, mg/kg (ppm)				
32	fixed nitrogen, mg/kg (ppm)				
33	sulfur, % wt				
34	ash, % wt				
35	water, % wt				
36	distillation: ASTM initial boiling point, °F				
37	ASTM mid-point, °F				
38	ASTM end-point, °F				
39	fuel temperature @ burner, °F				
40	fuel pressure available @ burner, psi				
41	atomizing medium: air/steam/mechanical				
42	temperature, °F				
43	pressure, psi				
44	Notes:				
45					
46					
47					
48					
49					
50					
51					
52					
53					
54					
55					

Burner data sheet			USC units	
			rev.:	date:
			sheet 3 of 3	
Miscellaneous				
1	burner plenum:	common/integral		rev.
2		material		
3		plate thickness, in		
4		internal insulation		
5	inlet air control:	damper or registers		
6		mode of operation		
7		leakage, %		
8	burner tile:	composition		
9		minimum service temperature, °F		
10	noise specification			
11	attenuation method			
12	painting requirements			
13	ignition port:	size/number		
14	sight port:	size/number		
15	flame detection:	type		
16		number		
17	scanner connection:	size/number		
18	safety interlock system for atomizing medium & oil			
19	performance test required (yes or no)			
20	Emission limits:			
21	firebox bridgwall temperature, °F			
22	NO _x	* ppm,v (d) or lb/MM Btu (h _L) (h _H)		
23	CO	* ppm,v (d) or lb/MM Btu (h _L) (h _H)		
24	UHC	* ppm,v (d) or lb/MM Btu (h _L) (h _H)		
25	particulates	lb/MM Btu (h _L) (h _H)		
26	SO _x	* ppm,v (d) or lb/MM Btu (h _L) (h _H)		
27				
28	*corrected to 3 % O ₂ (dry basis @ design heat release)			
30	NOTE 1 At design conditions, a minimum of 90 % of the available draught with air register fully open shall be utilized across the burner. In addition, a minimum of 75 % of the air-side pressure drop with air registers fully open shall be utilized across burner throat.			
31				
32				
33	NOTE 2 Vendor to guarantee burner flame length.			
34	NOTE 3 Vendor to guarantee excess air, heat release and draught loss across burner.			
35				
36				
37				
38				
39				
40				
41				
42				
43				
44				
45				
46				
47				
48				
49				
50				
51				
52				
53				
54				
55				
56				
57				
58				

Air-preheater data sheet		USC units			
		rev.:	date:	sheet 1 of 2	
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:			
Service:		Location:			
1	manufacturer:				rev.
2	model:				
3	number required:				
4	heating surface, ft ²				
5	mass, lb				
6	approximate dimensions: (h x w x l) ft				
7	Performance data				
8	operating case				
9					
10	air side: flow rate entering, lb/h				
11	inlet temperature, °F				
12	outlet temperature, °F				
13	pressure drop: allowable, in H ₂ O				
14	pressure drop: calculated, in H ₂ O				
15	heat absorbed, Btu/h				
16	flue gas side: flow rate, lb/h				
17	inlet temperature, °F				
18	outlet temperature, °F				
19	pressure drop: allowable, in H ₂ O				
20	pressure drop: calculated, in H ₂ O				
21	heat exchanged, Btu/h				
22	air bypass rate, lb/h				
23	total air flow rate to burners, lb/h				
24	mixed air temperature, °F				
25	flue gas composition, mole % (O ₂ /N ₂ /H ₂ O/CO ₂ /SO _x)				
26	flue gas specific heat, Btu/lb - °F				
27	flue gas acid dew-point temperature, °F				
28	minimum metal temperature: allowable, °F				
29	minimum metal temperature: calculated, °F				
30	Miscellaneous:				
31	minimum ambient air temperature, °F				
32	site elevation above sea level, ft				
33	relative humidity				
34	external cold-air bypass (yes/no)				
35	cold-end thermocouples (yes/no); number required				
36	access doors: number/size/location				
37	insulation (internal/external):				
38	cleaning medium: steam or water				
39	pressure, psi				
40	temperature, °F				
41					
42	Mechanical design:				
43	design flue gas temperature, °F				
44	design pressure differential, in H ₂ O				
45	seismic factor				
46	painting requirements				
47	leak test				
48	structural wind load, psf				
49	air leakage (guaranteed maximum), %				
50					
52	Notes: (all data on per unit basis)				
53					
54					

Air-preheater data sheet			USC units	
			rev.:	date:
			sheet 2 of 2	
Construction data				
1	I	cast iron:		rev.
2		number of passes		
3		number of tubes per block		
4		number of blocks		
5		type of surface		
6		tube material		
7		tube thickness, in		
8		glass block (yes/no)		
9		number of glass tubes		
10		air crossover duct: number		
11		bolted/welded		
12		supplied with clips		
13		water wash: yes/no		
14		type (off-line or on-line)		
15		location		
16				
17	II	plate type:		
18		number of passes		
19		number of plates per block		
20		number of blocks		
21		plate thickness, in		
22		width of air channel, in		
23		width of flue gas channel, in		
24		air-side rib pitch, in		
25		flue gas-side rib pitch, in		
26		material: plate		
27		rib		
28		frame		
29		air crossover duct: number		
30		bolted/welded		
31		supplied with clips		
32		water wash: yes/no		
33		type (off-line or on-line)		
34		location		
35				
36	III	heat pipe:		
37		number of tubes		
38		tubes OD/wall thickness, in		
39		tube material		
40		tubes per row		
41		number of rows		
42		tube pitch (square/triangular), in		
43			air side	gas side
44		fins: type		
45		height × thickness × No./in		
46		material		
47		effective length, ft.		
48		heating surface, ft ²		
49		maximum allowable soak temperature, °F		
50		sootblower: yes/no		
51		type		
52		location		
53	Notes:			
54				
55				
56				
57				

Fan data sheet					USC units				
					rev.:	date:		sheet 1 of 2	
Purchaser/owner:					Item No.:				
Service:					Location:				
1	fan manufacturer:			model/size:		arrangement:			rev.
2	service:			number required:					
3	drive system:			fan rotation from driven end:			☐ CW	☐ CCW	
4	gas handled:			relative molecular mass:					
5	site elevation, ft:			fan location:					
6	Operating conditions								
7	operating condition/case:			normal	rated	other conditions			
8	capacity, lb/h								
9	capacity, acfm								
10	density, lb/ft ³								
11	air temperature, °F								
12	relative humidity, %								
13	static pressure @ inlet, inches H ₂ O								
14	static pressure @ outlet, inches H ₂ O								
15	performance:								
16	BHP @ temperature (all losses included)								
17	fan speed, r/min								
18	static pressure rise across fan, inches H ₂ O								
19	inlet damper/vane position								
20	discharge damper position								
21	fan static efficiency, %								
22	steam rate, lb/HP-h (turbine only)								
23	fan control:			drive					
24	air supply			make		type			
25	fan control, furnished by			rated HP		r/min			
26	method:	☐ inlet damper	☐ outlet damper	electrical area classification					
27		☐ inlet guide vanes	☐ variable speed	class	group	division			
28	starting method			power	volts	ph	Hz		
29	Construction features								
30	housing:			bearings:					
31	material	thickness, in		☐ hydrodynamic	☐ anti-friction				
32	split for wheel removal ☐ yes ☐ no			type					
33	drains, number/size			lubrication					
34	access doors, number/size			coolant required			gpm water @ °F		
35	blades:			thermostatically cont. heaters			☐ yes	☐ no	
36	type			temperature detectors			☐ yes	☐ no	
37	number	thickness, in		vibration detectors			☐ yes	☐ no	
38	material								
39	hub:			speed detectors:					
40	☐	☐ shrink fit	☐ keyed				☐ non-contact probe		
41	material						☐ speed switch		
42	Notes: (all data on per unit basis)								
43									
44									

Fan data sheet				USC units			
				rev.:		date:	
				sheet 2 of 2			
Construction features (continued)							
1	shaft:						other
2	material			couplings:			rev.
3	diameter @ brgs., in			type			
4	shaft sleeves:			make			model
5	material			service factor			
6	shaft seals:			mount coupling halves			
7	type:			fan			
8				driver			
9	centrifugal force ωr^2 , lb-ft ²			spacer		yes	no length, in
10	miscellaneous:						
11	common baseplate (fan driver)		silencer (inlet) (outlet)		inlet (screen) (filter)		
12	bearing pedestals/soleplates		evase		housing drain connection		
13	performance curves		vibration isolation		spark-resistant coupling guard		
14	sectional drawing		type		insulation clips		
15	outline drawing		special coatings		inspection access		
16	inlet boxes		control panel		heat shields		
17	noise attenuation:			mass, lb			
18	maximum allowable sound-pressure level dB(A) @ ft			fan driver base			
19	predicted sound-pressure level dB(A) @ ft			sound trunk			
20	attenuation method			evase			
21	furnished by			total shipping mass			
22	painting:			connections:			
14	manufacturer's standard			size		rating	orientation
15				inlet			
16	shipment:			outlet			
17	domestic	export	export boxing required	drains			
18							
19	erection:			tests:			
20	assembled			mechanical run-in (no load)			
21	partly assembled			witnessed performance			
22	outdoor storage over 6 months			rotor balance			
23	applicable specifications:			shop inspection			
24				assembly and fit-up check			
25							
26							
27							
28	Notes:						
29	Items marked to be included in vendor scope of supply.						
30							
31							
32							
33							
34							
35							
36							
37							
38							
39							
40							
41							
42							
43							

Sootblower data sheet		USC units	
		rev.:	Date:
		sheet 1 of 1	
Purchaser/owner:		Item No.:	
Service:		Location:	
1	Operating data:	rev.	
2	fuel oil type/specific gravity or °API		
3	sulfur, mass fraction (%)		
4	vanadium, mg/kg (ppm) (mass)		
5	nickel, mg/kg (ppm) (mass)		
6	ash, mass fraction (%)		
7	lane location		
8	flue gas temperature @ blower, maximum °F		
9	flue gas pressure @ blower, maximum °F		
10	blowing medium		
11	Utility data:		
12			
13	steam _____ psi @ _____ °F _____ lb/h per blower		
14			
15	air _____ psi _____ scfm per blower		
16			
17	power _____ volts _____ phase _____ Hz		
18			
19	Layout data:		
20	tube outside diameter, in		
21	tube length, ft		
22	tube spacing (stag./in line), in		
23	bank width, ft		
24	number of intermediate tube sheets		
25	lane dimension (minimum clearance), in		
26	maximum cleaning radius, ft		
27	extended-surface type		
28	number of extended-surface rows		
29	lining thickness, in		
30	Blower data:		
31	manufacturer		
32	type		
33	model		
34	number required		
35	number of lanes (rows)		
36	number per lane		
37	arrangement		
38	operation		
39	control required		
40	control panel location (local or remote)		
41	driver type (man., pneumatic or electrical motor)		
42	electrical-area classification		
43	motor-starters classification		
44	motor: _____ HP		
45	_____ enclosure		
46	_____ r/min		
47	lance travel speed		
48	head: _____ material & rating		
49	wall box isolation		
50			
51			
52	Notes:		
53			
54			

Annex B (informative)

Purchaser's checklist

This checklist may be used to indicate the purchaser's specific requirements where this International Standard provides a choice or specifies that a decision shall be made. These items are indicated by a bullet (●) in this International Standard.

Subclause	Item	Requirement	
4.1	Pressure design code		
4.2	Applicable local rules and regulations		
5.1.4	Number of copies of referenced drawings and data required		
5.2 j)	List of sub-suppliers required?	Yes	No
5.3.3 c)	Tube-support calculations required?	Yes	No
5.3.3 h)	Decoking procedures required?	Yes	No
5.2 e) 5.3.3 k) 5.4 f)	Noise data sheets required?	Yes	No
5.4 a)	As-built data sheets and drawings required?	Yes	No
6.3.2	Space required for future sootblowers, water washing, etc.?	Yes	No
6.3.3	Sootblowers to be provided?	Yes	No
7.2.1	Acceptable extended surface type: studs solid fins segmented fins	Yes Yes Yes	No No No
9.1.4	Inspection openings required? If yes, are terminal flanges acceptable?	Yes Yes	No No
9.1.6	Low-point drains required? High-point vents required?	Yes Yes	No No
10.3.2	Tube-support corrosion protection: 50Cr-50Ni material refractory coating	Yes Yes	No No
11.3.7	Anchor-fixing method		
11.4.1	Ceramic fibre acceptable?	Yes	No
11.5.6	Block insulation as backup material?	Yes	No

Subclause	Item	Requirement	
11.4.17	Protective coating of casing, ceramic-fibre construction		
11.5.7	Protective coating of casing, back-up insulation		
12.1.1	Structural design code		
12.2.5	Locations for future platforms, ladders and stairways		
12.2.7	Fireproofing required?	Yes	No
12.3.1.2	Header box closures:		
	hinged doors	Yes	No
	bolted panels	Yes	No
12.3.1.4	Horizontal partitions required in convection-section header boxes?	Yes	No
12.4.4	Platform decking requirements:		
	checkered plate	Yes	No
	open grating	Yes	No
12.5.1	Acceptable low-temperature materials		
13.1.2	Codes for stacks, ducts and breeching		
	or Methods in Annex H to be used?	Yes	No
13.2.2	Bolting permitted for stack assembly?	Yes	No
13.5.3 c)	Acceptable aerodynamic devices:		
	helical strakes	Yes	No
	vertical strakes	Yes	No
	staggered vertical plates	Yes	No
14.1.8	Single burner with multiple guns acceptable?	Yes	No
14.1.10 d)	Minimum main fuel rate during cold-burner light-off		
14.1.17	Required heater capacity during forced-draught outage and continued operation on natural draught		
14.1.22	On-stream removal of complete burner parts or assembly is required?	Yes	No
14.2.1	Acceptable sootblower type:		
	retractable	Yes	No
	automatic	Yes	No
	sequential	Yes	No
14.4.5	Location of control dampers		
	Position on failure	Open	Close
15.1.3.5	Additional flue gas sampling connections		
15.2.1	Crossover thermowell connections required?	Yes	No
15.2.2	Outlet thermowell connections required?	Yes	No

Subclause	Item	Requirement
15.3.2.2	Water washing required? radiant section convection section	Yes No Yes No
15.4.1	Tube-skin thermocouples required?	Yes No
16.1.1	Site receiving and handling limitations	_____ _____
16.2.1 f)	Charpy impact test requirements	_____ _____
16.4.3	Galvanizing of handrails, etc.? Bolt protection: galvanizing zinc-coating	Yes No Yes No Yes No
16.6.15	Export crating	_____ _____
16.6.16	Long-term storage requirements	_____ _____
17.1.3	Pre-inspection meetings required prior to the start of fabrication?	Yes No
17.3.1	Positive materials identification (PMI) required?	Yes No
17.3.2 c)	Radiography of critical sections required?	Yes No
17.3.4 c)	Sampling quantities and degree of coverage for radiography of cast return bends and pressure fittings	_____ _____
17.5.1.2	Is pneumatic pressure testing acceptable instead of hydrostatic?	Yes No
17.5.4.2	PMI requirements	_____ _____
E.2.1.4	Electrical-area classification for fired-heater equipment/system	_____ _____
E.2.1.7	Weather and environmental requirements for outdoor installation	_____ _____
E.2.2.1	Corrosion allowance required for fan scroll and housing?	Yes No
E.2.5.2	Blade design	_____ _____
E.2.5.8	Corrosion-resistant shaft sleeves required for ID fans?	Yes No
E.2.7.4	Rotor response analysis required? To be confirmed by test-stand data?	Yes No Yes No
E.2.8.3	Mechanical running test required?	Yes No
E.2.11.1.2	Corrosive agents in the flue gas or environment affecting fan materials selection	_____ _____

Subclause	Item	Requirement	
E.2.11.3	Alternative notch-toughness requirements for fans	_____	_____
E.3.1	Accessories to be supplied by fan vendor	_____	_____
E.3.2.1	Fan driver type	_____	_____
E.3.2.2	Process variations for fan-driver sizing	_____	_____
E.3.4.1.2	Fan vendor required to review overall control system for compatibility?	Yes	No
E.3.4.2.1	Type and source of control signal, its sensitivity and range and the equipment scope to be furnished by the vendor	_____	_____
E.3.4.3.1	Damper blades: parallel opposed	Yes Yes	No No
E.3.4.3.2	Fan vendor to state maximum expected leakage through closed dampers and vanes?	Yes	No
E.3.5.2.4	Corrosion allowance	_____	_____
E.3.6.2.2	Type of insulation and jacketing	_____	_____
E.4.1.1	Non-destructive examination	_____	_____
E.4.1.6 a)	Shop fit-up and assembly of fan, drivers and other auxiliaries required prior to shipment?	Yes	No
E.4.1.6 c)	Hardness testing required?	Yes	No
E.4.2.1	Fan testing requirements	_____	_____
E.4.2.3	Rotor response analysis?	Yes	No
E.4.3.1	Equipment to be specially prepared for six months of outdoor storage?	Yes	No
E.4.3.2	Shipping preparation requirements	_____	_____

Annex C (informative)

Proposed shop-assembly conditions

SHOP-ASSEMBLY CONDITIONS

SERVICE _____ UNIT _____ TYPE _____ OWNER _____ PURCHASER _____ VENDOR _____ DATE _____	EQUIPMENT NO. _____ PLANT LOCATION _____ NO. REQUIRED _____ REFERENCE NO. _____ REFERENCE NO. _____ REFERENCE NO. _____ PAGE 1 OF _____
---	---

DEGREE OF ASSEMBLY

	Radiant	Convection
Complete assembly (Number of sections)		
Boxes:		
1. Refractory only	_____	_____
2. With anchors only	_____	_____
Panels:		
3. With tubes and refractory installed	_____	_____
4. With refractory only	_____	_____
5. With anchors only	_____	_____
Coils:		
6. Number of coil assemblies	_____	_____
7. Number of hairpins, canes, tubes	_____	_____
8. Field welds, number/size	_____	_____
	Lined	Unlined
Number of pieces:		
9. Breeching	_____	_____
10. Flue gas ducts	_____	_____
11. Combustion air ducts	_____	_____
12. Header boxes	_____	_____
13. Plenum chamber	_____	_____
14. Stack	_____	_____
	Shop-installed	Field-installed
Installation:		
15. Tube supports	_____	_____
16. Floor refractory	_____	_____
17. Header boxes	_____	_____
18. Plenum chambers	_____	_____
19. Bridgewall	_____	_____
20. Dampers	_____	_____
21. Cages to ladders	_____	_____
22. Platform flooring to framing	_____	_____
23. Platform support clips to casing	_____	_____
24. Handrails, midrails and toeplates to posts	_____	_____
25. Stair treads to stringers	_____	_____
26. Doors	_____	_____
27. Tube-skin thermocouples	_____	_____
28. Internal coatings	_____	_____
29. Burners	_____	_____
30. Sootblowers	_____	_____

**SHOP-ASSEMBLY
CONDITIONS**

SERVICE _____	EQUIPMENT NO. _____
UNIT _____	PLANT LOCATION _____
TYPE _____	NO. REQUIRED _____
OWNER _____	REFERENCE NO. _____
PURCHASER _____	REFERENCE NO. _____
VENDOR _____	REFERENCE NO. _____
DATE _____	PAGE 2 OF _____

DEGREE OF ASSEMBLY (continued)

Air heater:

31. _____

32. _____

33. _____

34. _____

35. _____

36. _____

37. _____

38. _____

39. _____

40. _____

Fans:

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

Drivers:

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

Other:

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

ESTIMATED SHIPPING MASSES AND DIMENSIONS

10. Total heater mass, tonnes (long tons) _____

11. Total ladders, stairs, platform mass, tonnes (long tons) _____

12. Total stack mass, tonnes (long tons) _____

13. Maximum radiant-section mass, tonnes (long tons) _____

14. Maximum radiant-section dimensions, length × width × height, m (ft) _____

15. Maximum convection-section mass, tonnes (long tons) _____

16. Maximum convection-section dimensions, length × width × height, m (ft) _____

Annex D (normative)

Stress curves for use in the design of tube-support elements

D.1 General

This annex provides stress curves that shall be used in the design of tube-support elements. The following stress curves are provided:

- a) one-third of the ultimate tensile strength;
- b) two-thirds of the yield strength (0,2 % offset);
- c) 50 % of the average stress required to produce 1 % creep in 10 000 h;
- d) 50 % of the average stress required to produce rupture in 10 000 h.

Some of the stresses listed in items a) through d) were not available for carbon steel castings or plate or for 50Cr-50Ni-Nb castings. The stress curves were plotted from data gathered over normal design ranges. All of the materials are suitable for application at lower temperatures.

D.2 Casting factor

For cast materials, the stresses shown in Figures D.1 through D.13 are actual stresses based on published data accepted by the industry. A casting-factor multiplier of 0,8 shall be applied to the allowable stress value in the calculation of the minimum thickness.

D.3 Minimum cross-sections

If good foundry practice or casting methods or tolerances require the use of a cross-section heavier than that based on the calculation specified in D.2 or the stress curves shown in Figures D.1 through D.13, the governing thickness shall be specified.

D.4 Maximum design temperatures

The maximum design temperatures shown in Figures D.1 through D.13 are obtained from Table 10 and are based on resistance to oxidation, except for the maximum design temperatures shown in Figures D.10 and D.12 (Type 309H and Type 310H plate), which are based on available stress data. The stress curves for some materials extend beyond the maximum design temperature because of the materials' possible use with high oxidation rates at higher temperatures.

D.5 Corrosion resistance

ASTM A 560 grade 50Cr-50Ni-Nb material is generally selected for its resistance to vanadium attack; however, its resistance diminishes at temperatures above 870 °C (1 600 °F).

D.6 Proprietary alloys

Many low-chromium alloys, alloy cast iron and high-chromium nickel alloys are proprietary. The allowable stresses used for the design of castings that use these materials (that are not included in Table 10) shall therefore be obtained from the supplier and shall be subject to the agreement of the purchaser.

D.7 Stress curves

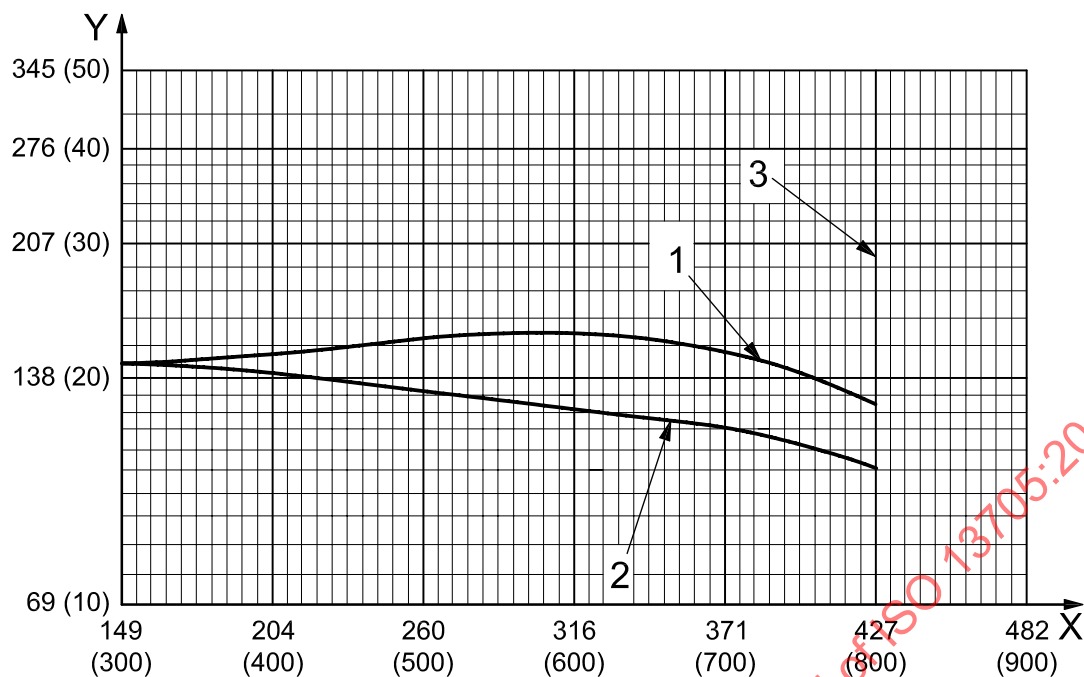
All the stress curves in Figures D.1 through D.13 are based on published data. Apparent anomalies in the shapes of the curves reflect the actual data points used to construct the curves.

D.8 Data sources

Table D.1 lists the sources of the stress data presented in Figures D.1 through D.13.

Table D.1 — Sources of data presented in Figures D.1 through D.13

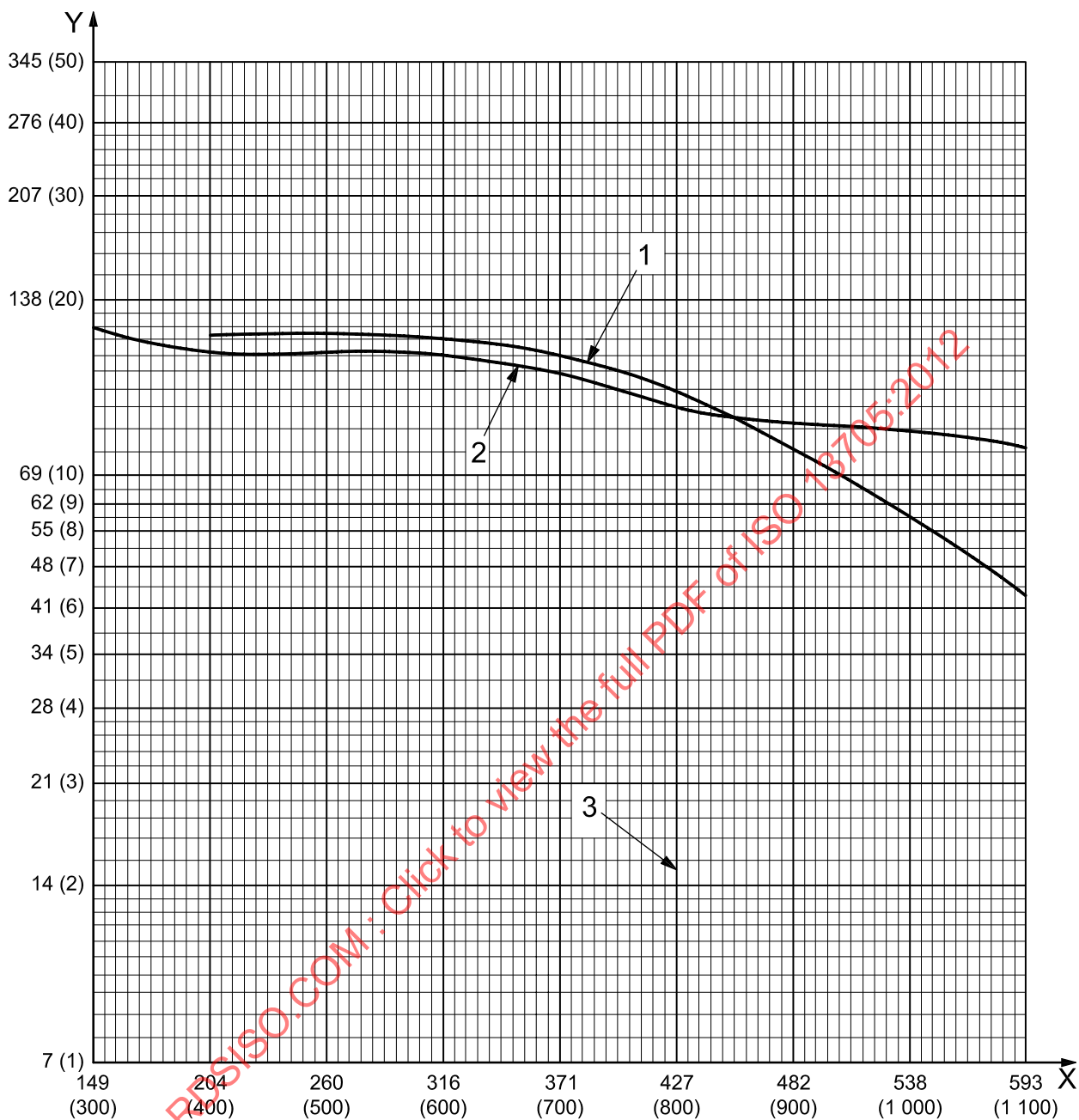
Figure	Material	Curve	Data source ^a
D.1	Carbon steel castings	Tensile strength Yield strength	SFSA <i>Steel Castings Handbook</i> SFSA <i>Steel Castings Handbook</i>
D.2	Carbon steel plate	Tensile strength Yield strength	ASTM DS 11S1 ASTM DS 11S1
D.3	21/4Cr-1Mo castings	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 6 ASTM DS 6S2 ASTM DS 6S2 ASTM DS 6S2
D.4	21/4Cr-1Mo plate	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 6S2 ASTM DS 6S2 ASTM DS 6S2 ASTM DS 6S2
D.5	5Cr-1/2Mo castings	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 6 ASTM DS 58 ASTM DS 58 ASTM DS 58
D.6	5Cr-1/2Mo plate	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 58 ASTM DS 58 ASTM DS 58 ASTM DS 58
D.7	19Cr-9Ni castings	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i>
D.8	Type 304H plate	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 5S2 ASTM DS 5S2 ASTM DS 5S2 ASTM DS 5S2
D.9	25Cr-12Ni castings	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i>
D.10	Type 309H plate	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 5 ASTM DS 5 ASTM DS 5 ASTM DS 5
D.11	25Cr-20Ni castings	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i> ASM <i>Metals Handbook</i>
D.12	Type 310H plate	Tensile strength Yield strength Rupture stress Creep stress	ASTM DS 5 ASTM DS 5 ASTM DS 5 ASTM DS 5
D.13	50Cr-50Ni-Nb castings	Rupture stress Creep stress	IN-657 ^b IN-657 ^b
^a See Bibliography.			
^b Reference [32].			



Key

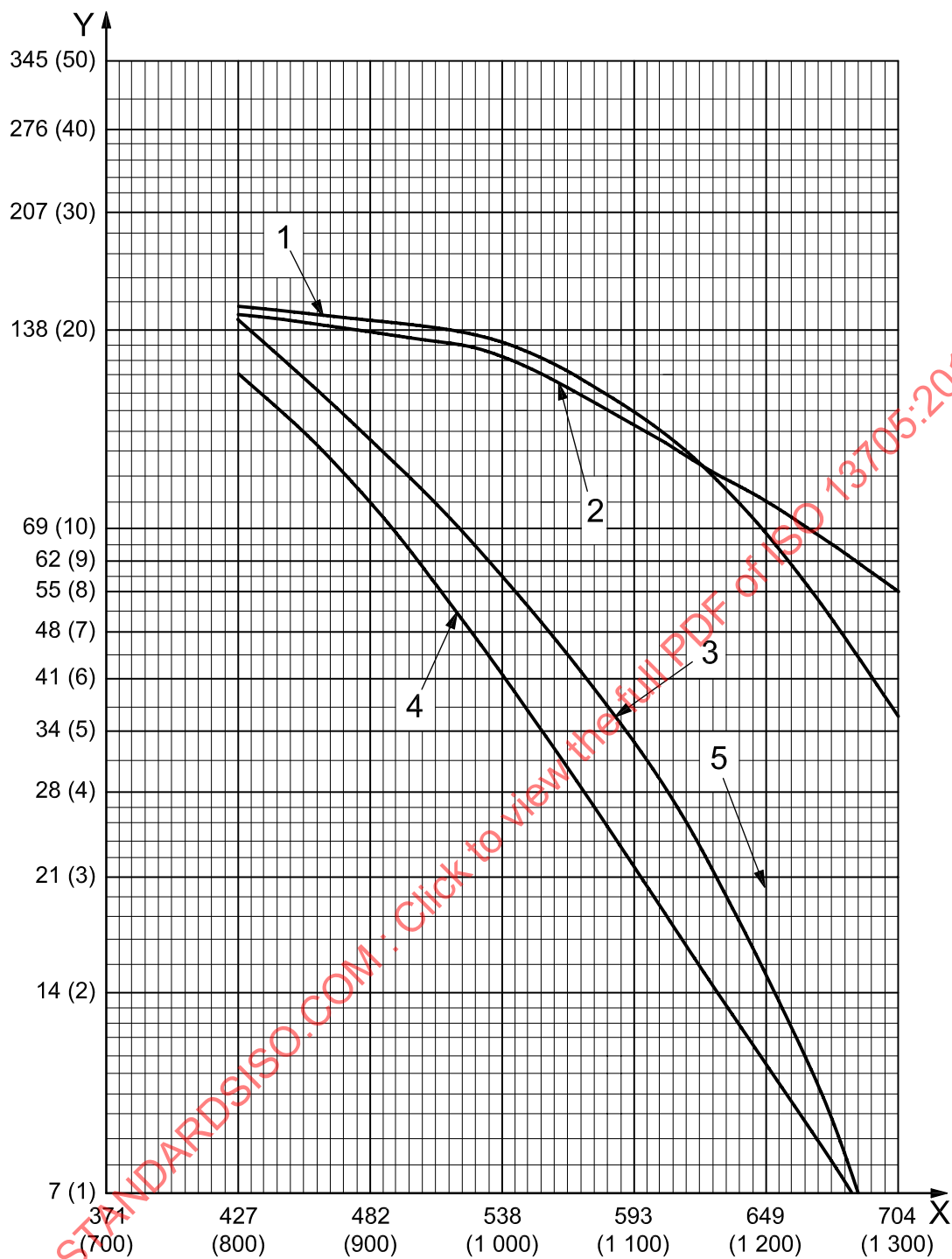
- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 1/3 tensile strength
- 2 2/3 yield strength
- 3 maximum design temperature

Figure D.1 — Carbon steel castings: ASTM A 216, grade WCB

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch × 1 000)
- 1 1/3 tensile strength
- 2 2/3 yield strength
- 3 maximum design temperature

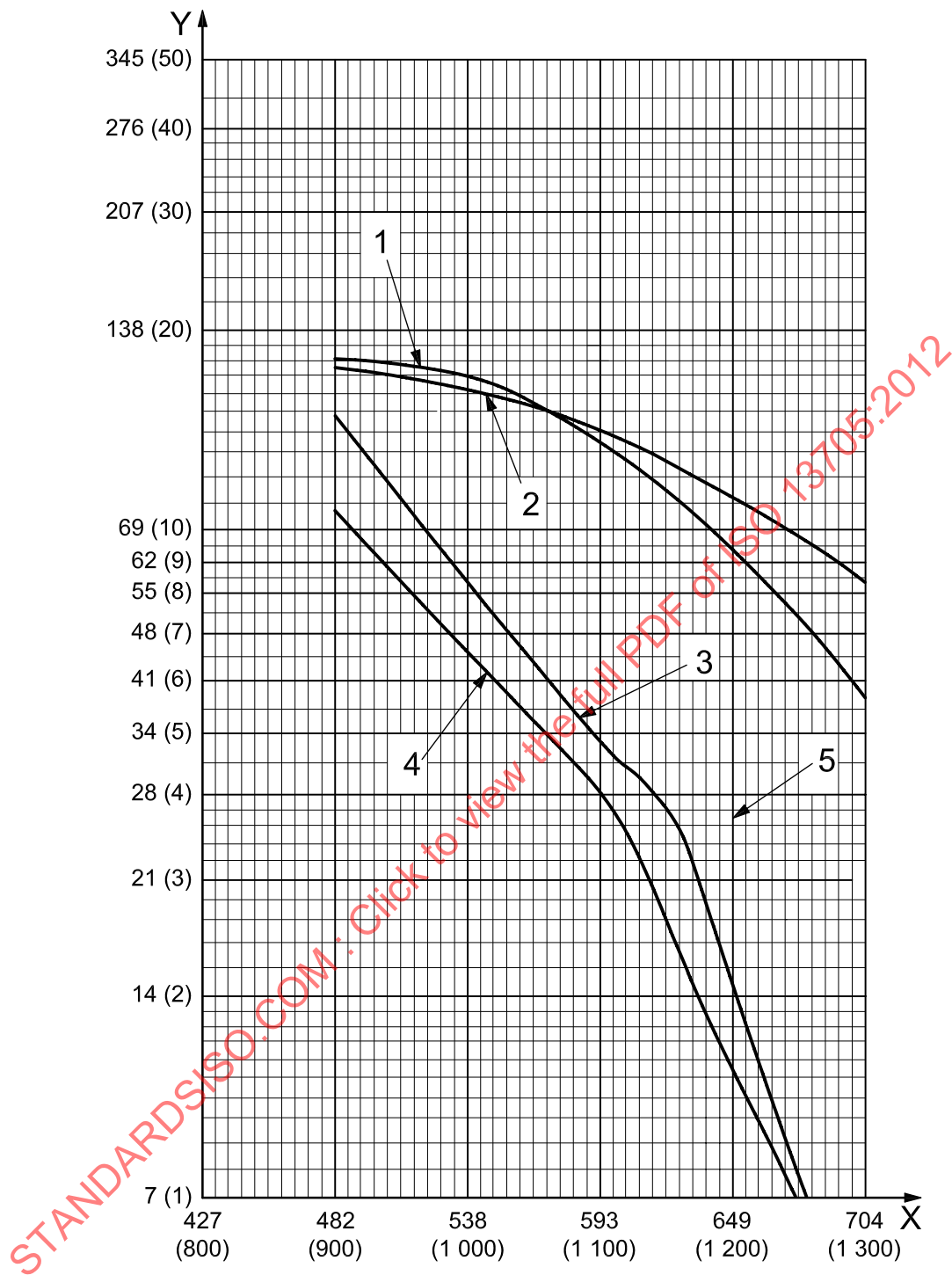
Figure D.2 — Carbon steel plate: ASTM A 283, grade C



Key

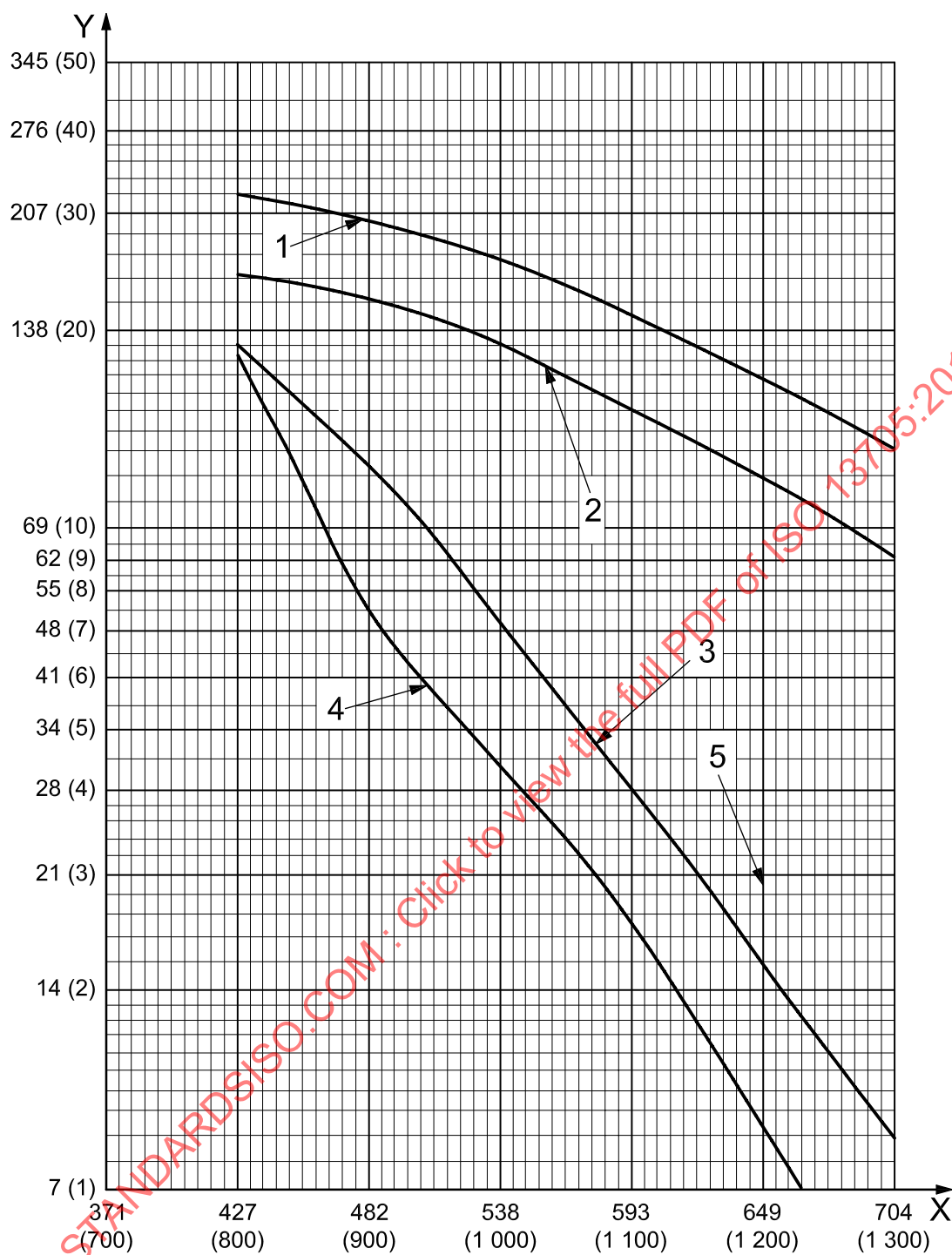
- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

Figure D.3 — 2 1/4Cr-1Mo castings: ASTM A 217, grade WC9

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

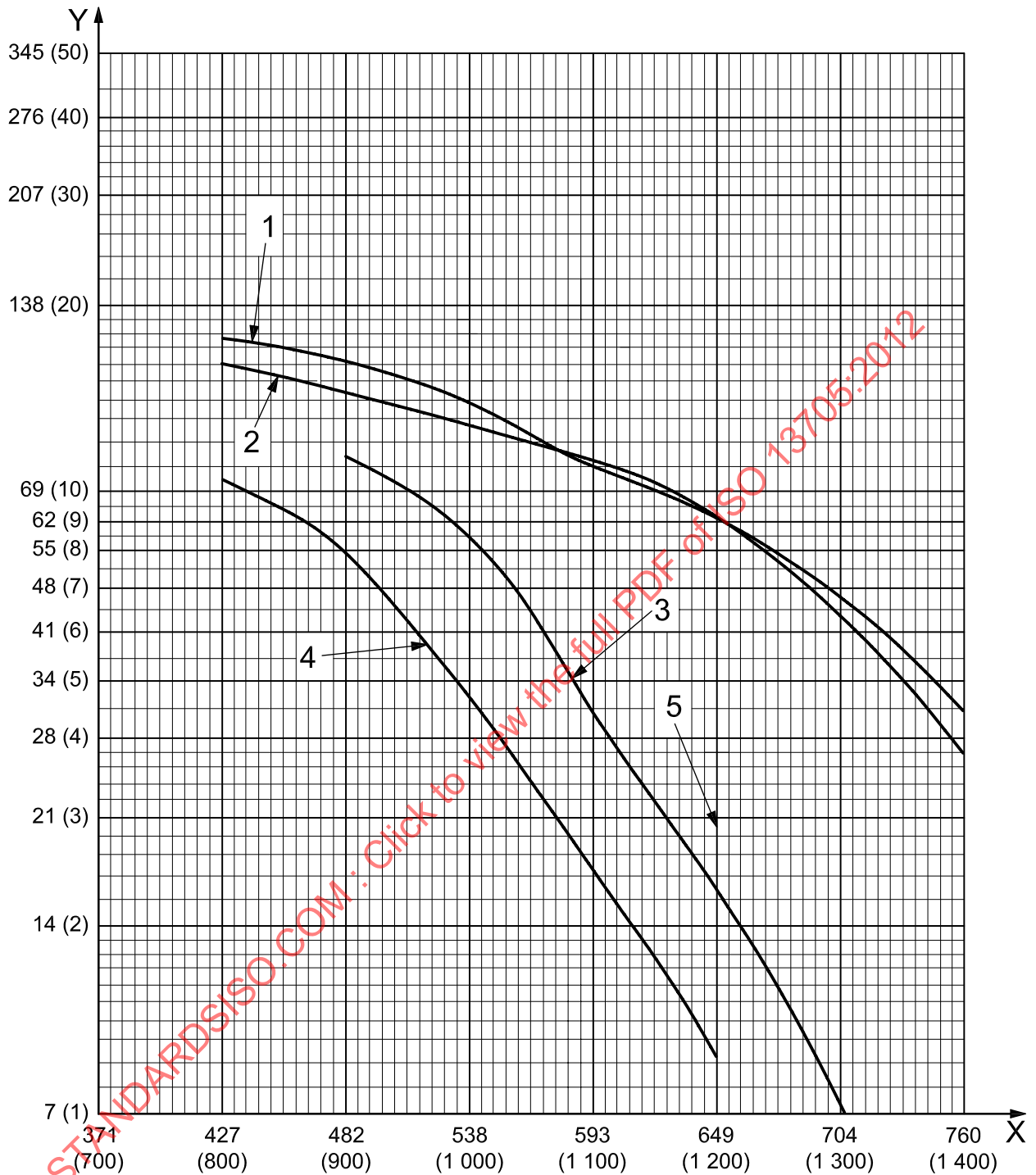
Figure D.4 — 2 1/4Cr-1Mo plate: ASTM A 387, Grade 22, Class 1



Key

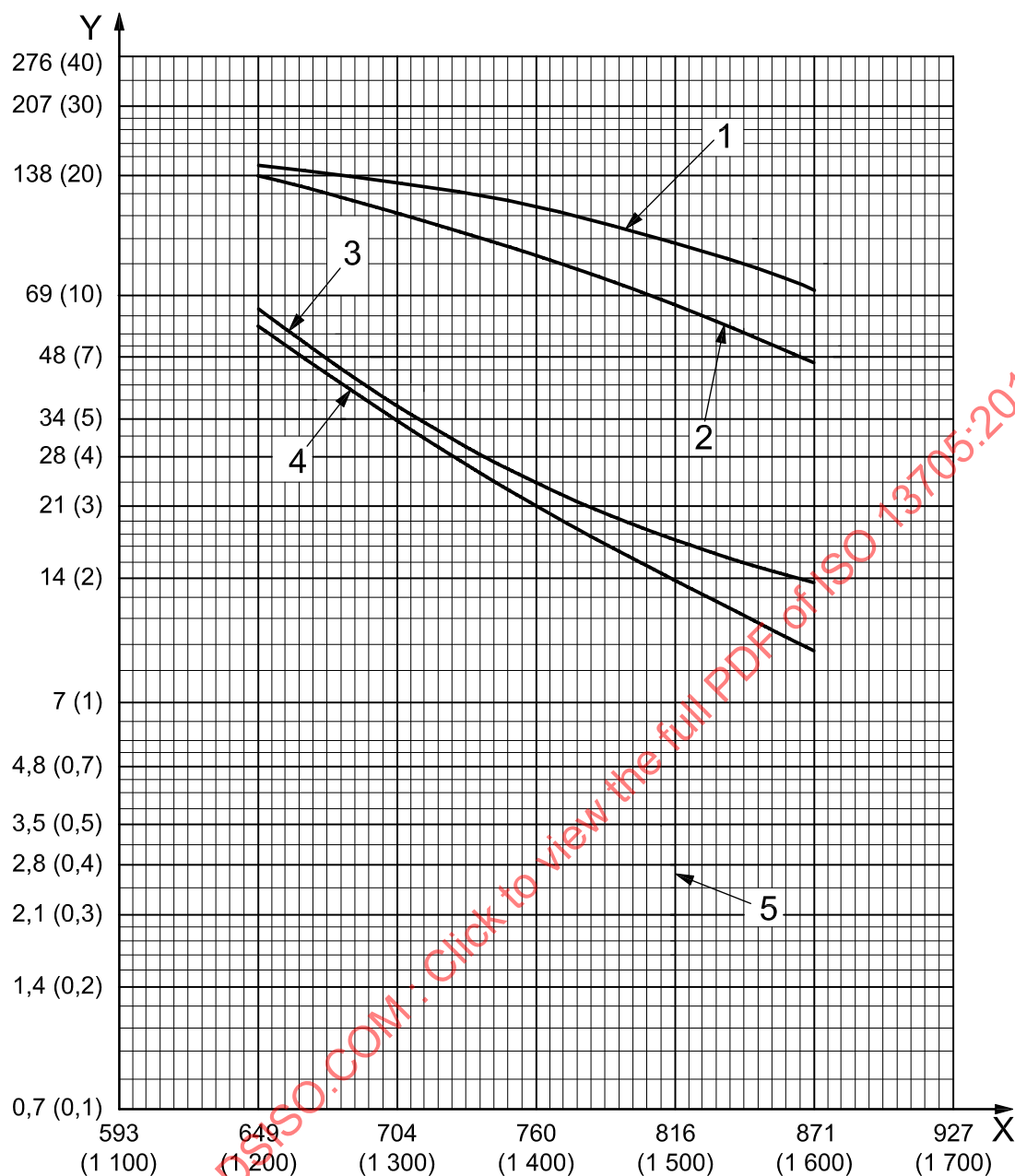
- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

Figure D.5 — 5Cr-1/2Mo castings: ASTM A 217, grade C5

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
 Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
 1 1/3 tensile strength
 2 2/3 yield strength
 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
 5 maximum design temperature

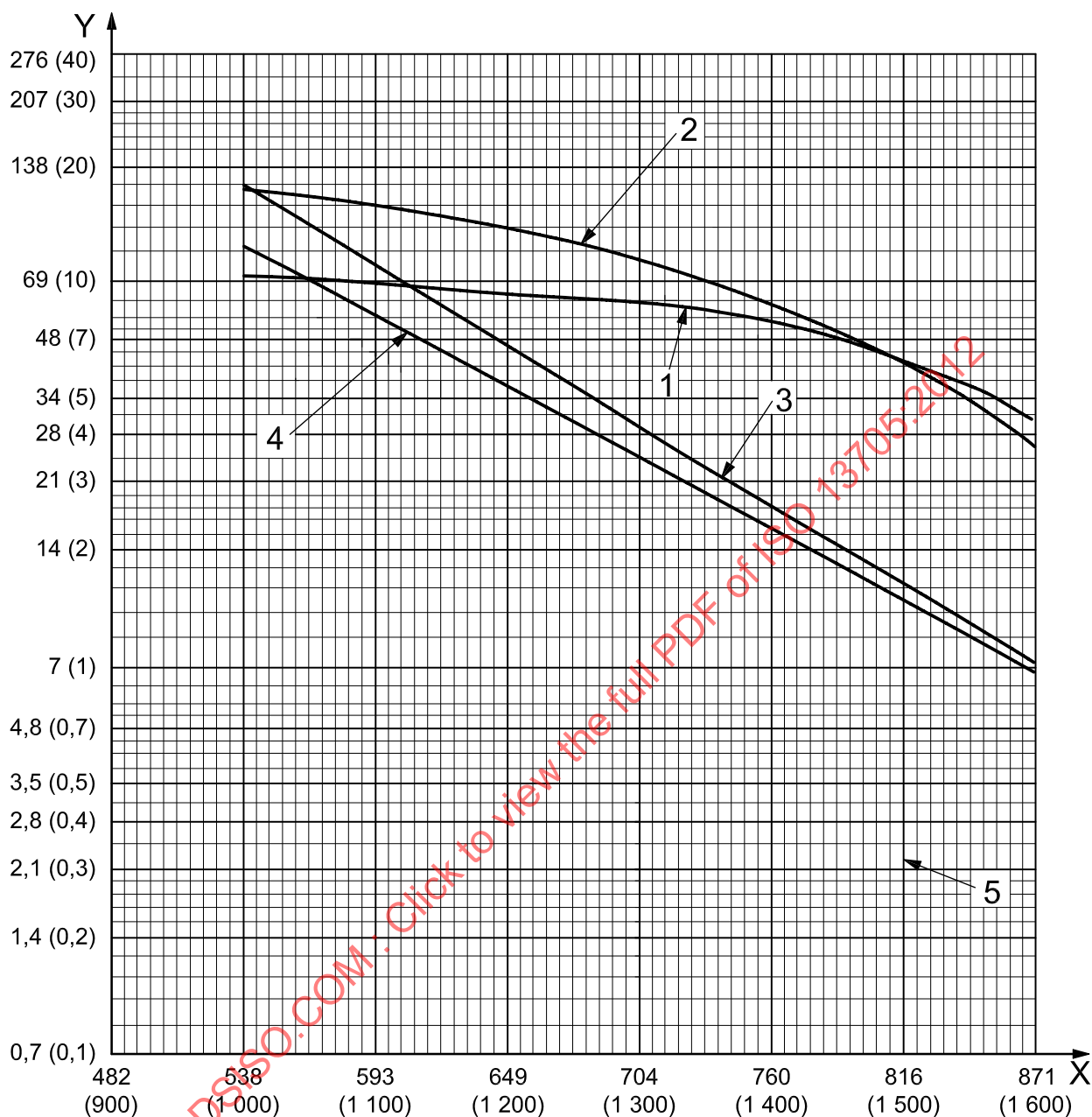
Figure D.6 — 5Cr-1/2Mo plate: ASTM A 387, grade 5, class 1



Key

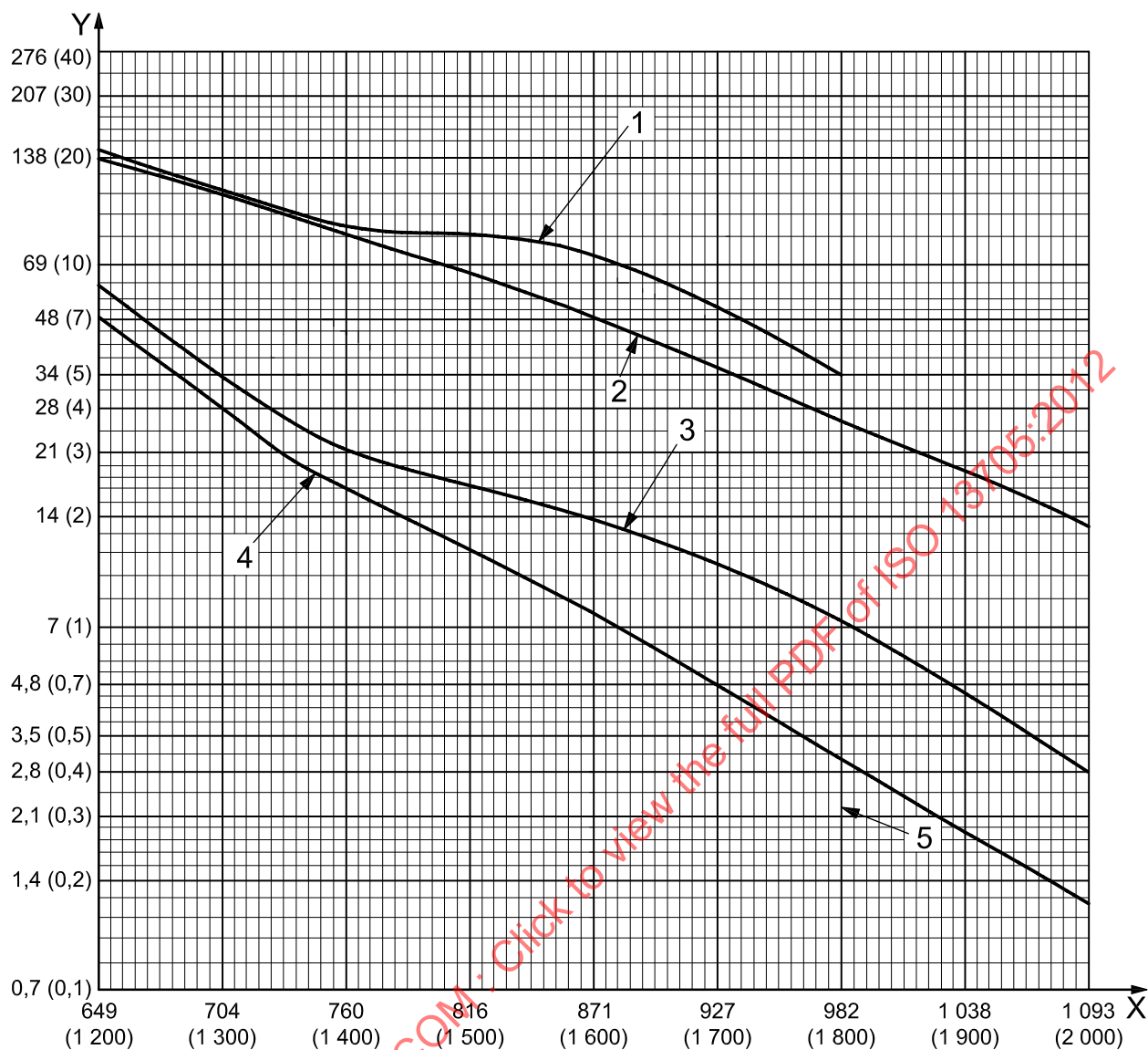
- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

Figure D.7 — 19Cr-9Ni castings: ASTM A 297, grade HF

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
 Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
 1 2/3 yield strength
 2 1/3 tensile strength
 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
 5 maximum design temperature

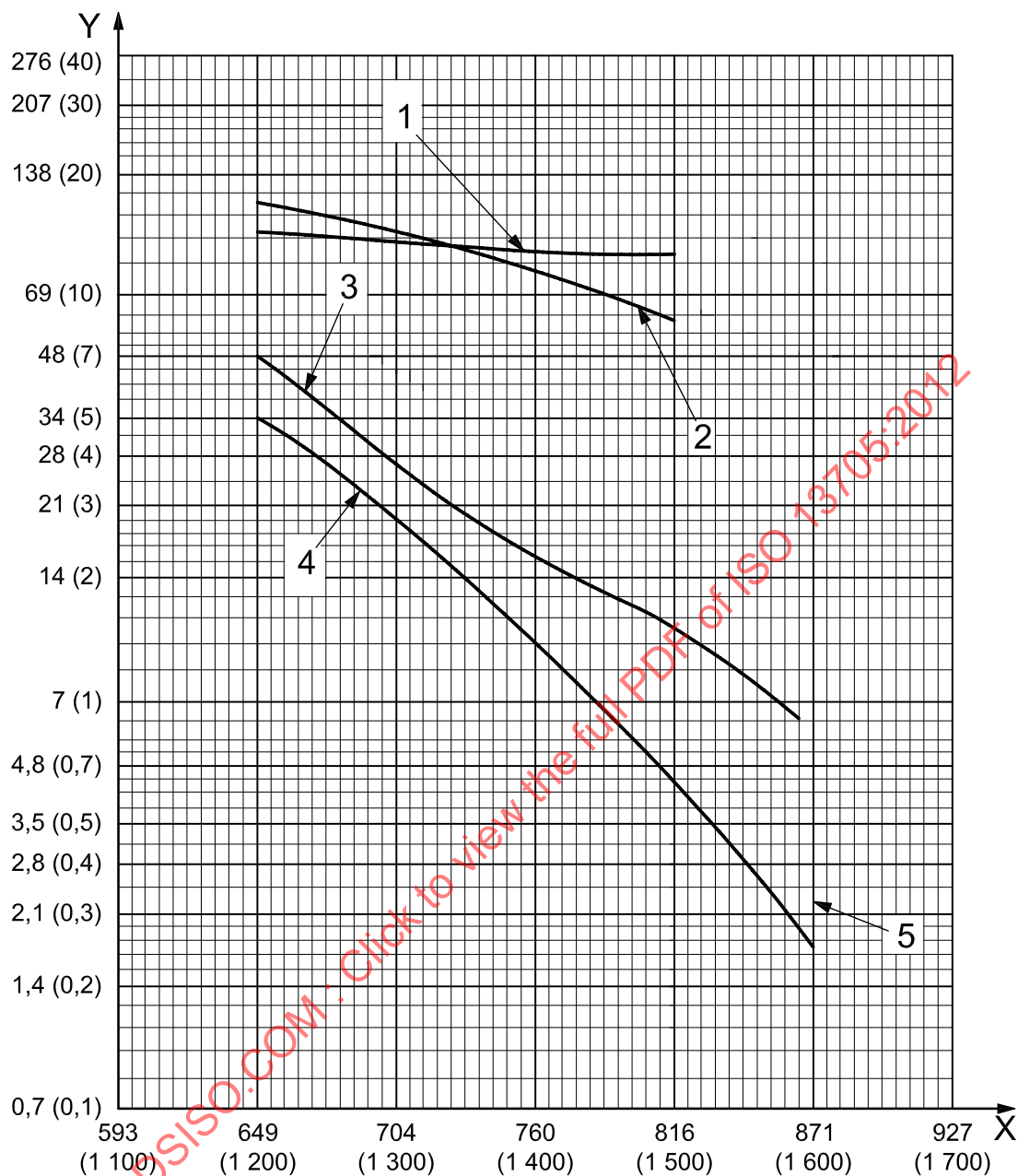
Figure D.8 — Type 304H plate: ASTM A 240, type 304H



Key

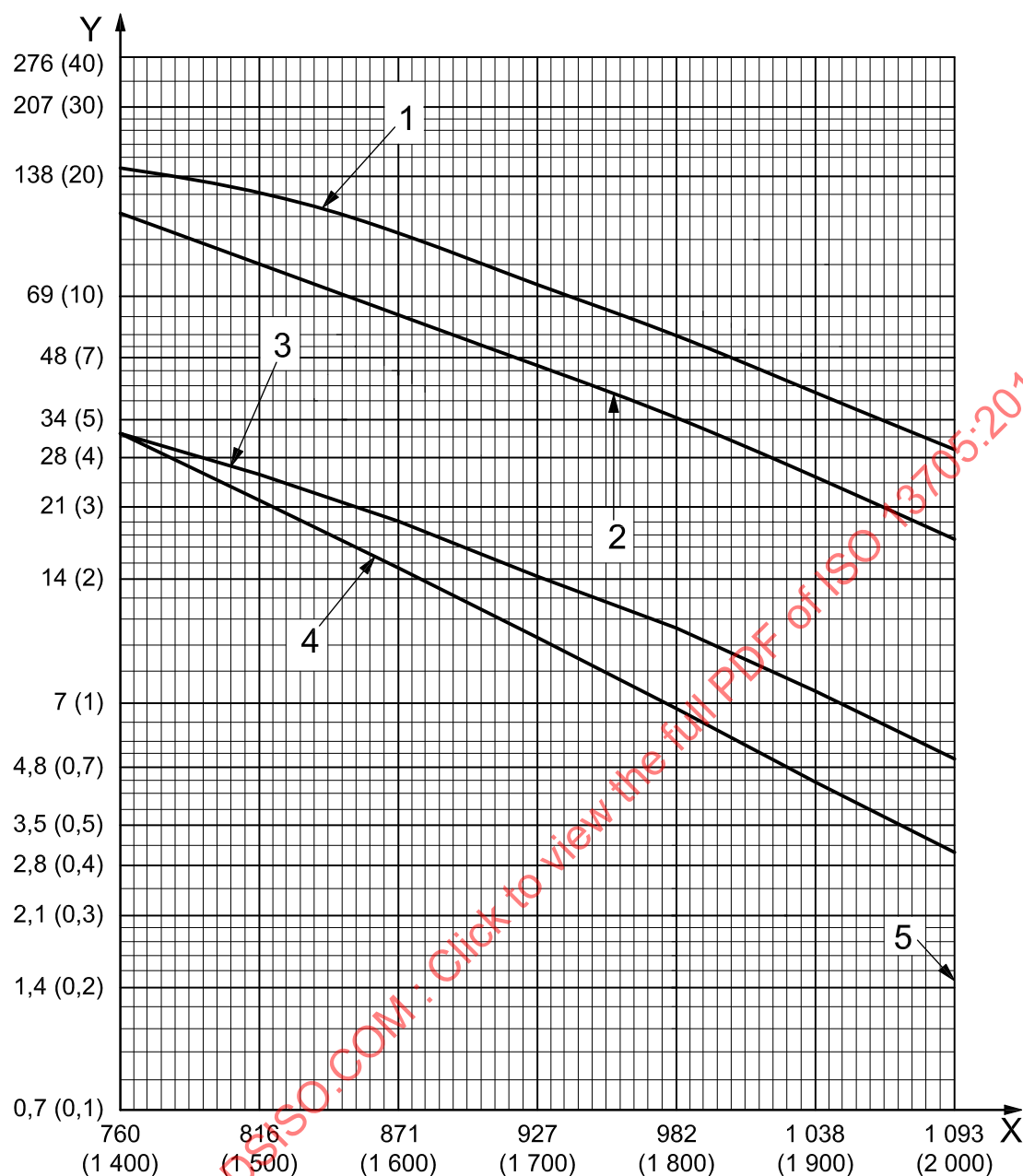
- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

Figure D.9 — 25Cr-12Ni castings: ASTM A 447, grade HH, type II

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
 Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
 1 2/3 yield strength
 2 1/3 tensile strength
 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
 5 maximum design temperature

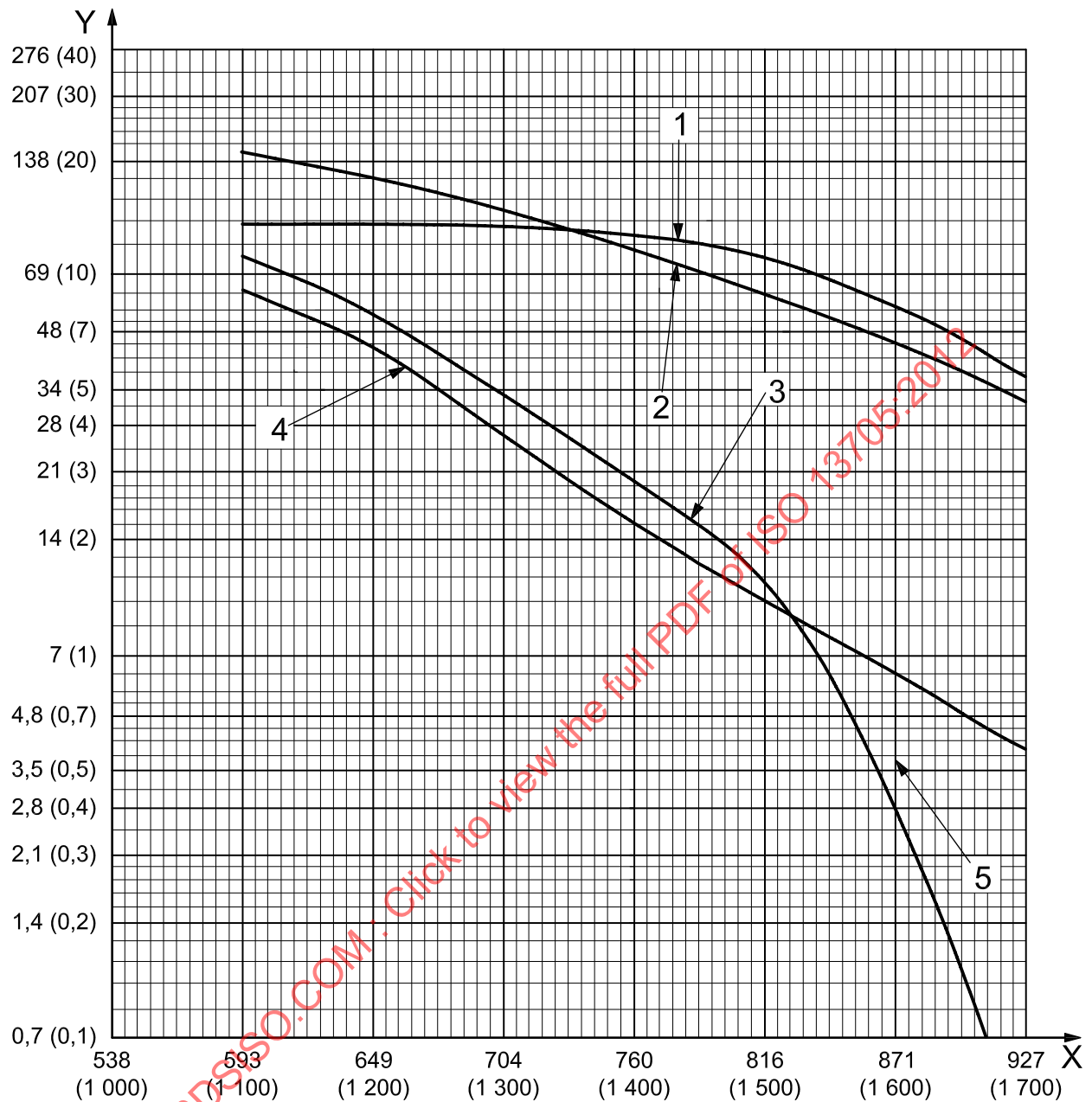
Figure D.10 — Type 309H plate: ASTM A 240, type 309H



Key

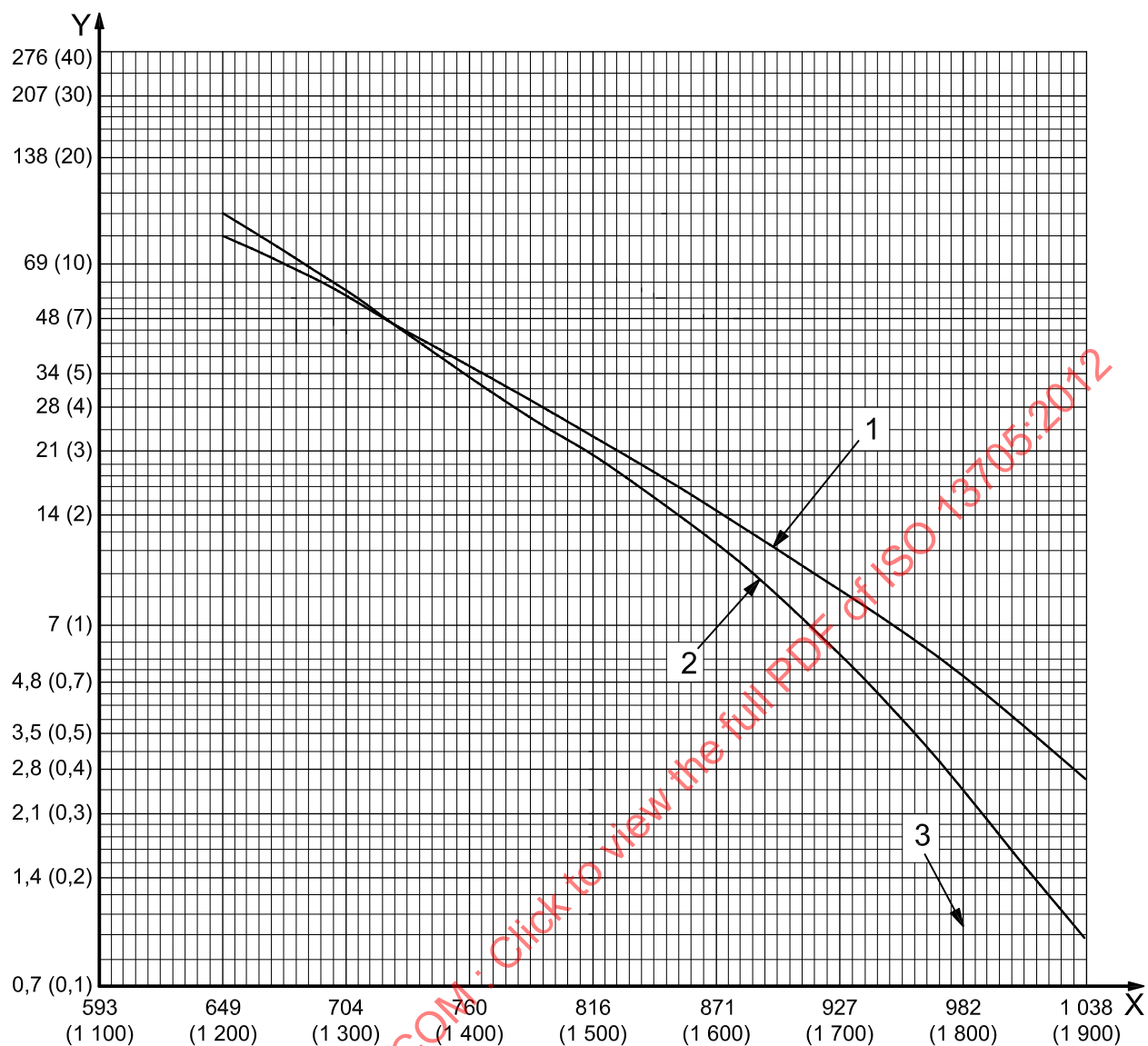
- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch × 1 000)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

Figure D.11 — 25Cr-20Ni castings: ASTM A 351, grade HK40

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 2/3 yield strength
- 2 1/3 tensile strength
- 3 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 4 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 5 maximum design temperature

Figure D.12 — Type 310H plate: ASTM A 240, type 310H



Key

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y stress, expressed in megapascals (pounds per square inch $\times 1\,000$)
- 1 50 % of rupture in 10 000 h
- 2 50 % of 1 % creep in 10 000 h
- 3 maximum design temperature

Figure D.13 — 50Cr-50Ni-Nb castings: ASTM A 560, grade 50Cr-50Ni-Nb

Annex E (normative)

Centrifugal fans for fired-heater systems

E.1 General

This annex specifies requirements and gives recommendations for centrifugal fans intended for continuous duty in fired-heater systems. The terms and definitions given below apply specifically to this annex and are therefore not given in Clause 3.

- This annex is intended to cover all the requirements for fired-heater fan applications. At the discretion of the purchaser, alternative specifications, such as API 673, may be used,

E.1.1

fan rated point

〈fan speed〉 highest speed necessary to meet any specified operating condition

E.1.2

fan rated point

〈fan capacity〉 capacity and pressure rise required by fan design to meet all specified operating points

NOTE 1 Not to be confused with the rating point as defined in AMCA 802, to which users typically add head and/or volume margins for process uncertainties, reduced performance resulting from time-related “wear and tear” and other operating conditions known to exist.

NOTE 2 The fan rated point is the same as the MCR Test Block condition as defined in AMCA 801.

NOTE 3 See E.2.1.2.

E.1.3

normal operating point

point, consistent with the design total absorbed duty for the heater, at which usual operation is expected and optimum efficiency is desired

NOTE 1 This is usually the point at which the vendor certifies that performance is within the tolerances stated in this International Standard.

NOTE 2 This definition is similar to the rating point as defined in AMCA 802 (see E.1.2).

E.1.4

maximum allowable speed

highest speed at which the manufacturer's design permits continuous operation

E.1.5

maximum allowable temperature

maximum continuous temperature for which the manufacturer has designed the equipment (or any part to which the term is referred) when handling the specified fluid at the specified pressure

NOTE Mechanical damage can occur if the fan is operated above this temperature.

E.1.6

maximum expected inlet temperature

normal operating temperature plus a margin for any abnormal specified operating condition, e.g the upstream equipment becoming fouled

E.1.7

fan total pressure

difference between the total pressure at the fan outlet and the total pressure at the fan inlet

E.1.8

fan velocity pressure

pressure corresponding to the average velocity at the specified fan outlet area

E.1.9

fan static pressure

difference between the fan total pressure and the fan velocity pressure

NOTE This can alternatively be expressed as the difference between the static pressure at the fan outlet and the total pressure at the fan inlet.

E.1.10

static pressure rise

static pressure at the fan outlet minus the static pressure at the fan inlet

E.1.11

inlet velocity pressure

difference between fan static pressure and static pressure rise

E.1.12

actual flow rate

flow rate determined at the conditions of static pressure, temperature, compressibility and gas composition, including moisture, at the fan inlet flange

NOTE The actual flow rate is expressed in actual cubic metres per minute (actual cubic feet per minute).

E.1.13

fan vendor

manufacturer of the fan

E.1.14

trip speed

speed at which the independent emergency overspeed device operates to shutdown a prime mover

E.2 Design

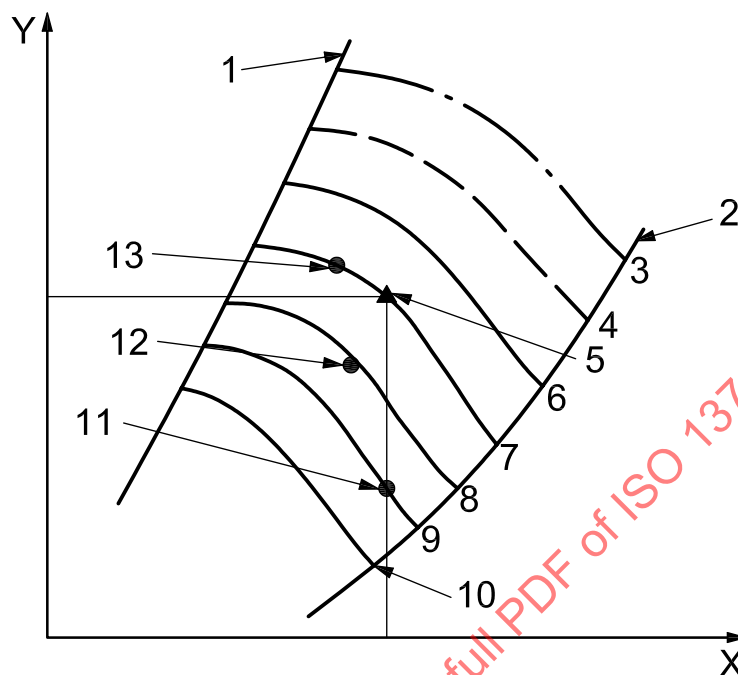
E.2.1 General

E.2.1.1 The centrifugal fan and driver equipment (including auxiliaries) shall be designed and constructed for a minimum service life of twenty years and at least three years of uninterrupted operation.

E.2.1.2 Fans shall be designed to operate satisfactorily at all specified operating conditions. The two operating points of particular concern are the rated point and the normal operating point (see E.1.1, E.1.2 and E.1.3). It shall be the responsibility of the fan purchaser to provide complete required operating data (such as flow rate, pressure, pressure rise, temperature and inlet gas density) to the fan manufacturer. In developing these data, the fan purchaser shall consider the following.

- a) The normal operating point is that point at which it is expected that the furnace will be operated most of the time. It shall be the fan manufacturer's responsibility to optimize the fan's efficiency as close to this point as practical. This operating point shall be consistent with the normal heat release for the burners for the design total absorbed heater duty and efficiency.
- b) The fan rated point shall include the flow required (including all surpluses for excess air, system leakage and design safety factor) to meet the design heat release. In no case shall the rated point be less than 115 % of the normal operating flow. The fan purchaser shall specify the fan static pressure rise and temperature required for the rated point. In no case shall the rated point be achieved with the fan inlet damper beyond 100 % of the full open position.

- c) The fan rated point shall be selected to best encompass specified operating conditions within the scope of the expected performance curve (see Figure E.1).



Key

X	inlet capacity	8	normal speed
Y	static pressure	9	operating speed
1	approximate surge line	10	minimum operating speed
2	approximate capacity line	11	operating point
3	critical speed	12	normal operating point
4	trip speed	13	specified operating point
5	rated point		
6	maximum continuous speed for variable speed driver (105 % = $100 \times 1,05$)		

NOTE 1 Except where specific numerical relationships are stated, the relative values implied in this figure are assumed values for illustration only.

NOTE 2 The 100 % speed curve is determined from the operating point requiring the highest static pressure (item 13).

NOTE 3 Refer to E.1.1, E.1.2 and E.2.1.2 for information on fan rated point.

NOTE 4 Refer to E.2.7 for information on critical speeds.

NOTE 5 For trip speeds, see the table below.

DRIVER	TRIP SPEED (percent of rated speed)
Steam turbine	
NEMA Class A ^a	115
NEMA Class B, C, D ^a	110
Gas turbine	115
Variable-speed motor	110
Reciprocating engine	110

^a Indicates governor class as specified in NEMA SM 23

Figure E.1 — Fan performance nomenclature

E.2.1.3 The arrangement of the equipment, including ducting and auxiliaries, shall be developed jointly by the purchaser and the heater vendor. The arrangement shall provide adequate clearance areas and safe access for operation, maintenance and removal.

- **E.2.1.4** Motors, electrical components and electrical installations shall be suitable for the area classification (class, group and division) specified by the purchaser and shall meet the requirements of the applicable sections of IEC 60079 or NFPA 70, as well as local codes specified and furnished by the purchaser. API RP 500 provides guidance on area classification.

E.2.1.5 All equipment shall be designed to permit rapid and economical maintenance. Major parts such as fan housing, inlet cone and bearing housings shall be designed (shouldered or dowelled) and manufactured to ensure accurate alignment on reassembly. Field dowelling by others may be required after final alignment.

E.2.1.6 The fan vendor shall formally review and approve or comment on the fan purchaser's inlet and outlet duct and equipment arrangement drawings. This review shall consider structural aspects, such as loading on fan parts, and configuration details that impact fan performance as described in AMCA 801. Foundation drawing review by the fan vendor is not required unless specified by the purchaser.

- **E.2.1.7** Fans, drivers and auxiliary equipment shall be suitable for installation outdoors with no roof unless otherwise specified. The purchaser shall specify the weather and environmental conditions in which the equipment shall operate (including maximum and minimum temperatures and unusual humidity or dust problems). For the purchaser's guidance, the vendor shall list in the proposal any special protection that the purchaser is required to supply before and after installation.

E.2.1.8 Spare parts for the machine and all furnished auxiliaries shall meet all the criteria of this International Standard.

E.2.1.9 The selected operating speed of the fan shall not exceed 1 800 r/min, unless otherwise approved by the purchaser.

E.2.1.10 Fan arrangement and bearing support shall be in accordance with AMCA 801:2001, arrangement 3 or arrangement 7, with the fan impeller located between bearings, the bearings mounted independently of the fan housing on rigid pedestals and sole plates, and the bearings protected from the air or gas stream if any of the following conditions exist:

- a) driver rated power of 112 kW (150 BHP) or greater;
- b) speed greater than 1 800 r/min;
- c) maximum specified operating temperature greater than 235 °C (455 °F);
- d) corrosive or erosive service;
- e) service subject to fouling deposits that could cause rotor unbalance.

For services not subject to the above conditions, AMCA 801:2001, arrangements 1, 8 and 9, all with bearings mounted independent of the fan housing may be used if approved by the purchaser.

For fan selection, it should also be considered that:

- reduced speed is desirable for erosive service and for units subject to fouling deposits on the rotor;
- belt drives should be limited to no more than 75 kW (100 BHP) rated driver size.

If drivers are rated less than 30 kW (40 BHP) and speeds greater than 1 800 r/min, AMCA 801:2001 arrangements other than 3 and 7 may be specified on the data sheet.

E.2.1.11 Fan performance shall be based on fan static pressure rise across the fan inlet and outlet flanges, not including discharge velocity pressure. When specifying required performance, the fan purchaser is responsible for including the effect of inlet velocity pressure. To obtain the static pressure differential, the silencer and inlet losses, including control system losses, shall be added by the fan vendor to the fan purchaser's specified inlet and outlet static pressures.

E.2.1.12 Unless otherwise specified, fans shall have a continuously rising pressure characteristic (pressure versus flow rate plot) from the rated capacity to 60 % or less of rated flow. Performance curves, corrected for the specified gas at the specified conditions, shall be based on performance tests in accordance with AMCA 210, including, where applicable, evase and inlet box(es). Applications that include a variable-frequency drive (VFD) and/or a non-parabolic system resistance curve shall be reviewed in detail to ensure stable operation of the fan over the intended operating range.

E.2.1.13 The fan shall be mechanically designed, as a minimum, for continuous operation at the following temperatures:

- a) 56 °C (100 °F) above the maximum expected inlet temperature to induced-draught fans;
- b) 14 °C (25 °F) above the maximum specified ambient air temperature to forced-draught fans.

E.2.1.14 Fan, components and accessories shall be designed to withstand all loads and stresses during rapid load changes, such as starting, failure of damper operator or sudden position change of dampers. Considerations for driver sizing and starting operations are covered in E.3.2.1 through E.3.2.5.

E.2.1.15 Fan inlets shall be designed as described below.

- a) For forced-draught fans, provision of the inlet equipment and arrangements, including silencer(s) and transition piece(s), shall be coordinated between the fan purchaser and the fan vendor. (Portions may normally be supplied by each.)
- b) Unless otherwise specified, the air intake shall be at least 4,5 m (15 ft) above grade. The purchaser shall evaluate air-intake elevation requirements considering the possibility of dust entering the system and causing surface fouling, the area noise-limitation requirement and the corresponding need for a silencer, the possibility of combustible vapour entering the fan and power penalties for inlet stack and silencer configurations.
- c) The fan inlet equipment shall include intake cap or hood, trash screen, ducting and support, inlet damper or guide vanes, inlet boxes and silencer, as required. All components shipped separately shall be flanged for assembly. The inlet equipment assembly shall be designed for the wind load shown on the fan data sheet.

E.2.2 Fan housing

- **E.2.2.1** The fan scroll and housing sides shall be a continuously welded plate construction. The minimum plate thickness shall be 5 mm (3/16 in) for forced-draught fans and 6 mm (1/4 in) for induced-draught fans. The purchaser shall specify whether a corrosion allowance is required. Stiffeners shall be provided to form a rigid housing free of structural resonance and to limit vibration and noise. The external stiffeners may be intermittently welded to the fan housing. Unstiffened flat surface areas of casing walls shall not exceed 0,37 m² (4,0 ft²).

For fans in arrangements 3 and 7, the housing and inlet box(es) shall be split at a bolted, flanged and gasketed connection to allow assembled rotor removal and installation without disturbing duct connections. Other arrangements shall be similarly split where impeller diameter exceeds 1 070 mm (42 in).

The inlet cone shall be constructed so that it does not impede rotor removal or installation. The cone shall either be split, separately removed as a whole, or be removable in assembly with the rotor.

E.2.2.2 Bolted and gasketed access doors, of the largest possible size up to 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in × 24 in), shall be provided in the scroll and inlet box(es) for access to the fan internals for inspection, cleaning and rotor balancing and to any internal bolting necessary for rotor removal.

E.2.2.3 Adequate flanged sections shall be provided in the fan housing and inlet box(es) so that the rotor can be removed and installed without requiring personnel to enter the inlet box(es).

E.2.3 Fan housing connections

E.2.3.1 Inlet and discharge connections shall be flanged and bolted. Facings, gaskets and bolting of all connections shall prevent leakage.

E.2.3.2 Accessible flanged drain connections, DN 50 (NPS 2) minimum size, shall be provided at the low point(s) of the housing and inlet boxes.

E.2.4 External forces and moments

Fan housings are generally designed for low external forces and moments from the inlet and outlet connections. It shall be the responsibility of the heater vendor to specify on the data sheets the expected external loads to be imposed on the fan housing from the ancillary equipment (that is, ducting, sound trunks, silencers and filters) if this equipment is not supplied by the fan vendor. The fan vendor shall design the housing to accept the specified loads. The following information shall be provided:

- a) maximum allowable external forces and moments;
- b) expansion joint information and recommendations if joints are required for thermal expansion, vibration isolation or both.

E.2.5 Rotating elements

E.2.5.1 Fan impellers shall have a non-overloading horsepower characteristic and shall be designed for the highest possible efficiency. Backward-curved/backward-inclined blades are permitted in the constructions detailed in a), b) and c) below.

Design and configurations available as options include:

- a) hollow airfoil construction of 2,5 mm (0,10 in) minimum skin-thickness material designed and constructed to prevent the internal accumulation of condensables, foulants or corrosion products,
- b) solid blades with airfoil shape,
- c) non-airfoil shape of minimum single thickness 6 mm (1/4 in).

- **E.2.5.2** Induced-draught fan design shall consider operations in a possible dirty-gas environment. Blade design shall be specified by the purchaser. Radial and radial-tipped configurations are considered non-fouling designs and have lower inherent efficiencies.

E.2.5.3 The impeller shall be of welded construction. Shrouds, backplates and centre plates shall normally be of one-piece construction. They may be fabricated if the sections are joined by full-penetration butt welds meeting the examination requirements of E.4.1. Fan-wheel materials shall be suitable for operation with the gas specified on the data sheet, considering corrosion, erosion and temperature, including the maximum allowable temperature. The vendor shall state whether post-weld heat treatment of the fabricated wheel is required, after consideration of environmental and mechanical (residual stress) effects.

E.2.5.4 Gas temperature-change rates, heating and cooling, in excess of 8 °C (15 °F) per minute may be expected on induced-draught fans. Fan vendors shall specify the maximum allowable rate of change to ensure that an adequate hub-to-shaft interference fit is maintained.

E.2.5.5 Impellers shall have solid hubs, be keyed to the shaft and be secured with an interference fit. Unkeyed fits with appropriate interference are permissible with purchaser's approval. Cast or ductile iron hubs are acceptable below a mechanical design temperature of 150 °C (300 °F). If the impeller is to be bolted to the hub, the manufacturer's design shall preclude relative movement between the impeller and hub.

E.2.5.6 Shafts shall be of one piece, heat-treated, forged steel. Shafts 150 mm (6 in) in diameter and smaller may be machined from hot-rolled steel. For arrangements 3 and 7, shaft diameters shall be stepped on both sides of the impeller-fit area to facilitate impeller assembly and removal. Fillets shall be provided at all changes in shaft diameters and in keyways. Keyways shall have fillet radii in accordance with ASME B 17.1. Welding on the shaft is not permitted. For fans operating above 120 °C (250 °F), shafts shall be rough-machined to within 6 mm (1/4 in) of final dimensions and stress relieved before final machining.

E.2.5.7 Shafts shall be capable of handling 110 % of rated driver torque from rest to rated speed.

- **E.2.5.8** If specified by the purchaser, induced-draught fans shall be provided with corrosion-resistant shaft sleeves to reduce the effect of dew-point corrosion at shaft seals. Sleeves shall extend 150 mm (6 in) into the fan housing.

E.2.6 Shaft sealing of fans

E.2.6.1 Shaft seals shall be provided to minimize leakage from or into fans over the range of specified operating conditions and during idle periods. Seal operation shall be suitable for variations in inlet conditions that may prevail during start-up and shutdown or any special operation specified by the purchaser.

E.2.6.2 Shaft seals shall be replaceable from the outside of the inlet box(es) without disturbing the shaft or bearings.

E.2.7 Critical speeds/resonance

E.2.7.1 Unless otherwise specified, the separation margin of critical speeds from all lateral (including rigid and bending) modes shall be at least 25 % over the maximum continuous speed. The separation margin is intended to prevent the overlapping of the resonance response envelope into the operating speed range.

NOTE The term "critical speed" used herein considers the factors defined by "design resonant speed" in AMCA 801.

E.2.7.2 Resonances of support systems within the vendor's scope of supply shall not occur within the specified operating speed range or the specified separation margins, unless the resonances are critically damped.

E.2.7.3 Bearing housing resonance shall not occur within the specified operating speed range or specified separation margins.

- **E.2.7.4** If specified by the purchaser, critical speeds shall be determined analytically by means of a damped, unbalanced rotor-response analysis and, if specified by the purchaser, this shall be confirmed by test-stand data.

E.2.7.5 The vendor who has unit responsibility shall determine that the drive-train critical speeds are compatible with the critical speeds of the machinery being supplied, and that the combination is suitable for the specified range of operating speed. A list of all undesirable speeds, from zero to trip, shall be submitted to the purchaser for his review and included in the instruction manual for his guidance.

E.2.7.6 For fixed speed fans, a minimum margin of ± 10 % shall be provided between operating speed and drive-train torsional resonances. For variable speed fans, a list of all undesirable speeds from zero to trip shall be submitted.

E.2.8 Vibration and balancing

E.2.8.1 The complete fan rotating assembly, with the coupling, shall be dynamically balanced. The residual unbalance shall not exceed the values in ISO 1940-1:2003, balancing grade G2.5.

E.2.8.2 Prior to rotor assembly, the shaft shall be inspected for mechanical runout and concentricity at the impeller mounting-surface seat and bearing journals. Runout shall not exceed the total indicator reading specified in Table E.1.

Table E.1 — Maximum shaft runout indicator readings

Dimensions in millimetres (inches)

Shaft diameter	Total indicator reading	
	Bearing-journal area	Wheel-mounting area
< 150 (< 6)	0,025 (0,001)	0,050 (0,002)
150 (6) to 355 (14)	0,038 (0,001 5)	0,075 (0,003)
> 355 (> 14)	0,050 (0,002)	0,100 (0,004)

- **E.2.8.3** If specified by the purchaser, a mechanical running test shall be performed at the fan vendor's shop (see E.4.2.2). During the shop test of the assembled machine operating at maximum continuous speed or at any other speed within the specified operating range, the maximum allowable unfiltered peak vibration velocity, measured on the bearing housing in any plane, shall not exceed 5 mm/s (0,2 in/s) or 2,5 mm/s (0,1 in/s) at running frequency. At the trip speed of the driver, the vibration shall not exceed 6 mm/s (0,25 in/s) unfiltered velocity.

E.2.9 Bearings and bearing housings

E.2.9.1 Bearing types shall be either antifriction or hydrodynamic (sleeve). Unless otherwise specified, fans rated at 112 kW (150 BHP) or greater shall have horizontally split, self-aligning hydrodynamic bearings.

E.2.9.2 Antifriction bearings shall be self-aligning and the selection shall be based on the following ratings:

- DN factor less than 200 000 (the DN factor is the product of bearing bore, expressed in millimetres, and the rated speed, expressed in revolutions per minute);
- L-10 life factor (as defined in ABMA Standard 9) of 100 000 h or greater (the rating life is the number of hours at rated bearing load and speed that 90 % of the group of identical bearings will complete or exceed before the first evidence of failure);
- load factor less than 2 013 400 (load factor is the product of rated power, expressed in kilowatts, and rated speed, expressed in revolutions per minute).

"Maximum load" (filling slot) antifriction bearings shall not be used for any service, including drivers (motors, turbines and gears).

E.2.9.3 Thrust bearings shall be sized for continuous operation under all specified conditions, including double-inlet fans operating with one inlet cone 100 % blocked. As a guide, thrust bearings shall be applied at no more than 50 % of the bearing manufacturer's ultimate load rating.

E.2.9.4 Shaft bearings shall be accessible without dismantling ductwork or fan casing. Overhung impeller designs shall have provisions for supporting the rotor during bearing maintenance.

E.2.9.5 All induced-draught fans shall be supplied with a heat slinger (with safety guards), located between the fan housing and/or inlet box(es) and the adjacent bearing(s).

E.2.9.6 Sufficient cooling, including an allowance for fouling, shall be provided to maintain the oil temperature below 70 °C (160 °F) for pressurized systems and below 82 °C (180 °F) for ring-oiled or splash systems, based on the specified operating conditions and an ambient temperature of 43 °C (110 °F). If cooling coils (including fittings) are used, they shall be of nonferrous material and shall have no internal pressure joints or fittings. Coils shall have a thickness of at least 1,07 mm (19 BWG or 0,042 in) and shall be at least 12,5 mm (0,50 in) in diameter.

E.2.9.7 Bearing housings shall be drilled with pilot holes for use in final dowelling.

E.2.10 Lubrication

E.2.10.1 Unless otherwise specified, bearings and bearing housings shall be arranged for hydrocarbon oil lubrication in accordance with the bearing manufacturer's recommendations. Grease-packed antifriction bearings shall not be provided without purchaser's approval.

E.2.10.2 On dampers and variable inlet vanes, all linkage, shaft fittings and bearings shall be permanently lubricated. Components requiring periodic lubrication shall be furnished with lubrication fittings that are accessible while the fan is in operation.

E.2.10.3 If a forced-feed oil system is required, the scope shall be agreed between the purchaser and the vendor.

E.2.10.4 Transparent oil containers shall be of the glass type.

E.2.11 Materials

E.2.11.1 General

E.2.11.1.1 Construction materials shall be the manufacturer's standard for the specified operating conditions, except as required by the purchaser.

- **E.2.11.1.2** The purchaser shall specify if there are any corrosive agents present in the flue gas and in the environment, including constituents that can cause stress-corrosion cracking. The fan vendor shall select materials that are suitable for mechanical design and fabrication (see E.2.5.3).

E.2.11.1.3 Where mating parts such as studs and nuts of AISI Type 300 stainless steel or materials with similar galling tendencies are used, they shall be lubricated with an anti-seizure compound rated for the specified temperatures.

E.2.11.1.4 Low-carbon steels can be notch-sensitive and susceptible to brittle fracture at ambient or low temperatures. Therefore, only fully killed, normalized steels made to fine-grain practice are acceptable. ASTM A 515/A 15M [17] steel shall not be used.

E.2.11.1.5 Internal bolting shall be at least equivalent to the fan construction material.

E.2.11.2 Welding

E.2.11.2.1 All welding, including weld repairs, shall be performed by operators and procedures qualified in accordance with AWS D 14.6 for rotor welds and AWS D 1.1 for housings and inlet boxes.

E.2.11.2.2 The vendor shall be responsible for the review of all welding, including weld repair, to ensure that the inspection and quality control requirements of AWS D 14.6 have been satisfied.

E.2.11.2.3 All rotor-component butt welds shall be continuous full-penetration welds.

E.2.11.2.4 Intermittent welds, stitch welds or tack welds are not permitted on any part of the fan or accessories furnished by the vendor, except as noted in E.2.2.1 and E.3.4.3.5. Such welds used for parts positioning during assembly shall be removed.

E.2.11.3 Low temperature

- For operating temperatures below – 29 °C (– 20 °F) or, if specified by the purchaser, for other low ambient temperatures, steels shall have, at the lowest specified temperature, an impact strength sufficient to qualify under the minimum Charpy V-notch impact energy requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1, UG-84. For materials and thicknesses not covered by the Code, the purchaser shall specify the requirements on the data sheet.

E.2.12 Nameplates and rotation arrows

E.2.12.1 A nameplate shall be securely attached at an easily accessible point on the equipment and on any other major piece of auxiliary equipment.

E.2.12.2 The rated conditions and other data shall be clearly stamped on the nameplate and shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a) vendor;
- b) year of manufacture;
- c) model number;
- d) serial number;
- e) size;
- f) type;
- g) purchaser's equipment item number (may be listed on separate nameplate if space is insufficient);
- h) actual flow rate, in cubic metres per minute (cubic feet per minute);
- i) static pressure differential, in mm H₂O (in H₂O);
- j) temperature, inlet, in °C (°F);
- k) revolutions per minute, rated;
- l) revolutions per minute, maximum allowable (at maximum allowable temperature);
- m) first critical speed;
- n) kilowatts (BHP) (rated);
- o) centrifugal force, ω^2 , rated;
- p) rotor mass, in kilograms (pounds);
- q) design operating altitude, in metres (feet) above sea level.

The contract or data sheets shall specify SI, USC or other units.

E.2.12.3 Rotation arrows shall be cast in or attached to each major item of rotating equipment.

E.2.12.4 Nameplates and rotation arrows (if attached) shall be of AISI Type 300 stainless steel or of nickel-copper alloy (Monel⁹ or its equivalent). Attachment pins shall be of the same material. Welding is not permitted.

⁹ Monel is an example of a suitable product available commercially. This information is given for the convenience of users of this part of ISO 13705 and does not constitute an endorsement by ISO of this product.

E.3 Accessories

E.3.1 General

- The purchaser shall specify those accessories to be supplied by the fan vendor.

E.3.2 Drivers

- **E.3.2.1** The type of driver shall be specified by the purchaser. The driver shall be sized to meet the fan rated point conditions, including external gear and/or coupling losses and off-power drag of the start-up motor (if any), and shall be in accordance with applicable specifications, as stated in the enquiry and order. The driver shall be sized and designed for satisfactory operation under the utility and site conditions specified by the purchaser.
- **E.3.2.2** Anticipated process variations that can affect the sizing of the driver (such as changes in the pressure, temperature or properties of the fluid handled, as well as special plant start-up conditions) shall be specified by the purchaser.

E.3.2.3 Forced-draught fan-driver sizing shall consider fan performance at minimum ambient temperature.

E.3.2.4 Induced-draught fan-driver sizing shall consider possible variations in operating temperature and gas density (for example a cold start).

Provisions for flow control, through dampering or speed variation, allows for start-up and operation to be at a lower-than-normal process operating temperature. With these features, the need for greater driver size to handle low temperatures can be avoided. Operating instructions shall cover the use of dampers or speed control for such cases, particularly at startup.

E.3.2.5 The starting conditions for the driven equipment shall be specified by the purchaser, and the starting method shall be mutually agreed upon by the purchaser and the fan vendor. The driver's starting-torque capabilities shall exceed the speed-torque requirements of the driven equipment. The fan vendor shall verify that the starting characteristics of the fan and driver are compatible.

E.3.2.6 Unless otherwise specified, motor-driven fans shall be direct-connected.

E.3.2.7 For motor-driven units, the motor nameplate rating (exclusive of the service factor) shall be at least 110 % of the greatest power required (including gear and coupling losses) for any of the specified operating conditions.

E.3.2.8 Full load and starting current, system centrifugal force and curves showing motor speed-torque, speed-current and speed-power factors shall be provided for each fan drive.

E.3.2.9 Motor drivers shall be capable of starting the fan, with the control damper in the minimum position, with 80 % of the design voltage applied.

E.3.2.10 Service factors for the driver shall be in accordance with Table E.2.

Table E.2 — Service factors

Power	Service factor		
	Turbine	1,00 motor	1,15 motor
≤ 19 kW (25 hp)	1,10	1,25	1,14
> 19 kW (25 hp), ≤ 56 kW (75 hp)	1,10	1,15	1,05
> 56 kW (75 hp)	1,10	1,10	1,0

E.3.3 Couplings and guards

E.3.3.1 Flexible couplings and guards between drivers and fans shall be supplied by the fan vendor, unless otherwise specified on the data sheets.

E.3.3.2 Unless otherwise specified, all couplings shall be spacers with the spacer length sufficient to allow removal of the coupling hubs and allow maintenance of adjacent bearings and seals without removal of the shaft or disturbing the equipment alignment.

E.3.3.3 Each coupling shall have a coupling guard that sufficiently encloses the coupling and shafts to prevent any personnel access to the danger zone during operation of the equipment train. The guard shall be readily removable for inspection and maintenance of the coupling without disturbing the coupled machines.

E.3.4 Controls and instrumentation

E.3.4.1 General

E.3.4.1.1 Unless otherwise specified, controls and instrumentation shall be designed for outdoor installation.

- **E.3.4.1.2** The fan vendor shall provide fan performance data (in accordance with Clause E.5) to enable the purchaser to properly design a control system for start-up and for all specified operating conditions. If specified by the purchaser, the fan vendor shall review the purchaser's overall fan control system for compatibility with fan-vendor-furnished control equipment (see E.3.2.5).

E.3.4.2 Control systems

- **E.3.4.2.1** The fan may be controlled on the basis of inlet pressure, discharge pressure, flow rate or some combination of these parameters. This may be accomplished by suction or discharge throttling or speed variation. The purchaser shall specify the type and source of the control signal, its sensitivity and range and the equipment scope to be furnished by the vendor.

E.3.4.2.2 For constant-speed drive, the control signal shall actuate an operator that positions the inlet or outlet damper.

E.3.4.2.3 For a variable-speed drive, the control signal shall act to adjust the set point of the driver's speed-control system. Unless otherwise specified, the control range shall be from the maximum continuous speed to 95 % of the minimum speed required for any specified operating case, or 70 % of the maximum continuous speed, whichever is lower.

E.3.4.2.4 The full range of the purchaser's specified control signal shall correspond to the required operating range of the driven equipment. Unless otherwise specified, the maximum control signal shall correspond to the maximum continuous speed or the maximum flow rate.

E.3.4.2.5 Unless otherwise specified, facilities shall be provided to automatically open or close (as specified) the dampers or variable-inlet vanes on loss of control signal and to automatically lock or brake the dampers or vanes in their last position on loss of motive force (such as air supply or electric power). This is a specific system consideration and the associated controls shall be arranged to avoid creating hazardous or other undesirable conditions.

E.3.4.2.6 Unless otherwise specified, the fan vendor shall furnish and locate the operators, actuator linkages and operating shafts for remote control of the dampers or variable-inlet vanes. Operator output shall be adequate for the complete range of damper or variable-inlet vane positions. The proposed location of operator linkages and shafts shall be reviewed with the purchaser for consideration of maintenance access and safety.

E.3.4.2.7 External position indicators shall be provided for all dampers or variable-inlet vanes.

E.3.4.2.8 Unless otherwise specified, pneumatic activators shall be mechanically suitable for an air gauge pressure of 860 kPa (125 psi) and shall provide the required output with an air gauge pressure as low as 410 kPa (60 psi).

E.3.4.3 Dampers or variable-inlet vanes

- **E.3.4.3.1** Frames for inlet dampers (unless integral with the inlet box) and outlet dampers shall be flanged and drilled airtight steel frames for tight-fitting bolting to the fan or ductwork. Dampers shall have either parallel or opposed blades, as specified by the purchaser for the required control. Damper blades shall be supported continuously by the shafts. No stub shafts are allowed. Damper shafts shall be sealed or packed to limit leakage, except for atmospheric air inlet dampers.
- **E.3.4.3.2** If specified by the purchaser, the fan vendor shall state the maximum expected leakage through the closed dampers or vanes, at the operating temperature and pressure specified by the purchaser. The stated leakage shall correspond to pressure and temperature differentials expected with the fan operating.

E.3.4.3.3 Unless otherwise specified, the damper or variable-inlet vane mechanisms shall be interconnected to a single operator. The operating mechanism shall be designed so that the dampers or variable-inlet vanes can be manually secured in any position.

E.3.4.3.4 Variable-inlet-vane operating mechanisms shall be located outside the gas stream. The mechanism shall be readily accessible for in-place inspection and maintenance and be of bolted attachment construction to permit removal if necessary. Provision shall be furnished for lubrication of the mechanism during operation.

E.3.4.3.5 Variable-inlet vanes shall be continuously welded to the spindle or intermittently welded on the back side of the blade with full slot welds along the full length of the front side.

E.3.5 Piping and appurtenances

E.3.5.1 Inlet trash screens

Inlet trash screen(s) to prevent entry of debris shall be provided for forced-draught fans handling atmospheric air. This screen shall be fabricated from wire of minimum diameter 3 mm (1/8 in), with a mesh of 38 mm (1,5 in) nominal opening. The screen shall be suitably supported by cross-members. Rain hood(s) shall be provided on vertical inlets. Screen supports and rain hoods shall be of galvanized carbon steel or coated in accordance with E.3.6.1.1. Trash screens shall be of 300 series stainless steel.

E.3.5.2 Silencers and inlet ducts

E.3.5.2.1 The differential pressure across each inlet or exhaust silencer shall not exceed 20 mm (0,8 in) of water column.

E.3.5.2.2 Silencers shall be designed to prevent internal damage from acoustic or mechanical resonances.

E.3.5.2.3 Mineral-wool fibre insulation shall not be used in silencer construction.

- **E.3.5.2.4** Carbon steel construction shall be of 5 mm (3/16 in) minimum-thickness plate. Corrosion allowance and alternative material, if required, shall be specified by the purchaser.

E.3.5.2.5 Main-inlet duct and silencer connections shall be flanged.

E.3.6 Coatings, insulations and jacketing

E.3.6.1 Coatings

E.3.6.1.1 Unless otherwise specified, if constructed of carbon steel, low-alloy steel or cast iron, the following areas shall be cleaned in accordance with ISO 8501-1, grade 21/2, and then painted with a 75 µm (0,003 in) dry-film thickness of inorganic zinc:

- a) internal surfaces of forced-draught fan intake ducts and accessories, fan housing and internals;
- b) internal surfaces of induced-draught fan housing, inlet box(es), discharge connection and accessories;
- c) external, non-machined surfaces of all bearing pedestals and bearing housings, fan housings, inlet and discharge connections and accessories on both insulated and uninsulated units. Apply after all external shop-weldments are complete.

E.3.6.1.2 Coatings shall be selected to resist deterioration and fume generation at the maximum specified inlet gas temperature.

E.3.6.2 Insulation and jacketing

E.3.6.2.1 Insulation clips or studs shall be shop-welded on all fan housings, inlet boxes and discharge connections where normal operating temperature is 83 °C (180 °F) or higher, or if acoustic insulation of fans is required. Unless otherwise specified, the clips or studs shall be designed and installed for a minimum insulation thickness of 50 mm (2 in).

- **E.3.6.2.2** The insulation shall maintain a maximum jacket-surface temperature of 83 °C (180 °F) at zero wind and 27 °C (80 °F) ambient conditions. The purchaser shall specify the type of insulation and jacketing. This material may be supplied and field-installed by other than the fan vendor, unless otherwise specified.

E.4 Examination, testing and preparation for shipment

E.4.1 Examination

E.4.1.1 Material examination

- If radiographic, ultrasonic, magnetic-particle or liquid-penetrant examination of welds, cast steel and wrought materials is specified by the purchaser, the criteria in E.4.1.2 through E.4.1.5 shall apply, unless other criteria are specified by the purchaser. Cast iron may be inspected in accordance with E.4.1.4 and E.4.1.5. Refer to E.2.11.1.2.

E.4.1.2 Radiography

The method and acceptance criteria for radiography shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.

E.4.1.3 Ultrasonic examination

The method and acceptance criteria for ultrasonic examination shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.

E.4.1.4 Magnetic-particle examination

The method and acceptance criteria for magnetic-particle examination shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.

E.4.1.5 Liquid-penetrant examination

The method and acceptance criteria for liquid-penetrant examination shall be in accordance with the pressure design code.

E.4.1.6 Mechanical inspection

- a) If specified by the purchaser, centrifugal fans shall be shop-assembled prior to shipment. Drivers (if provided) and other auxiliaries shall be included in the shop assembly as specified. The purchaser shall be notified prior to completion of shop assembly to permit inspection prior to disassembly (if required) and shipment. If disassembly is required for shipment, all mating parts shall be suitably match-marked and tagged for field assembly. All equipment shall be furnished completely assembled to the maximum extent, limited only by the requirements of shipping.
- b) During assembly of the system and before testing, each component (including cast-in passages of these components) and all piping and appurtenances shall be cleaned to remove foreign materials, corrosion products and mill scale.
- c) If specified by the purchaser, the hardness of parts and heat-affected zones shall be verified by testing as being within the allowable values. The method, extent, documentation and witnessing of the testing shall be mutually agreed upon by the purchaser and the vendor.

E.4.2 Testing**E.4.2.1 General**

- If specified by the purchaser, the centrifugal fan equipment shall be tested; the minimum test requirements shall be as listed in E.4.2.2. Additional requirements for a shop or field test shall be provided by the purchaser. AMCA 210, AMCA 203, AMCA 802 and AMCA 803 may be used as the basis for testing.

Many fan manufacturers do not have the capability to perform shop mechanical-run tests except on the smaller units. The need for a shop test, along with the capability of vendors to perform the test, should be carefully considered before imposing such a requirement.

At least six weeks before the first scheduled test, the fan vendor shall submit to the purchaser, for his review and comment, detailed procedures for all running tests, including acceptance criteria for all monitored parameters.

The fan vendor shall notify the purchaser not less than five working days before the date the equipment will be ready for testing. All equipment required for specified tests shall be provided by the fan vendor.

Acceptance of shop tests does not constitute a waiver of requirements to meet field performance, under specified operating conditions, nor does the purchaser's inspection relieve the vendor of any required responsibilities.

E.4.2.2 Mechanical running test

If other test details are not specified, the testing shall include the following as a minimum.

- a) The fan shall be operated from 0 % to 115 % of design speed for turbine drives and at 100 % or rated speed for single-speed drives. For fans with variable-speed drives, the fan rotor shall be subjected to an overspeed test of at least 110 % of maximum continuous speed for 5 min. Operation at rated speed shall be for an uninterrupted period of 2 h, with stabilized bearing temperatures, to check bearing performance and vibration.
- b) Following any overspeed test, each impellor shall be examined for cracks (using the liquid penetrant method) and for deformation or other defects. After this examination, fan rotors shall be dynamically rebalanced.

- c) Operation and function of fan instrumentation and controls shall be demonstrated to the extent practical.
- d) The vendor shall maintain a record of all final tests, including vibration and bearing-oil temperature data. Vibration measurements shall be recorded throughout the specified speed range.
- e) Bearings shall be removed, inspected and, if required, reassembled in the fan after completion of a satisfactory mechanical run test.
- f) All oil pressures, viscosities and temperatures shall be within the range of operating values recommended in the vendor's operating instructions for the specified unit being tested. Oil flow rates for each bearing housing shall be determined.

All bearings shall be pre-lubricated.

E.4.2.3 Analysis of rotor response

- If specified by the purchaser, the rotor-response analysis defined in E.2.7.4 shall be confirmed on the test stand.

E.4.3 Preparation for shipment

- **E.4.3.1** Equipment shall be suitably prepared for the type of shipment specified, including blocking of the rotor if necessary. If specified by the purchaser, the equipment shall be prepared so that it is suitable for six months of outdoor storage from the time of shipment. If storage for a longer period is contemplated, the vendor shall provide recommended protection procedures.
- **E.4.3.2** Preparation for shipment shall be made after all testing and inspection of the equipment has been accomplished and the equipment has been approved by the purchaser. The shipping preparations shall be specified by the purchaser.

E.5 Vendor's data

E.5.1 Data required with proposals

The following data are required with the vendor's proposals:

- a) copies of the purchaser's data sheets with vendor's complete fan information entered thereon;
- b) utility requirements, including lubricant;
- c) net and maximum operating and erection masses and maximum normal maintenance masses, with item identification;
- d) typical drawings and literature to fully describe offering details;
- e) preliminary performance curves as described in E.5.2.1.

E.5.2 Data required after contract

E.5.2.1 The fan vendor shall provide complete performance curves to encompass the map of operations, with any limitations indicated thereon. The fan vendor shall provide, as a minimum, fan static pressure/capacity and horsepower/capacity curves for 100 %, 80 %, 60 %, 40 % and 20 % damper position settings; and fan static efficiency/capacity curves. If gas-temperature variations are specified, separate curves shall be provided for maximum, minimum and normal operating temperatures.

E.5.2.2 For variable-speed fan systems, the performance curves shall illustrate the degree of speed control necessary to attain rated, normal and 50 % of normal flow rates. If additional turndown is specified, an illustrative curve shall be provided.

E.5.2.3 The curves for damped and variable-speed systems shall contain a system-resistance curve to illustrate the degree of control necessary to attain each operating point and shall correspond to the geometry of equipment as installed.

E.5.2.4 Fan static-efficiency-versus-speed curves for variable-speed fan systems (including fan and drivers), within the vendor's scope of supply, shall be provided.

E.5.2.5 Unless otherwise specified, the fan vendor shall provide fan and drive moment of inertia. For each motor-driven fan under full-voltage across-the-line starting conditions, the fan vendor shall provide

- a) full load and starting currents,
- b) curves for motor speed versus torque, versus current and versus power factor,
- c) fan and drive static and dynamic loads,
- d) allowable number of cold starts, hot restarts, or both, per hour, and any at-rest period required,
- e) curve of system acceleration time versus current,
- f) recommended acceleration or deceleration rate for the variable-frequency controller for each motor-driven fan under controlled-frequency starting conditions,
- g) preliminary outline and arrangement drawings and schematic diagrams,
- h) start-up, shutdown or operating restrictions recommended to protect equipment,
- i) spare-parts recommendations, including drawings, part numbers and materials,
- j) list of special tools included or required,
- k) shaft-seal details,
- l) certified drawings, including outline and arrangement drawings and schematic diagrams,
- m) shaft coupling details,
- n) data on cold-alignment setting and expected thermal growth,
- o) details of damper linkages and control systems, including torque or power requirements,
- p) completed as-built data sheets,
- q) parts lists for all equipment supplied,
- r) instruction manuals covering installation, final tests and checks, start-up, shutdown, operating limits and recommended operating and maintenance procedures.

Annex F (normative)

Air preheat systems for fired process heaters

F.1 Scope

This annex specifies requirements and gives guidelines for the design, selection and evaluation of air preheat (APH) systems applied to fired process heaters for general refinery and process industry service. The primary concepts covered within this annex are the following:

- a) application considerations (F.2);
- b) design considerations (F.3);
- c) selection guidelines (F.4);
- d) safety, operations and maintenance considerations (F.5);
- e) exchanger-performance guidelines (F.6);
- f) fan performance guidelines (F.7);
- g) ductwork design and analysis (F.8);
- h) major component design guidelines (F.9);
- i) environmental impact (F.10);
- j) preparing an enquiry (F.11);
- k) flue gas dew point (F.12).

Details of the fired-heater design are considered only where they interact with the air-preheat-system design. The air preheat concepts and systems discussed herein are those currently in common use in the industry and it is not intended to imply that other concepts and systems are not acceptable or recommended. Many of the individual features dealt with in this annex are applicable to any type of air preheat system.

F.2 General factors in selecting an air preheat system

F.2.1 Factors affecting system applications

F.2.1.1 General

It is necessary to consider a number of general factors in the application of an APH system. Those general application factors are discussed in Clause F.2. Additionally, Clause F.3 and Clause F.4 provide design considerations and selection guidelines, respectively, for APH systems.

An APH system is usually applied to a fired heater to increase the heater's efficiency, and the economics of air preheating should be compared with other forms of flue gas heat recovery such as steam generation or economizer coils in the convection section. APH systems become more profitable with increasing fuel costs, with increasing process inlet temperature (i.e. higher stack flue gas temperature), and with increasing fired duty. An APH-system economic analysis should account for the system's capital costs, operating costs, maintenance costs, fuel savings and the value (if any) of increased capacity. In the case of a system retrofit, the economic analysis should also include the cost of incremental heater downtime for the APH system installation.

F.2.1.2 Operational considerations of APH systems

In addition to economics, an APH system's impact on a heater's operations and maintenance should also be considered. Compared to a natural-draught system, an air preheat system may provide the following operational advantages:

- a) reduced fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions for a given process duty;
- b) improved control of combustion air flow;
- c) reduced oil-burner fouling and particulates;
- d) better control of flame patterns;
- e) more complete combustion of difficult fuels.

In some cases, an APH system can increase the fired-heater capacity or duty. For example, when a fired heater's operation is limited by a large flame envelope or poor flame shape (flame impingement on tubes) or by inadequate draught (flue gas removal limitations), the addition of an air preheat system can increase the heater's capacity.

F.2.1.3 Additional factors for consideration for new or retrofit APH systems

In contrast to the advantages noted in F.2.1.1 and F.2.1.2, heaters retrofitted with APH systems typically have the following operational considerations (compared with natural-draught heaters):

- a) increased radiant-section operating temperatures (coil, process film, coil supports, refractory, etc.);
- b) potential change in NO_x production (new burners may mitigate increased NO_x resulting from higher flame temperatures);
- c) increased risk of corrosion of flue-gas wetted components (APH exchanger and downstream components);
- d) increased maintenance requirements for mechanical equipment;
- e) increased potential for acid-mist stack plume (if fuel sulfur content is high);
- f) potential change in stack gas effluent velocity and dispersion;
- g) cost of running fans.

In all applications, the use of an APH system increases both the heater's firebox temperatures and radiant flux rate(s). Because of the hotter radiant-section operating conditions, a thorough review of the heater's mechanical and process design under APH operations should be performed on all retrofit applications. The hotter firebox temperatures can result in overheated tubes, tube supports, guides and/or unacceptably high process-film temperatures.

F.2.2 Types of APH systems

F.2.2.1 General

To fully define an APH system type, it is common to use both of the following classifications: fluid-flow design and heat transfer scheme. There are several types of APH systems. The most common are defined below.

F.2.2.2 System types classified by fluid-flow design

Based on the combustion air and flue gas flow through the system, the three APH system types are as follows.

a) Balanced-draught APH system

This is the most common type. It has both a forced-draught (FD) fan and an induced-draught (ID) fan. The overall system is balanced because the combustion air charge, provided by the forced-draught fan, is balanced by the flue gas removal of the induced-draught fan. In most applications, the FD fan is controlled by a “duty controller”, which is reset by the heater's oxygen analyser, and the ID fan is controlled by an arch-pressure controller.

b) Forced-draught APH system

This is a simpler system, having only an FD fan to provide the heater's combustion air requirements. All flue gases are removed by stack draught. Because of the low draught generation capabilities of a stack containing low temperature flue gases, it is necessary to keep the exchanger's flue gas-side pressure drop very low, thus increasing the size and cost of the preheater (i.e. the APH exchanger).

c) Induced-draught APH system

The ID system has only an ID fan to remove flue gases from the heater and maintain the appropriate system draught. Combustion air flow is induced by the sub-atmospheric pressure of the heater. In this system, it is necessary to carefully design the preheater to minimize the combustion air-side pressure drop while providing the necessary heat transfer.

F.2.2.3 System types classified by heat transfer scheme

Based on the preheater design, the three most common system types are as follows.

a) Direct APH systems

This is the most common type, using regenerative, recuperative or heat pipe preheaters (exchangers) to transfer heat directly from the outgoing flue gas to the incoming combustion air. Refer to F.2.3 for an overview of the most common direct-preheater types. Even though most direct systems are balanced-draught designs, forced-draught and induced-draught systems can be used and have their own unique advantages and disadvantages, as summarized in F.4. Figure F.1 illustrates a typical balanced-draught direct APH system.

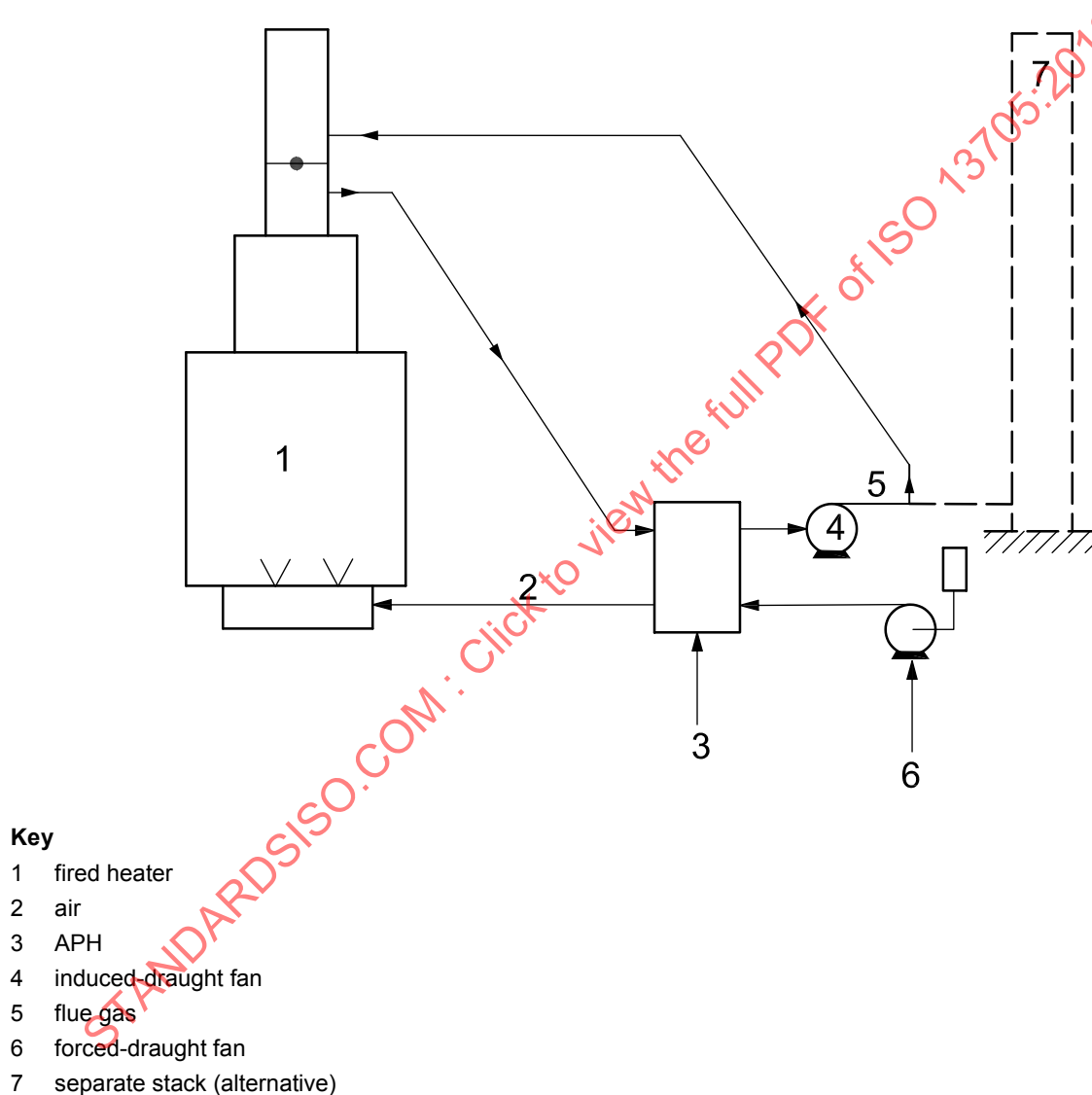
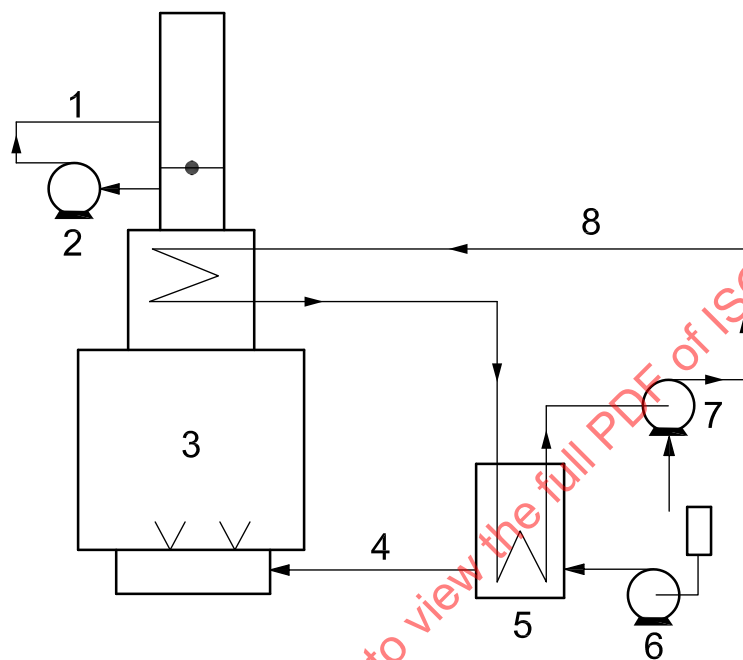


Figure F.1 — Balanced-draught APH system with direct exchanger

b) Indirect APH systems

These are less common and use two gas/liquid exchangers and an intermediate working fluid to absorb heat from the outgoing flue gas and then release the heat to the incoming combustion air. Thus, this APH system requires a working fluid circulation loop to perform the task of a single direct exchanger. The vast majority of indirect systems are forced-circulation (i.e. the fluid is circulated by pumps); a natural circulation, or thermosiphon, flow can be established if the working fluid is partially vaporized in the hot exchanger.

A typical balanced-draught, indirect APH system is illustrated in Figure F.2.

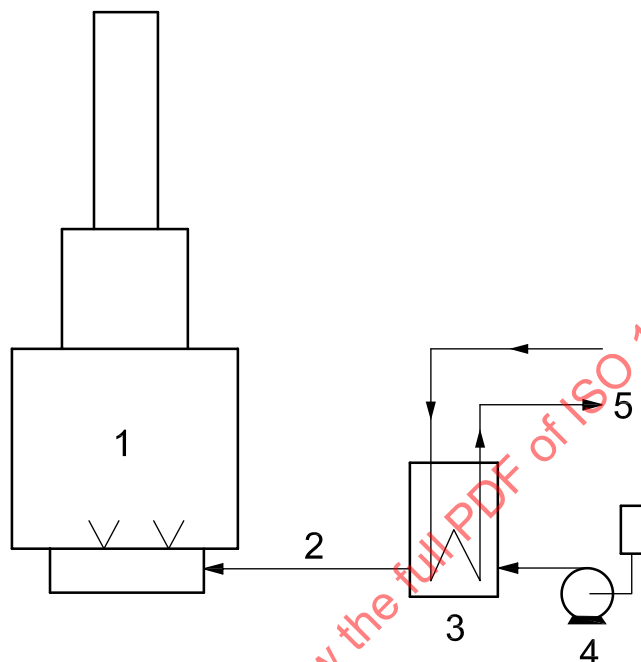
**Key**

- 1 flue gas
- 2 induced-draught fan
- 3 fired heater
- 4 air
- 5 APH
- 6 forced-draught fan
- 7 heat medium circulation pump
- 8 heat medium

Figure F.2 — Balanced-draught APH system with indirect exchangers

c) External heat source systems

These use an external heat source (e.g. low-pressure steam) to heat the combustion air without cooling the flue gas. This type of system is usually used to temper very cold combustion air, thus minimizing cold-end corrosion in downstream gas/air exchangers. A typical forced-draught, external-heat-source APH system is illustrated in Figure F.3.

**Key**

- 1 fired heater
- 2 air
- 3 APH
- 4 forced-draught fan
- 5 process or utility stream

Figure F.3 — Forced-draught APH system with external-heat-source exchanger

F.2.3 Descriptions of the most common APH exchangers

F.2.3.1 Direct APHs

F.2.3.1.1 Regenerative APHs

A regenerative APH contains a matrix of metal or refractory elements that transfer heat from the hot flue gas stream to the cold combustion air stream. For fired process heater applications, the commonly used regenerative APH has the heat absorbing elements housed in a rotating wheel. The elements are alternately heated in the outgoing flue gas and cooled in the incoming combustion air.

F.2.3.1.2 Recuperative APHs

This is the most common type of APH. A recuperative APH has separate passages for the flue gas and the air, and heat flows from the hot flue gas stream, through the preheater-passagewall and into the cold combustion air stream. The configuration is typically in the form of a tubular or plate heat exchanger in which the passages are formed by tubes, plates or a combination of tubes and plates, assembled together in a casing.

F.2.3.1.3 Heat-pipe APHs

A heat-pipe APH consists of a number of sealed pipes containing a heat transfer fluid, which vaporizes in the hot ends of the tubes (in the flue gas stream) and condenses in the cold ends of the tubes (in the air stream), thus transferring heat from the hot flue gas stream to the cold combustion air stream.

F.2.3.2 External-heat-source APHs

External-heat-source preheaters (exchangers) use a flow of utility or process fluid to heat incoming combustion air. The common steam-condensing preheat exchanger has a small-diameter, multiple-pass, vertical-finned tube coil configured to complement the surrounding air ducting.

F.3 Design considerations

F.3.1 Process design

F.3.1.1 General

In order to properly design a fired heater that incorporates an APH system, it is necessary to understand the process effects that an APH system imposes on the heater and account for these within the heater's design. The primary variable interactions are as follows.

- a) Firebox temperatures increase with increasing combustion air temperatures and reduced excess air.
- b) Radiant duty, flux rates and coil temperatures increase with increasing combustion air temperatures.
- c) Radiant refractory and coil-support temperatures increase with increasing combustion air temperatures.
- d) Radiant-process film temperatures increase with increasing combustion air temperatures and flux rates.
- e) Convection duty, flux rates and coil temperatures decrease with reduced flue-gas flow rates.
- f) Convection-process film temperatures decrease with reduced flue-gas flow rates.
- g) Flue gas mass flows decrease with increasing combustion air temperatures.

In summary, compared to a conventional heater, a heater retrofitted with an APH will increase the radiant duty and decrease the convection duty in the heater. This duty shift between the radiant and convection sections should be quantified (i.e. modelled) in order to properly design both heater sections. It is the proper quantification of the noted duty shifts and proper adjustment in radiant surface area that enable a heater to achieve design duty without exceeding its allowable average radiant-heat flux and all directly related parameters during APH operations.

F.3.1.2 APH system retrofits

Because of the variable relationships noted in F.3.1.1 [especially F.3.1.1 a) through F.3.1.1 d)], most APH-system retrofits should include a process design review to ascertain the heater's new operating conditions and any constraints of the existing components. During this process design review, the design excess-air and radiation-loss values should be reviewed (see F.3.2.2) to account for the affects of the APH system. Such a process design review typically produces new data sheets that document the heater's operating conditions with the APH system in operation.

Additional factors that should be considered when retrofitting an APH:

- a) An increase in combustion air temperature will increase NO_x emissions; it could be necessary to limit or control the combustion air temperature to achieve acceptable NO_x emissions;

- b) An increase in combustion air temperature will increase radiant coil-flux rates; it could be necessary to limit or control the combustion air temperature to achieve acceptable radiant average/peak flux rates, radiant coil temperatures and/or process-film temperatures;
- c) An increase in combustion air temperature will raise tube-support and/or guide temperatures; it could be necessary to limit the combustion air temperature to reduce the tube-support and/or guide temperatures.

In some retrofit applications, the above constraints can be mitigated by adding convection section surface area to increase the convection section duty.

F.3.2 Combustion design

F.3.2.1 Burner selection

In general, the application of an APH system to a fired heater does not alter the burner performance selection criteria. Application of an APH system does, however, elevate the operating temperatures of the burner, and it is necessary to meet the burner's performance criteria at these higher operating temperatures. Thus, a successful combustion design considers the following:

- a) burner performance during APH operations (e.g. heat release, flue gas emissions, noise emissions, etc.);
- b) burner performance during "natural-draught" operations, if required;
- c) means to achieve equal and uniform air flow to each burner under all operating conditions;
- d) since the application of an APH typically requires FD fans, for new furnace designs, the use of high-pressure-drop FD burners may be considered. This generally leads to fewer burners and an improved distribution of combustion air over the burners. This feature may eliminate the possibility of operating without FD fans at full duty.

For a thorough review of burner technology and selection criteria, refer to API RP 535.

F.3.2.2 Design excess air

F.3.2.2.1 General

An important consideration in maximizing a fired heater's efficiency is the consistent control of combustion air flow rates such that design excess-air (or excess-oxygen) levels are maintained, while sustaining complete combustion, stable and well-defined flames and stable heater operation. Because of the improved combustion air flow control provided by a forced-draught fan and its supporting instrumentation, forced- and balanced-draught APH systems are able to consistently operate at excess-air levels lower than natural-draught systems.

However, care should be exercised to maintain sufficient excess air flow through the burners to avoid sub-stoichiometric combustion in heaters with significant leakage air ingress. The flue gas O_2 levels at the arch/roof areas include O_2 from both sources: burner excess air and infiltration air. The most common practice of estimating the burner excess O_2 is to subtract the radiant section's estimated air leakage (as percentage O_2) from the arch/bridgewall measured excess percentage O_2 . As a point of reference, most seal-welded (i.e. airtight) fired heaters with airtight observation doors have less than a 1,0 % increase in O_2 from the arch to the floor.

F.3.2.2.2 and F.3.2.2.3 are typical design excess air levels for general-service "airtight" fired heaters. Where the heater design and/or user experience dictates, it is appropriate to design the system to operate at different excess air levels.

F.3.2.2.2 Burners up to 100 mm (4 in) H₂O pressure drop

Typical excess air levels are the following:

- a) fuel-gas fired, natural-draught operation 15 %–20 %;
- b) fuel-gas fired, forced-/balanced-draught operation 10 %–15 %;
- c) fuel-oil fired, natural-draught operation 20 %–25 %;
- d) fuel-oil fired, forced-/balanced-draught operation 15 %–20 %.

F.3.2.2.3 Burners above 100 mm (4 in) H₂O pressure drop

Typical excess air levels are the following:

- a) fuel-gas fired, forced-/balanced-draught operation 10 %;
- b) fuel-oil fired, forced-/balanced-draught operation 15 %.

F.3.2.3 Post-combustion NO_x-reduction considerations

Each post-combustion NO_x-reduction system will have its own design temperature window that yields maximum NO_x reduction. An advantage of induced-draught and balanced-draught APH systems is that these system types can be designed to facilitate the control of flue gas temperatures.

Flue-gas temperature control is typically achieved by temperature-control loops on preheaters upstream and downstream of the SCR reactor. The temperature-control loops enable a fraction of the total flue gas stream to bypass the upstream and/or downstream exchangers to achieve the desired flue gas temperatures. These features provide operating flexibility during transient operations. For further guidelines on post-combustion NO_x-reduction systems, refer to API RP 536.

F.3.3 Draught generation for alternative operations

For operating and safety reasons, some alternative means of providing heater draught is usually provided upon loss of operation of the fans or the APH. Examples of these methods are the following:

- a) Natural-draught capability

Natural-draught capability can be provided for most APH applications; therefore, most fired heaters with APH systems do have some (reduced) level of natural-draught capability. Natural-draught capability is achieved with a sufficiently sized stack and a system of dampers or air doors that enable the stack to induce a draught through the heater while isolating the idled APH system from the operating heater. Dampers or guillotines should be used to isolate the APH system from the heater during natural-draught operations.

- b) Spare fan assemblies

Another common practice used to keep a heater on-stream in the event of a mechanical fan failure is the provision of spare fan assemblies or spare fan drivers, with “on-line” switching capability. The choice of whether to back up either the FD fan or the ID fan, or both, depends upon the user's experience and equipment failure probability. An alternative is to have two fans running at 60 % which avoids startup time in the event of a single fan failure.

F.3.4 Refractory design and setting losses

The addition of ducts, fans and an APH significantly increases the surface area from which heat losses occur. The heat losses through these surfaces should be modelled to confirm that the combined heater and APH-

system setting losses are within acceptable limits. To reflect the additional heat losses of the APH system, it is common practice to increase the heater's setting losses by up to 1 % of design heat release. Heaters with balanced-draught APH systems and a design basis of an 82 °C (180 °F) casing with 27 °C (80 °F) and 0 km/h (0 mph) ambient conditions typically yield slightly less than 2,5 % total setting losses. External insulation may be applied on the hot-air ducts.

Because most ducts have design velocities in excess of ceramic fibre's maximum-use velocity, the most common duct refractory is low-density insulating castable. If needed, refractory mass savings can be realized through the use of ceramic fibre. However, ceramic fibre can require a means of protection in ducts where high velocity can compromise the integrity of the layer.

F.3.5 Cold-end temperature control

F.3.5.1 General

F.3.5.1.1 In most applications, the primary emphasis of cold-end temperature control is to maintain the temperature of all flue-gas wetted surfaces above the flue-gas acid dew-point (FGADP) temperature. Maintaining an exchanger's cold-end surface temperatures above the FGADP temperature will avoid the harmful effects of acid dew-point corrosion and minimize the unwanted deposition of acidic salts from condensation and particulate matter on wet surfaces that impede the performance of the exchanger.

F.3.5.1.2 The initial dew-point constraint for the vast majority of APH applications is the sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) dew-point temperature; fuel gas sulfur concentrations of 5 ppm to 5 000 ppm typically produce FGADP temperatures of approximately 90 °C to 150 °C (200 °F to 300 °F), respectively, at typical excess air concentrations. If (flue-gas wetted) cold-end metal temperatures were allowed to decline below the sulfuric acid dew-point temperature, it would be possible for a system to experience the carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), sulfurous acid (H_2SO_3), nitric acid (HNO_3), hydrochloric acid (HCl), and/or the hydrobromic acid (HBr) dew points (depending upon the fuel composition), in addition to the sulfuric acid dew point.

F.3.5.1.3 Conversely, most "sulfur-free" applications (i.e. fuel sulfur of less than 5 ppm) are initially constrained by the carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) dew point, which is also called the water dew point and is typically reported in the 57 °C to 60 °C (135 °F to 140 °F) range at typical excess air concentrations. If cold-end metal temperatures were allowed to drop below the carbonic acid dew-point temperature, it would be possible to experience the nitric acid (HNO_3), the hydrochloric acid (HCl), and/or the hydrobromic acid (HBr) dew points (depending upon the fuel composition), in addition to the carbonic acid dew point.

F.3.5.1.4 It should be noted that the vast majority of applications will not be constrained by the sulfurous acid, nitric acid, hydrochloric acid, and hydrobromic acid dew points. Nevertheless, in the interest of providing a reasonably thorough overview of all the potential constraints, the following introduction provides basic information relating to all potential constraints, including the dew points of sulfuric acid, carbonic acid, sulfurous acid, nitric acid, hydrochloric acid, and hydrobromic acids.

F.3.5.1.5 In addition to avoiding dew-point corrosion, maintaining an APH's cold-end surface temperatures above the FGADP temperature will also provide the benefit of minimizing the unwanted deposition of suspended particulate matter on wet surfaces within the APH. The suspended particulate matter is an agglomeration of materials; dust, ceramic fibres, combustion byproducts, etc. In applications where the flue gas combustion APH exchanger surfaces are maintained above the FGADP and remain dry, the suspended particulate matter entrained in the flue gas stream will pass through the exchanger and be exhausted in the flue gas stream. However, in applications where the APH surfaces experience the dew point, a small fraction of the suspended particulate matter will deposit on the wet surfaces. The acid wetted surfaces "act as a magnet" for suspended particulates, and over time, the build-up of suspended particulates will reduce the APH's heat transfer capabilities and increase its flue-gas side pressure drop.

F.3.5.2 Flue-gas acid dew-point temperature

The acid dew-point temperature of a flue gas is the temperature of incipient condensation/formation of liquid acid. In other words, the acid dew point is realized when a gaseous acid in a flue gas stream starts to condense or form into a liquid acid. As with any phase equilibrium problem, the dew-point temperature is a function of the pressure and the composition of the flue gas stream.

Following is a brief overview of each fuel constituent's primary products of combustion, and the relationship of the FGADP temperature to said products of combustion:

- a) C yields CO & CO₂; the H₂CO₃ FGADP temperature increases as the CO₂ concentration increases;
- b) H₂ yields H₂O; all FGADP temperatures increase as the H₂O concentration increases;
- c) O₂ yields H₂O & O₂; all FGADP temperatures increase as the H₂O concentration increases;

NOTE The conversion of SO₂ to SO₃ will also increase as the O₂ concentration of the flue gas increases.

- d) N₂ yields NO & NO₂; the HNO₃ FGADP temperature increases as the NO₂ concentration increases;
- e) S yields SO₂ & SO₃; the H₂SO₄ FGADP temperature increases as the SO₃ concentration increases and the H₂SO₃ FGADP temperature increases as the SO₂ concentration increases;

NOTE At moderate temperatures, SO₃ quickly reacts with H₂O to form sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄) vapour.

- f) Cl yields Cl₂ & HCl; the HCl FGADP temperature increases as the HCl concentration increases;
- g) Br yields Br₂ & HBr; the HBr FGADP temperature increases as HBr concentration increases.

F.3.5.3 Calculation of flue-gas acid dew-point temperature

The calculation of FGADP temperatures is a multi-variable reaction equilibrium problem that is neither elementary nor precise. Following is an overview of the FGADP temperature calculation procedure:

- a) Establish the system's fuel gas and/or fuel oil composition, including all sulfur, nitrogen, bromine and chlorine compounds. The following notes may be helpful in the assessment of fuel compositions:
 - 1) ASTM D 5504 provides a good standard practice for determining sulfur levels in fuel gas streams;
 - 2) most refinery fuel gas streams contain some sulfur compounds (typically <100 mg/kg) that change in composition and concentration over time;

NOTE In order to accurately forecast the sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄) dew-point temperature, fuel gas analyses must measure and record the concentrations of all sulfur bearing compounds, not just the H₂S concentration (as is often the standard practice).

- 3) most commercial natural gas streams contain small concentrations (typically <100 ppm) of sulfur compounds as odorants, as a safety measure, so that significant leaks can be detected by smell;
- 4) to illustrate the potential complexity of a gas stream and its corresponding combustion reactions, following are some of the more common sulfur compounds found in natural gas (in addition to H₂S):
 - i) tetrahydrothiophene;
 - ii) tertiary butyl mercaptan;
 - iii) dimethyl sulfide;
 - iv) methyl mercaptan;
 - v) ethyl mercaptan;
 - vi) isopropyl mercaptan;
 - vii) normal propyl mercaptan;
 - viii) elemental sulfur;

- 5) all fuel oils contain sulfur compounds, which change with respect to time, specification, and sources;
 - 6) industry standards ASTM D 975, ASTM D 2880, and ASTM D 396 provide standard requirements (including sulfur concentrations) for diesel fuels, gas turbine fuel oils and industrial fuel oils.
- b) Establish the excess air concentration at the APH's cold end, where dew-point corrosion would initially occur.

NOTE 1 It is not uncommon for the oxygen content of a flue gas stream to increase slightly after leaving the radiant cell(s) because one or more of these common air infiltration sources are not gas-tight: convection section header boxes, slip joints, expansion joints, APH, etc.

NOTE 2 The best location to measure the excess air concentration for FGADP temperature calculations is immediately downstream of the APH; measurements upstream of the exchanger will not include, or account for, any air leakage within the exchanger itself, which can have a significant impact on the oxygen concentration and the resulting FGADP temperature.

- c) Calculate all of the products of combustion (i.e. "rigorously combust" all elemental species of the fuel at the appropriate excess air concentration to obtain the primary products of combustion, O_2 , N_2 , CO_2 , H_2O , NO_x , and SO_x , plus the CO, UHC, VOC, SPM, Cl_2 , HCl, Br_2 , and/or HBr concentrations when appropriate).

NOTE UHC, VOC and SPM are abbreviations for Unburned Hydrocarbons, Volatile Organic Compounds and Suspended Particulate Matter.

- d) Assume that all NO_x and SO_x are initially combusted into the forms of NO_2 and SO_2 , respectively, and calculate the partial pressures of O_2 , H_2O , NO_2 and SO_2 , plus HCl, and HBr compounds as appropriate.
- e) Calculate the conversion of SO_2 to SO_3 (typical conversion rates are 2 % to 8 %), and the partial pressure of SO_3 .

NOTE SO_2 to SO_3 conversion rates are a function of the flue gas oxygen content, the catalytic effects of catalytic compounds within the flue gas, and the catalytic effects of certain high-temperature metallic surfaces within the heater and APH system.

- f) Calculate the FGADP temperature for sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), plus the FGADP temperatures for carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), sulfurous acid (H_2SO_3), nitric acid (HNO_3), hydrochloric (HCl) and/or hydrobromic (HBr) acid, as appropriate.

Reference the sources in the Bibliography for supplemental information on the calculation of FGADP Temperatures. It should be noted that it is not uncommon to obtain moderate variances in calculated FGADP Temperatures between many of the published correlations; 10 °C (18 °F) or more can be expected. Thus, the relatively imprecise nature of the published FGADP temperature correlations should be factored into the selection of a cold-end minimum metal temperature set point.

F.3.5.4 Measurement of flue-gas acid dew-point temperature

In contrast to the above method, which will calculate the FGADP temperature(s) for a known fuel composition and combustion conditions, the FGADP temperature can also be directly measured with an instrument. The ideal location for a FGADP temperature instrument would be in the cold flue gas ducting immediately downstream of the APH, wherever instrument accessibility is acceptable.

For "low sulfur" applications (i.e. fuel sulfur less than 50 ppm), directly measuring the FGADP temperature will typically yield more accurate results than the previously mentioned calculation method, where the sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) FGADP temperature correlations have proven to be somewhat inconsistent. For fuels with sulfur concentrations in excess of 50 ppm, both methods typically provide reasonably accurate results.

F.3.5.5 Illustrations of sulfuric acid FGADP temperature

Figure F.4 is provided to illustrate the general relationship between the sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) FGADP temperature and the concentration of sulfur in a fuel gas. Similarly, Figure F.5 illustrates the general

relationship of the sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄) FGADP temperature and the concentration of sulfur in a fuel oil. These figures are not intended to be used for design or operating constraint purposes.

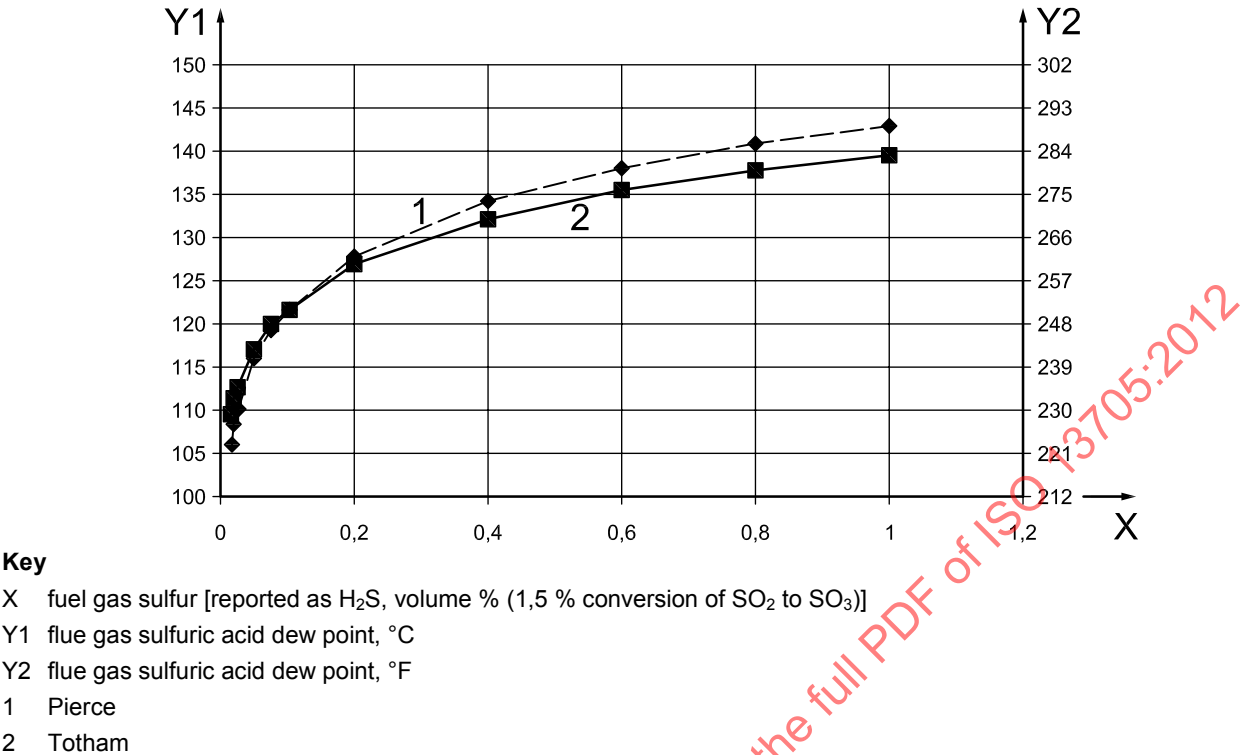


Figure F.4 — General relationship between the sulfuric acid (H₂SO₄) FGADP temperature and the concentration of sulfur in a fuel gas

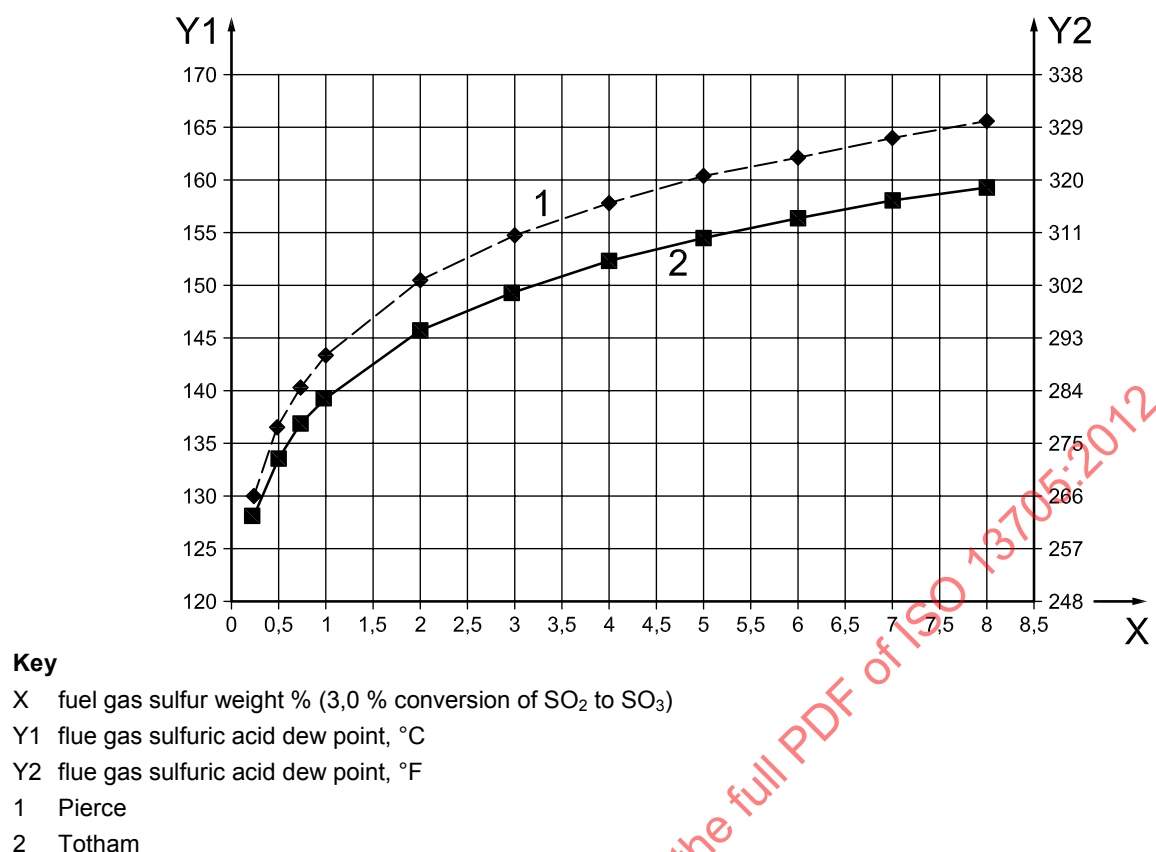


Figure F.5 — General relationship of sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) FGADP Temperature and the concentration of sulfur in a fuel oil

F.3.5.6 Authoritative design guidelines

In view of the many variables that affect FGADP temperature calculations, using the enclosed figures as design guidelines for sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) FGADP corrosion avoidance is not recommended; consult an authoritative source for application-specific guidance. Similarly, design guidance for the FGADP temperature relationships of carbonic acid (H_2CO_3), nitric acid (HNO_3), hydrochloric acid (HCl) and/or hydrobromic acid (HBr), as appropriate, should also be obtained from an authoritative source.

The configuration of the APH's adjoining ducting can alter, or shift, a recuperative exchanger's "coldest region" that would be most susceptible to FGADP corrosion. In unusual and/or thermally demanding applications, performing either a CFD (computational fluid dynamics) or cold-flow model of the APH and its adjoining ducting is recommended in order to locate the "coldest region" of the exchanger (i.e. the best locations for monitoring thermocouples) and to resolve or minimize any flow mal-distribution issues. Additionally, in an effort to obtain the most accurate exchanger model possible, it is recommended that the velocity profile of the FD Fan(s) discharge stream be incorporated into the model's basis.

For recommendations on design temperature allowances (the difference between the design minimum metal temperature of the exchanger and the design FGADP temperature), refer to F.6.2. Please note that larger temperature allowances will yield higher design minimum metal temperatures and/or reduced exchanger duty (i.e. reduced thermal efficiency).

Conversely, smaller or "zero" temperature allowances will yield lower cold-end temperatures and higher thermal efficiencies, which inevitably increase the risks of corrosion. Thermally aggressive APH systems (i.e. those with metal temperatures at or below the FGADP temperatures) should mitigate such risks via the adoption of one or more of the methodologies set forth in F.6.2.

F.3.5.7 Effects of operations

The heater's operating conditions will alter the APH operating temperatures, as follows:

- a) lower firing rate; will yield a lower flue gas temperature at the APH and will move the cold-end temperatures closer to the FGADP temperature;
- b) lower excess air level; will also yield a lower flue gas temperature at the APH and will move the cold-end temperatures closer to the FGADP temperature;
- c) lower ambient air temperature; will move the cold-end temperatures closer to the FGADP temperature.

The primary effect of the above changes is to reduce the exchanger's operating temperatures, thus moving the cold-end surfaces closer to, at, or below the FGADP temperature. The typical APH system design should make provisions for all operating cases (including turndown cases). In order to achieve the design life of the APH, it is important for it to maintain the preheater's cold-end temperatures above the FGADP under any possible operating condition. It should be recognized that if the control of cold-end temperatures results in a flue gas discharge temperature that is higher than the design discharge temperature, such dew-point corrosion avoidance is achieved at the expense of system efficiency.

F.3.5.8 Typical methods of cold-end temperature control

Three methods of cold-end metal temperature control for regenerative, recuperative, and heat pipe air preheat systems have widespread commercial application at this time, and are presented in F.3.5.8.1 through F.3.5.8.3. A fourth method, reheat of fluid inlet temperature, is only applicable to indirect air preheat systems and is covered in F.3.5.8.4.

F.3.5.8.1 Cold air bypass

The simplest type of cold-end temperature control is the cold air bypass, in which a portion of the combustion air stream is bypassed around the APH to maintain the cold-end metal temperatures above the FGADP temperature. The reduction of combustion air flow through the APH results in lower air-side heat transfer coefficients, which yield hotter outlet flue gas temperatures and hotter cold-end surface temperatures. In moderate temperature climates where the ambient temperature never drops below freezing, this method allows the cold-end surface temperatures to be maintained above the dew point, as necessary, while other conditions change.

This corrosion avoidance method is less capable than either external preheating or hot air recirculation methods because of the following system characteristics:

- a) the air-side heat transfer coefficient is not directly proportional to mass flow; for example, a 50 % drop in air flow yields only a 39 % reduction in the air-side coefficient;
- b) low ambient air temperatures increase the cold-end temperature differential; as the ambient temperatures decrease, the cold-end temperature differential increases and heat transfer increases proportionally (thus reducing the benefit of cold air bypassing).

Because of this method's inherent limitations, cold air bypass systems are often used in conjunction with one or more of the following more capable methods: external preheating and/or hot air recirculation. Both of the following methods increase the temperature of the combustion air flowing into the APH, thereby reducing the effect of thermal shock on the APH caused by low ambient air temperature.

F.3.5.8.2 External preheat of cold air

In this method, the desired cold-end metal temperature is maintained by preheating the combustion air before it enters the APH with low-pressure steam or some other source of low-level heat. In the design of the external heat source preheater, consideration should be given to:

- providing adequate surface area to heat the design combustion air flow rate, including any appropriate concentration of snow and/or sleet, from the application's minimum ambient temperature to at least the range of 5 °C to 10 °C (40 °F to 50 °F);
- the prevention of fouling and plugging of the unit with atmospheric dust (including pollen and pollutants);
- the prevention of fouling and plugging of the unit with snow, sleet and/or freezing rain during cold-weather operations;
- minimizing corrosion, air pocketing, condensate build-up and drainage problems.

This method does reduce the thermal shock on the exchanger caused by low-temperature ambient air, and does provide improved cold-end temperature control capability in comparison to the cold air bypass method.

F.3.5.8.3 Hot air recirculation

This type of cold-end temperature control recycles a fraction of the heated combustion air stream to some point upstream of the APH to obtain a hotter mixed-air temperature and maintain the APH's cold-end metal temperatures above the FGADP Temperature. Systems that recycle heated air to the FD fan suction will require the purchase and operation of a moderately larger FD fan to accommodate the larger volumetric flow rates required to support this method. Systems that recycle heated air directly to the APH will require the purchase and cold-weather operation of a booster fan (that operates in parallel to the FD fan) to recycle the heated air to the exchanger's air inlet. This method provides improved cold-end temperature control capability in comparison to the cold air bypass method.

F.3.5.8.4 Working fluid temperature control

In the circulating fluid or indirect APH systems, the exchanger cold-end temperatures can be regulated by controlling the inlet temperature of the heat transfer fluid. Depending on the system design and configuration, the working fluid temperature can be increased either by bypassing a portion of the fluid around the exchanger (air heating coil) or by decreasing the working fluid flow rate.

F.3.5.8.5 Comparison of temperature monitoring strategies

The following two temperature monitoring strategies are in widespread use.

- a) Flue gas temperature measurement; many APH systems monitor and control the APH's outlet flue gas temperature. There are advantages and disadvantages of monitoring and controlling the outlet flue gas temperature are as follows:
 - 1) Advantages:
 - simple measurement technique.
 - 2) Disadvantages:
 - does not provide a direct measurement of cold-end metal temperatures, as cold-end metal temperatures are inferred for all cases from a single design case;
 - conservative temperature allowance should be used, resulting in less efficient operation;
 - does not factor in ambient air temperature changes (unless a relationship between flue gas and ambient temperature for acid dew point is established).

b) Cold-end temperature measurement; some APH systems monitor and control the APH's cold-end metal temperature.

1) Advantages:

- simple measurement technique;
- more accurate cold-end metal temperatures, which yield lower risks of corrosion without sacrificing efficiency.

2) Disadvantages:

- coldest area of the exchanger's cold-end has to be identified for thermocouple placement;
- failure of a thermocouple weld will result in an erroneous reading which will be difficult to recognize and could result in operation at or below the FGADP temperature.

Both of the above strategies should be coupled with the FGADP temperature calculation methodology of 3.5.3 or the FGADP temperature measurement methodology of 3.5.4 to obtain an interactive system that regularly calculates or measures the FGADP temperature and uses said information to continuously adjust the APH system's operations and maintain all cold-end metal surfaces above the FGADP temperature.

F.3.6 APH mechanical design

F.3.6.1 Regenerative APH

Regenerative APHs operate at lower metal temperatures than most other types of APHs. Therefore, they may use combinations of carbon-steel, low-alloy-steel and corrosion-resistant enamelled-steel construction. The manufacturer should be consulted for the appropriate material of construction based on the cold-end temperature.

F.3.6.2 Recuperative APHs

Recuperative APHs are commercially available with carbon-steel, cast-iron, enamelled-steel, alloyed steel, and glass elements. The finning normally provided in the cast-iron construction may be modified on the air side of the cold-end elements to increase the metal temperatures.

Units equipped with enamelled steel or glass elements accommodate moderate acid condensation and fouling, but it is necessary to consider the requirements for the removal of deposits by sootblowing and/or water washing without adversely affecting downstream equipment. Additionally, the risk of breaking glass elements, particularly during cleaning operations, should be considered in the selection of such materials. The exchanger manufacturer should be consulted for recommended water-wash temperatures, minimum cold-end temperatures and materials of construction.

F.3.6.3 Indirect systems

As illustrated by Figure F.2, indirect APH systems employ both a hot exchanger (flue gas/fluid) and a cold exchanger (fluid/air) to transfer energy from the flue gas stream to the combustion air stream. The hot exchanger coils are generally similar in construction to, and located within, the fired-heater convection section. Consequently, the mechanical design of the hot exchanger usually complies with this International Standard.

F.4 Selection guidelines

F.4.1 General

The following factors should be considered in the determination of the most appropriate APH system design and its selection:

- a) the heater's natural-draught operating requirements;
- b) the fuel type and qualities and corresponding cleaning requirements and the type of refractory in flue gas ductwork;
- c) the available plot area;
- d) the APH system's design flue gas temperatures;
- e) the ability to meet required turndown conditions based on the ambient temperature range;
- f) the ability to clean the preheater (i.e. APH exchanger) with minimal impact on the heater's operations;
- g) the ability to service the APH system with minimal impact on the heater's operations;
- h) the negative effects of air leakage into the flue gas stream: corrosion of downstream equipment, increased hydraulic-power consumption and reduced combustion air flow (which can cause a reduction in the heater's firing rate);
- i) increased radiant heat flux rates
- j) the potential for, and the methods available to, minimize, cold-end corrosion;
- k) the system's controls requirements and degree of automation;
- l) the negative effects of heat-transfer-fluid leakage;
- m) the effect of burner type (forced versus natural draught);
- n) the feasibility of enlarging the APH system capacity to handle future increases in process requirements;
- o) the presence of SCR before APH.

F.4.2 Plot area

Plot area requirements are a function of the system type and system layout.

Balanced-draught systems, with grade-mounted fans and an independent exchanger structure, require the largest plot area. However, because of the ability to isolate the exchanger and fans from the heater, this system layout provides the greatest operating flexibility and maintenance flexibility.

Forced-draught systems, with a grade-mounted fan and an integral exchanger, require significantly less plot area than a balanced-draught system. Because the exchanger is located above the convection section, however, this system type does not permit the exchanger to be serviced while the heater is in operation.

Induced-draught systems, with a grade-mounted fan and an independent exchanger structure, require slightly less plot area than the balanced-draught system. However, because of the ability to isolate the exchanger and fan from the heater, this system layout provides operating and maintenance flexibility.

Common practices to reduce the plot area include the following:

- a) locating the exchanger above the heater's convection section;
- b) locating exchanger terminals such that duct connections are vertically oriented;
- c) locating the induced-draught fan beneath the preheater or cold flue gas duct.

F.4.3 Maintainability

APHs that require repeated water washing, regular maintenance or similar "off-line" maintenance should be located independently of the fired heater so that the exchanger's maintenance activities don't negatively impact the heater's operations. Locating the exchanger independently of the heater should be considered for applications with high flue gas ash contents, high sulfur contents or depositable concentrations of ammonium sulfate/ammonium bisulfate. Refer to API RP 536 for additional information regarding the formation and control of ammonium sulfate/ammonium bisulfate compounds. All such systems that require regular off-line maintenance should have adequate means of positively isolating the preheater from the heater, so that maintenance personnel can perform their work in a safe environment.

APHs that do not require repeated or regular "off-line" maintenance may be located either integral to the heater or independent of the heater. Thus, applications firing clean fuel gas may locate the APH exchanger above the convection section with minimal negative consequences.

F.4.4 Fouling and cleanability

APH systems on fuel-oil-fired heaters should use exchanger designs that can be soot-blown on-line or water-washed off-line. Most recuperative, regenerative and tubular indirect exchangers can be designed to permit on-line sootblowing. Similarly, most recuperative exchangers can be designed to facilitate cleaning via off-line warm-water washing.

F.4.5 Natural-draught capability

Most heaters require some degree of natural-draught operation, usually from 75 % to 100 % of design duty. If natural-draught operating capability is required, the system shall have low-draught-loss burners, an independently located APH exchanger and the appropriate ducts and dampers to bypass the APH exchanger, and shall provide adequate combustion air and a stack capable of maintaining a draught of 2,5 mm H₂O (0,10 in H₂O) at the arch during natural-draught operation. An alternative to low-draught-loss burners is to apply high-pressure-drop burners, whereby it is accepted that the furnace can only be operated in forced-draught mode; however, it can be necessary to bypass the APH system and ID fan.

The noted low-draught-loss burners are sized to operate satisfactorily on the draught generated by the stack and heater proper, just like any other natural-draught application. An independently located exchanger is one that is located independently of the heater structure, preferably at grade, so that a system of ducts and dampers can bypass the air and flue gas streams around the exchanger during natural-draught operation.

F.4.6 Effects of air leakage into the flue gas

Air leakage into the lower-pressure flue gas stream is a potential problem with most preheater (APH exchanger) designs. Although most exchanger designs provide design leakage rates of less than 1,0 %, some regenerative exchangers have a design leakage rate of approximately 10 %. Furthermore, leakage rates in excess of 40 % are possible with poorly maintained regenerative exchangers.

Especially for systems applying regenerative exchangers, it is necessary to account for the design leakage rate in the design of the system. The three most significant effects of this air-to-flue-gas leakage are the following.

- a) The resultant cooling of the "cold" flue gas from air leakage should be monitored, and controlled as necessary, to avoid corrosion downstream of the APH exchanger.

- b) It is necessary to account for the decrease in combustion air flow to the burners, which can require or justify the upsizing of the forced-draught fan to maintain sufficient air flow to the burners.
- c) It is necessary to account for the increase in flue gas flow from the exchanger, which can require or justify the upsizing of the induced-draught fan to maintain the target draught at the arch.

F.4.7 Maximum exposure temperature

The exchanger manufacturer should provide the exchanger's maximum operating temperature limits. The limits are generally set by metallurgical and/or thermal expansion considerations.

F.4.8 Acid-condensate corrosion

Whenever the temperature of flue-gas-wetted exchanger surfaces drops below the acid dew-point temperature, acids condense on such surfaces causing cold-end corrosion. Cold-end corrosion typically produces several undesirable effects: deposition of corrosion products/rust on heat transfer surfaces, costly equipment damage, increased air leakage into the flue gas stream, decreased flow of combustion air to the burners, an increase in pressure drop and a reduction in heat recovery. The techniques described in F.3.5 minimize cold-end corrosion.

If the techniques in F.3.5 are not practical, the following practices are recommended.

- a) The design should maintain the bulk cold flue gas temperature above the dew point.
- b) Appropriate corrosion-resistant materials should be used in the heat-exchanger cold end.
- c) A low-point drain should be provided to permit removal of the corrosive condensate.
- d) A replaceable cold end section should be used.

F.4.9 Increasing APH system capacity

If an increase in the fired-heater capacity or a fuel change is anticipated in the future, the following design options should be considered:

- a) use of a preheater exchanger that has the potential to be upgraded for future operations;
- b) use of variable-speed drivers on the fans to accommodate the changes in flow and pressure;
- c) use of a fan with operating curves that satisfy all operating cases;
- d) design of the system (e.g. ducts and dampers) for both current and future requirements.

F.4.10 Comparison of APH system designs

Table F.1 summarizes the inherent strengths and weaknesses of the most common APH systems.

Table F.1 — Comparison of various APH systems

Characteristic	Type of APH system										
	Regenerative		Recuperative			Heat pipe			Indirect		EHS ^a
	ID ^b	BD ^c	FD ^d	ID	BD	FD	ID	BD	FD	BD	FD
Plot area ^e	m	l	s	m	l	s	m	l	s	l	S
Exchanger location ^f	sep	sep	int	sep	sep	int	sep	sep	int and sep	sep	Sep
Capital costs ^g	m	h	m	m	h	m	m	h	m	h	L
Operating costs ^g	m	h	l	m	h	l	m	h	m	h	L
Maintenance costs ^g	m	h	l	m	h	l	m	h	l	h	L
Online cleaning ^h	y	y	n	y	y	n	y	y	n	n	Y
Online maintenance ⁱ	y	y	n	y	y	n	y	y	n	n	Y
Quantity of rotating equipment ^j	1 + 1	2 + 1	1 + 0	1 + 0	2 + 0	1 + 0	1 + 0	2 + 0	1 + 1	2 + 1	1
Design leakage ^k	< 10	< 10	< 1,0	< 1,0	< 1,0	< 1,0	< 1,0	< 1,0	0,0	0,0	0,0
^a External heat source APH exchanger (preheater); see F.2.2.3 c) for overview. ^b Induced-draught system, with APH exchanger located in a separate structure; see F.2.2.2 c). ^c Balanced-draught system, with APH exchanger located in a separate structure; see F.2.2.2 a). ^d Forced-draught system, with APH exchanger located within heater structure; see F.2.2.2 b). ^e Plot area requirements: s = small, m = medium, l = large. ^f Exchanger location: int = integral to heater structure; sep = exchanger located in separate structure. ^g Costs: l = low, m = medium, h = high. ^h Online cleaning: y = online cleaning is possible; n = online cleaning is not possible. ⁱ Online maintenance: y = online maintenance is possible; n = online maintenance is not possible. ^j Quantity of equipment assemblies (fans exchangers and pumps) that need to be operated and maintained. ^k Typical design leakage (air to flue gas) percentage for well-maintained exchangers.											

F.4.11 Operating modes

APH systems shall be designed with provisions for the following:

- normal start-up;
- normal shutdown;
- emergency shutdown;
- emergency transition to natural draft, for heaters designed with natural draft capability;
- emergency transition to spare FD or ID fan, for systems with spare fans;
- emergency transition to FD fan only or ID fan only, for systems design for such operation.

F.5 Safety, operations and maintenance considerations

F.5.1 Safety

F.5.1.1 Personnel entry

APH system components that require on-line personnel entry should be positively isolated from the fired heater. Isolation may be by means of slide gates, guillotine blinds and/or specially designed dampers. The design of such guillotines/dampers should consider the maximum acceptable leakage rate, a means of locking the actuator, the negative effects of air leakage into the heater and the accessibility of the device.

F.5.1.2 Location of natural-draught doors

Natural-draught air doors (i.e. emergency air inlets) should be positioned so that their sudden opening does not produce a hot-air blast that can harm personnel (if the doors open when the forced-draught fan is operating). Automatically operated air doors should be located such that moving parts (e.g. heavy counterweights) cannot contact personnel when activated.

F.5.1.3 Safe discharge of stack effluent

The stack design and effluent plume should be evaluated to ensure that personnel on adjacent structures are not exposed to hazardous conditions.

F.5.1.4 Periodic tests of safety systems

In order to ensure that the heater and APH system are able to appropriately respond to "emergency situations", periodic operational tests of the natural-draught air doors (emergency air inlets), stack damper, spare fan or fans and other safety-related components are recommended.

F.5.1.5 Lockout system

A lockable energy isolating device shall be provided for all fans and motors for the purpose of shutting off and disabling the fans and motors whenever maintenance or servicing is performed. The isolating device shall prevent unexpected energy release or movement and, as a minimum, shall disconnect all electrical sources.

F.5.2 APH operation

In order to provide the means to effectively monitor and operate an APH system, the following design features (as applicable) are recommended.

- a) Pressure and temperature connections should be provided upstream and downstream of the APH exchanger in both the combustion air and flue gas ducting for performance monitoring and troubleshooting.
- b) Connections for flue gas analysers should be provided upstream and downstream of the APH exchanger in the flue gas ducting for leak detection, system mass balances, and troubleshooting.
- c) Pressure connections should be provided upstream and downstream of the fan(s).
- d) Flow element(s) should be located downstream of the APH to measure combustion air flow.
- e) Combustion air ducting to parallel fireboxes/cells should be hydraulically similar.
- f) Combustion air ducting to multiple independently fired fireboxes/cells should contain a flow-control damper that permits O₂ control for each cell over the APH system's operating range.
- g) Flue gas ducting from parallel fireboxes/cells should be hydraulically similar.

- h) Flue gas ducting from multiple independently fired fireboxes/cells should contain a flow-control damper that permits arch/roof draught control for each cell over the APH system's operating range.
- i) Variable speed or multi-speed fan drivers should be considered for applications with large operating ranges and/or significant time periods of turndown operations. These drivers provide improved control, reduced noise and reduced power consumption.

F.5.3 APH maintenance

The most desirable location for duct blinds and dampers is near grade to limit work on or over an operating fired heater. When locating the fans and the APH, accessibility for maintenance should be considered.

Cleaning facilities are typically provided for APHs in heavy-fuel-oil-fired applications. Online cleaning provisions for the induced-draught fan is also desirable in such applications.

Refractory systems in existing heaters and ductwork should be inspected periodically for mechanical integrity, and repaired as required.

F.5.4 APH system equipment failure

It is usual to provide provisions for a secondary or fail-safe mode of heater operation. In most applications, the APH system is designed to permit stable fired-heater operation whenever the APH system experiences a mechanical failure. The two most common secondary operating modes are the following:

- a) bypassing the APH system and defaulting to natural-draught operation;
- b) activating a spare fan or alternative device.

The APH system should have the means to confirm that such a change has been safely and successfully executed. Refer to F.3.3 and F.4.5 for additional guidelines for natural-draught operations.

F.6 APH performance guidelines

F.6.1 Introduction

The common design objective of most APH systems is to maximize the fired-heater's efficiency. To achieve this objective, it is important to select a cold-end design (flue gas) temperature that maximizes flue gas heat recovery and minimizes fouling and corrosion. The flue gas temperature at which corrosion and fouling become excessive is affected by the following:

- a) fuel sulfur, ash and other contaminants;
- b) fuel additives and flue gas additives;
- c) flue gas oxygen and moisture content;
- d) air-preheater design.

F.6.2 Cold-end temperatures

F.6.2.1 Recommended minimum metal temperatures

Corrosion of air-preheater cold-end surfaces is generally caused by the condensation of sulfuric acid vapour formed from the products of combustion of a sulfur-laden fuel. The acidic deposits also provide a moist surface that is ideal for collecting solid particles that foul the APH's heat-transfer surface. Consequently, to obtain the preheater design life, it is imperative to measure and control the APH's cold-end surfaces above the acid-dew-point temperature.

Thermally aggressive APH systems (i.e. those with metal temperatures at or below the FGADP temperatures) should mitigate such risks via the adoption of one or more of the following practices.

- a) Separate the exchanger into a hot and cold module, and make the cold module “easily replaceable”.
- b) Use corrosion-resistant materials: glass tubes, glass-coated tubes, glass-coated plates, coated tubes, stainless steel or some other special corrosion-resistant material.

NOTE 1 Glass tubes can break, which will reduce the efficiency gain from these tubes (most designs permit individual replacement of each tube).

NOTE 2 Glass coatings can become porous and the tube/plate substrate will corrode (however, these tubes can be individually replaced).

NOTE 3 Tube coatings are typically soft and subject to erosion.

- c) Use thicker tubes and/or plates to provide additional corrosion allowance.

NOTE Forecasting or calculating the corrosion rate(s) for the several acid and cold-end material combinations is beyond the scope of this annex. Refer to the bibliography for additional sources of information on corrosion rates and acid condensation rates, and/or consult an authoritative source for application-specific guidance.

F.6.2.2 Recommended minimum flue gas temperatures

For APH applications in which the exchanger's minimum metal temperature is not measured or monitored, a common corrosion-avoidance practice is to control the cold flue gas temperature above a calculated minimum flue gas temperature. This minimum flue-gas temperature limit is usually the appropriate minimum metal temperature from Figure F.4 and Figure F.5 plus a small temperature allowance. Temperature allowances of 8 °C to 14 °C (15 °F to 25 °F) are typical.

F.6.2.3 Flue gas dew-point monitoring

For APH systems with the capacity for reducing stack temperatures below the dew-point temperature, a programme of dew-point testing can be helpful. The dew-point determinations can be used to adjust the APH's cold-end temperature. The cold-end metal temperature is lower than the cold flue gas temperature, so care should be exercised when the cold flue gas temperature is the only measurement available.

F.6.3 Hot-end temperatures

F.6.3.1 General

The APH shall be designed to accommodate the full range of flue gas temperatures anticipated.

The temperature of the hot flue gas leaving a fired heater (hot-end temperature) is a function of heat transfer surface area, firing rate, and process temperature. The hot-end temperature increases as the heat transfer surfaces foul over time. The APH shall be designed for the resulting increase in flue gas temperature.

The approach temperature is typically defined as the temperature difference between the flue gas leaving the convection section and the process temperature of the last convection section coil. Fired-heater approach temperatures are typically in the range of 60 °C to 160 °C (100 °F to 300 °F).

F.6.3.2 Regenerative APH exchangers

Regenerative APH's are generally suitable for maximum inlet flue gas temperatures up to 540 °C (1 000 °F). Special materials and configurations allow regenerative APH use for flue gas temperatures up to 680 °C (1 250 °F). The APH manufacturer should be consulted for specific recommendations.

F.6.3.3 Recuperative APH exchangers

The standard cast-iron recuperative APH is generally suitable for maximum flue gas temperatures up to 540 °C (1 000 °F). By using special materials and constructions, these APHs can be designed for maximum flue gas temperatures up to 980 °C (1 800 °F). The exchanger manufacturer should be consulted for specific recommendations.

F.6.3.4 Heat pipes and indirect systems

The coils of working fluid systems, whether heat pipes or indirect APH systems, are usually limited by the fluids' maximum allowable film temperatures, not the exchangers' coil material(s). For indirect systems containing a heat-transfer fluid, the fluid manufacturer's maximum allowable film-temperature limit should be followed. In the case of the heat-pipe preheater, the preheater manufacturer should be consulted for specific recommendations.

F.7 Fan sizing basis

F.7.1 Introduction

APH performance is dependent on proper fan sizing.

This section addresses fan sizing. Design requirements for fans are addressed in Annex E.

F.7.2 Fan sizing

The heater's design conditions include a significant "design margin" for safety, future process increases and/or a general overage dictated by experience; the resulting APH system can be much larger than that required for the heater's normal operation. Consequently, the oversized APH system's turndown operation can be difficult and inefficient. It is recommended that the system designer consider the heater's design margin so that the APH system capabilities match the heater's operating requirements. An oversized fan will operate inefficiently at a heater's normal operating rate.

For example, if the heater duty has a 1,20 design margin (120 % of the normal duty), the use of the typical 1,2 test-block flow factor would establish the test-block flow at 138 % of the heater's normal flow requirements. The practice of applying a significant design margin to another significant design margin is not recommended; such a practice yields oversized fans that do not operate efficiently within the heater's normal operating range.

F.7.3 Forced-draught fan sizing

F.7.3.1 Design mass flow rates

The forced-draught fan's design mass flow rate is defined as the sum of the following:

- a) combustion air mass flow rate at heater design conditions and at design excess air;
- b) APH's design leakage air mass flow rate which normally applies to regenerative-type APHs;
- c) maximum hot-air recycle mass flow rate, if applicable;
- d) fuel composition that requires the highest air rate.

The design volumetric-flow-rate equivalent of the design mass flow rate should be based on the following:

- design ambient pressure (atmospheric pressure at site elevation above sea level);
- design ambient humidity (typically 60 %);
- design ambient temperature [typically 16 °C (60 °F)];

The project design basis should specify the design parameters.

F.7.3.2 Test-block flow rate

The design mass flow rate described above should be multiplied by a test-block flow factor to obtain the test-block mass flow rate. For typical APH system applications, a test-block flow factor (F_{tbf}) of 1,15 (115 %) is recommended. This 1,15 test-block flow factor accounts for the following:

- a) inaccuracies and/or potential increases in the APH leakage rate;
- b) inaccuracies in the FD fan's rating/sizing correlations;
- c) changes in the fuel composition(s) and/or excess-air percentages;
- d) a small tolerance for unforeseen air losses.

The test-block volumetric-flow-rate equivalent of the test-block mass flow rate should be based on the following:

- design ambient pressure (atmospheric pressure at site elevation above sea level);
- highest humidity;
- maximum inlet temperature.

F.7.3.3 Design static pressure

The FD fan's design static pressure should account for all the APH static pressure losses for the forced combustion air circuit; see F.8.6.2. The following forced-draught circuit components are typically included in the static pressure-loss tabulation:

- a) FD fan suction ducting (screen, air filter if applicable, silencer, suction stack, inlet flow meter if required, steam APH if applicable, ducting and fan transition);
- b) cold-air ducting from the FD fan to the APH (outlet transition, ducting and APH transition);
- c) air-side losses of the APH (main APH, air flow meter, and balancing damper, if applicable);
- d) hot-air ducting from APH to burners (outlet transition, ducting and burner plenum);
- e) burner static pressure loss at the maximum burner heat release;
- f) flow-control devices, control dampers, shut-off dampers if applicable, expansion joints, etc.

F.7.3.4 Test-block static pressure

The above design static pressure circuit should be multiplied by a test-block static pressure factor. The test-block static pressure factor (F_{tbsp}) of 1,32 (132 %) is recommended, corresponding to the recommended flow factor of 1,15 (115%).

For systems that apply a test-block flow factor different from that recommended in F.7.3.2 (115 %), the test-block static pressure factor should be calculated by squaring the test-block flow factor, i.e. $F_{\text{tbsp}} = (F_{\text{tbf}})^2$.

F.7.4 Induced-draught fan sizing

F.7.4.1 Design mass flow rate

The induced-draught fan's design mass flow rate is defined as the sum of the following:

- a) the flue gas mass flow rate at heater design conditions;
- b) the APH design leakage air mass flow rate (this will generally apply to regenerative APHs);
- c) the heater's leakage air flow rate (through casing joints, ducting joints, piping penetrations, etc.);
- d) dilution air if an SCR is used.

The design volumetric-flow-rate equivalent of the design mass flow rate should be based on the following:

- design flue gas molecular weight;
- design ambient pressure (atmospheric pressure at site elevation above sea level);
- design suction pressure at fan inlet;
- temperature of flue gases leaving the APH at design operation (fouled conditions) and air bypass conditions to avoid flue-gas dew-point corrosion.

F.7.4.2 Test-block flow rate

The above design mass flow rate should be multiplied by a test-block flow factor. For typical APH systems, a test-block flow factor of 1,20 (120 %) is recommended. This flow factor accounts for the following:

- a) inaccuracies and/or potential increases in the APH leakage rate;
- b) changes or fluctuations in the fuel composition(s) and/or excess-air percentages;
- c) an allowance tolerance for unforeseen air leakage;
- d) loss of heater efficiency due to fouling.

The test-block volumetric-flow-rate equivalent of the test-block mass flow rate should be based on all of the following design variables:

- flue gas molecular weight;
- design ambient pressure (atmospheric pressure at site elevation above sea level);
- test-block temperature of flue gases entering the induced-draught fan.

The test-block temperature is the temperature of the flue gases leaving the APH at design conditions plus a small temperature allowance. For typical APH applications, a temperature allowance of 28 °C (50 °F) is used.

F.7.4.3 Design static pressure

The ID fan's design static pressure should account for all the APH system static pressure or draught losses for the induced-draught and flue-gas-return circuit (see F.8.6.3 and F.8.6.4 for details). The design should also include losses due to fouling of the system's components. The following components are typically included:

- a) convection-section coil(s);
- b) hot flue gas ducting (ducting and transitions upstream and downstream of the APH);
- c) flue-gas side losses of APH and emission control equipment (SCR, ESP, CO reduction, and other equipment as applicable);
- d) ID-fan suction ducting (associated equipment, transitions, ducting, and fan inlet);
- e) cold flue gas ducting (fan transition, ducting and stack inlet);
- f) losses for other miscellaneous equipment such as dampers, expansion joints, etc.;
- g) stack effects (draught changes) due to elevation changes;
- h) draft at radiant section arch.

F.7.4.4 Test-block static pressure

The above design static pressure should be multiplied by a test-block static pressure factor. For typical APH systems, a test-block static pressure factor of 1,44 (144 %), is recommended, corresponding to the recommended flow factor of 1,20 (120 %).

For systems that apply a test-block flow factor different from that recommended in F.7.3.4 (115 %), the test-block static pressure factor, F_{tbSP} , should be calculated by squaring the test-block flow factor [i.e. $F_{\text{tbSP}} = (F_{\text{tbF}})^2$].

F.7.5 Retrofits

Where APH systems are added to existing fired-heater installations, flexibility in designing the most economical system is usually limited. The system designer shall work closely with the owner/user to achieve optimum results. To compensate for the possibility of greater leakage in an existing fired heater, increases in minimum design flow requirements should be considered.

F.8 Ductwork design and analysis

F.8.1 Introduction

Clause F.8 is intended to provide engineering procedures for the design and analysis of complex APH systems with regard to pressure drops and pressure profiles. It has been developed according to, and based on, commonly used correlations and procedures. While the individual correlations are relatively simple, their cumulative application to entire APH systems can become complicated. Comments on some specific applications have been included to provide guidance. Clause F.8 is not intended as a primer on fluid flow; see the references in F.8.9 for additional information.

The basic assumption is that all of the pertinent design data such as flows, temperatures and pressure drops for all components are available for integration into the APH system design. These data should be compiled in a usable form (see Figure F.5 as an example). Additionally, it is necessary to know or to lay out the spatial relationships between the basic pieces of equipment when developing the duct design.

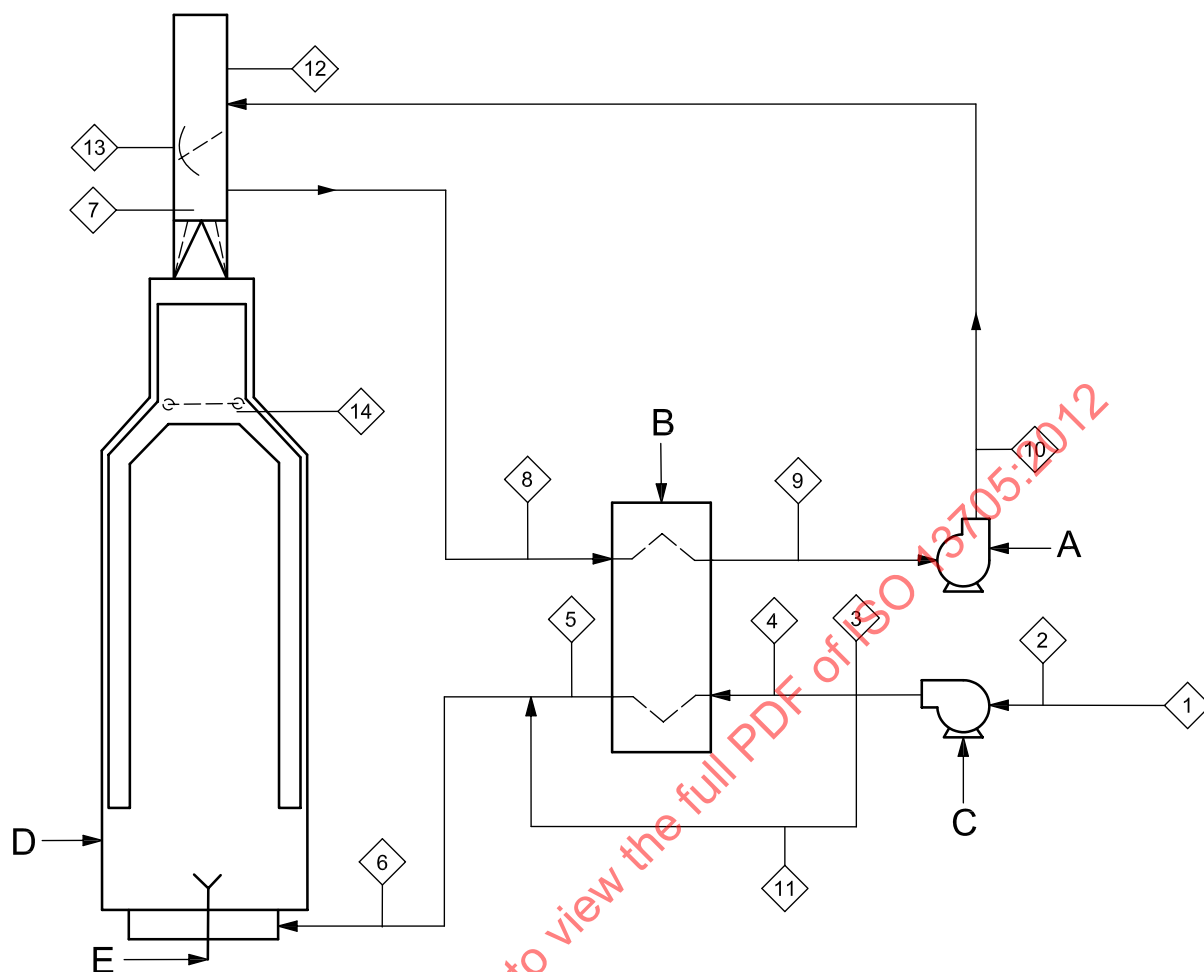
F.8.2 Velocity guidelines

In the absence of project-specific values, the following design parameters should be used:

- a) straight duct velocity should be limited to 15 m/s (50 ft/s) at 100 % of design end-of-run conditions;
- b) turns or tee velocity should be limited to 15 m/s (50 ft/s) at 100 % of design end-of-run conditions;
- c) burner air-supply duct velocity should be based on the velocity head in these ducts equal to a maximum of 10 % of the burner-air side pressure drop. The resulting velocities should be no more than:
 - 1) 8 m/s (25 ft/s) for forced or balanced-draught systems with natural-draught capability
 - 2) 9 m/s (30 ft/s) for forced or balanced-draught systems without natural-draught capability.

These guidelines can be altered to reflect the system's physical constraints and target efficiency. Lower velocities may be justified by lower power requirements.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012

**Key**

A induced-draught fan

C forced-draught fan

E fuel

B exchanger

D furnace

Point number	Flow rate kg/h (lb/h)	Temperature C (°F)	Pressure mm H ₂ O (in H ₂ O)
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			

Figure F.6 — System work sheet for design and/or analysis

F.8.3 Friction factor calculations

F.8.3.1 General

Before performing any of the pressure-drop calculations contained in F.8.4, the flow elements' friction factors shall be obtained.

NOTE The correlations of F.8.4 are predicated on the use of Moody friction factors, not Fanning friction factors. The Moody friction factors for lined and unlined ducts can be read from Figure F.7. For the calculation of the Reynolds number (Re) in either SI or USC units, see F.8.3.2.

F.8.3.2 Reynolds number

The Reynolds number, Re , is calculated in SI units as given in Equation (F.1) or (F.2):

$$Re = \rho \cdot v \cdot d / \mu \quad (F.1)$$

or

$$Re = q_{m,a} \cdot d / \mu \quad (F.2)$$

where

d is the duct inside diameter, in millimetres;

ρ is the flow density, in kilograms per cubic metre (kg/m^3);

v is the linear velocity, in metres per second;

μ is the viscosity, in millipascal seconds ($\text{mPa}\cdot\text{s}$);

$q_{m,a}$ is the areic mass flow rate, in kilograms per square metre per second ($\text{kg/m}^2\cdot\text{s}$).

The Reynolds number, Re , is calculated in USC units as given in Equation (F.3) or (F.4):

$$Re = 123,9 \times \rho \cdot v \cdot d / \mu \quad (F.3)$$

or

$$Re = 123,9 \times q_{m,a} \cdot d / \mu \quad (F.4)$$

where

d is the duct inside diameter, in inches;

ρ is the flow density, in pounds per cubic foot (lb/ft^3);

v is the linear velocity, in feet per second (ft/s);

μ is the viscosity, in centipoise (cP);

$q_{m,a}$ is the areic mass flow rate, in pounds per square foot per second ($\text{lb/ft}^2\cdot\text{s}$).

NOTE "Areic" is the SI term for "per unit area", in this case "mass flow rate per unit area".

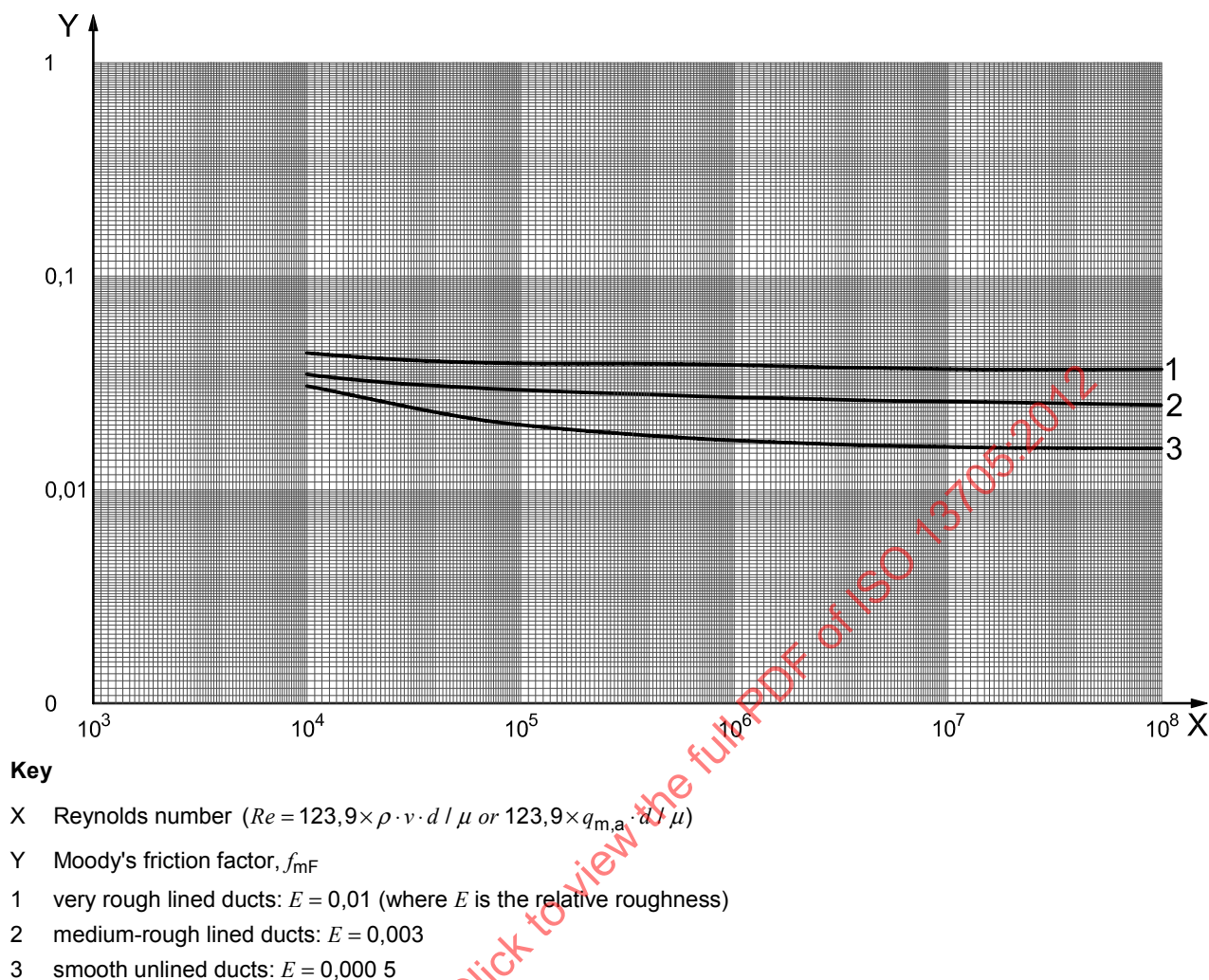


Figure F.7 — Moody's friction factor versus Reynolds number

F.8.3.3 Flue gas and air viscosity

If the viscosities, μ , of the combustion air and/or flue gas streams are not known at all pertinent locations within the system, μ , expressed in millipascal seconds (mPa·s), and μ , expressed in centipoises (cP), may be calculated using the generalized Equations (F.5) and (F.6), respectively, for both air and flue gas without introducing any significant error into the pressure-drop calculations:

$$\mu = 0,0162 (T/255,6)^{0,691} \quad (\text{F.5})$$

where T is the absolute temperature, in kelvins (K).

$$\mu = 0,0162 (T/460)^{0,691} \quad (\text{F.6})$$

where T is the absolute temperature, in degrees Rankine ($^{\circ}\text{R}$)¹⁰.

¹⁰ Rankine is a deprecated unit.

F.8.4 Pressure drop calculations

F.8.4.1 General

The following equations and figures are a synopsis of the large quantity of available literature on the subject of fluid flow. This material has been used successfully in the design of duct systems and it is thought to be particularly useful in that type of calculation. Two formats of each correlation are presented: linear velocity basis and mass velocity basis. Use of either format remains the preference of the designer as both formats produce similar results.

F.8.4.2 Pressure drop in a straight duct

F.8.4.2.1 Pressure drop

The correlations in Equation (F.7) to Equation (F.11) may be applied to straight ducts with or without internal refractory linings. Additionally, these correlations can be used to calculate fitting losses for any fitting with a hydraulic length. For example, Figure F.9 provides the equivalent lengths of various physical configurations of cylindrical mitred elbows. The mitred elbow's hydraulic length that is used in Equations (F.7) to Equation (F.11) can be obtained by multiplying the elbow's equivalent lengths (from Figure F.9) by its flow diameter.

The pressure drop per 100 m, $\Delta P_{SI}/100$, expressed in millimetres of water column (mm H₂O), is given by Equation (F.7) and Equation (F.8):

$$\Delta P_{SI} / 100 = (5,098 \times 10^3) f_{mF} \cdot \rho \cdot v^2 / d \quad (F.7)$$

$$\Delta P_{SI} / 100 = (5,098 \times 10^3) f_{mF} \cdot q_{m,a}^2 / \rho \cdot d \quad (F.8)$$

where

- f_{mF} is Moody's friction factor (see Figure F.7);
- ρ is the flowing bulk density, in kilograms per cubic metre;
- v is the linear velocity, in metres per second;
- $q_{m,a}$ is the areic mass flowrate, in kilograms per square metre per second;
- d is the duct inside diameter, in millimetres.

The pressure drop per 100 ft, $\Delta P_{USC}/100$, expressed in inches of water column (in H₂O), is given by Equations (F.9) and (F.10):

$$\Delta P_{USC} / 100 = (3,587) f_{mF} \cdot \rho \cdot v^2 / d \quad (F.9)$$

$$\Delta P_{USC} / 100 = (3,587) f_{mF} \cdot q_{m,a}^2 / \rho \cdot d \quad (F.10)$$

where

- f_{mF} is Moody's friction factor (see Figure F.7);
- ρ is the flow density, in pounds per cubic foot;
- v is the linear velocity, in feet per second;
- $q_{m,a}$ is the areic mass flow rate, in pounds-mass per square foot per second;
- d is the duct inside diameter, in inches.

F.8.4.2.2 Hydraulic mean diameter

Equation (F.1) through Equation (F.4) and Equation (F.7) through Equation (F.10) employ a diameter dimension, d , and hence are applicable to round ducts. To use these equations for rectangular ducts, an equivalent circular-duct diameter, also referred to as the hydraulic mean diameter, needs to be calculated. A useful correlation, in SI or USC units, for the hydraulic mean diameter, d_e , expressed in millimetres (inches), is given in Equation (F.11):

$$d_e = 2ab/(a + b) \quad (\text{F.11})$$

where

a is the length of one side of a rectangle, expressed in millimetres (inches);

b is the length of the adjacent side of the rectangle, expressed in millimetres (inches).

NOTE When using d in Equation (F.11), use the actual velocity calculated for the rectangular duct.

F.8.4.3 Pressure drop estimation in straight ducts

By making several assumptions, the calculation of pressure drop in straight ducts can be reduced to a simplifying chart, presented for convenience as Figure F.8. Any error introduced is not significant for most cases.

NOTE When the pressure drop, ΔP , as given in Equation (F.12), is determined from Figure F.8 using a hydraulic mean diameter, it is necessary to apply the correlation shown on the curve rather than the one in Equation (F.11).

$$\Delta P = \Delta P_1 \cdot C_1 \cdot C_2 \quad (\text{F.12})$$

where

ΔP is the corrected pressure drop per 30 linear m (100 linear ft), expressed in mm H₂O (in H₂O);

ΔP_1 is the uncorrected pressure drop taken from Figure F.8 a);

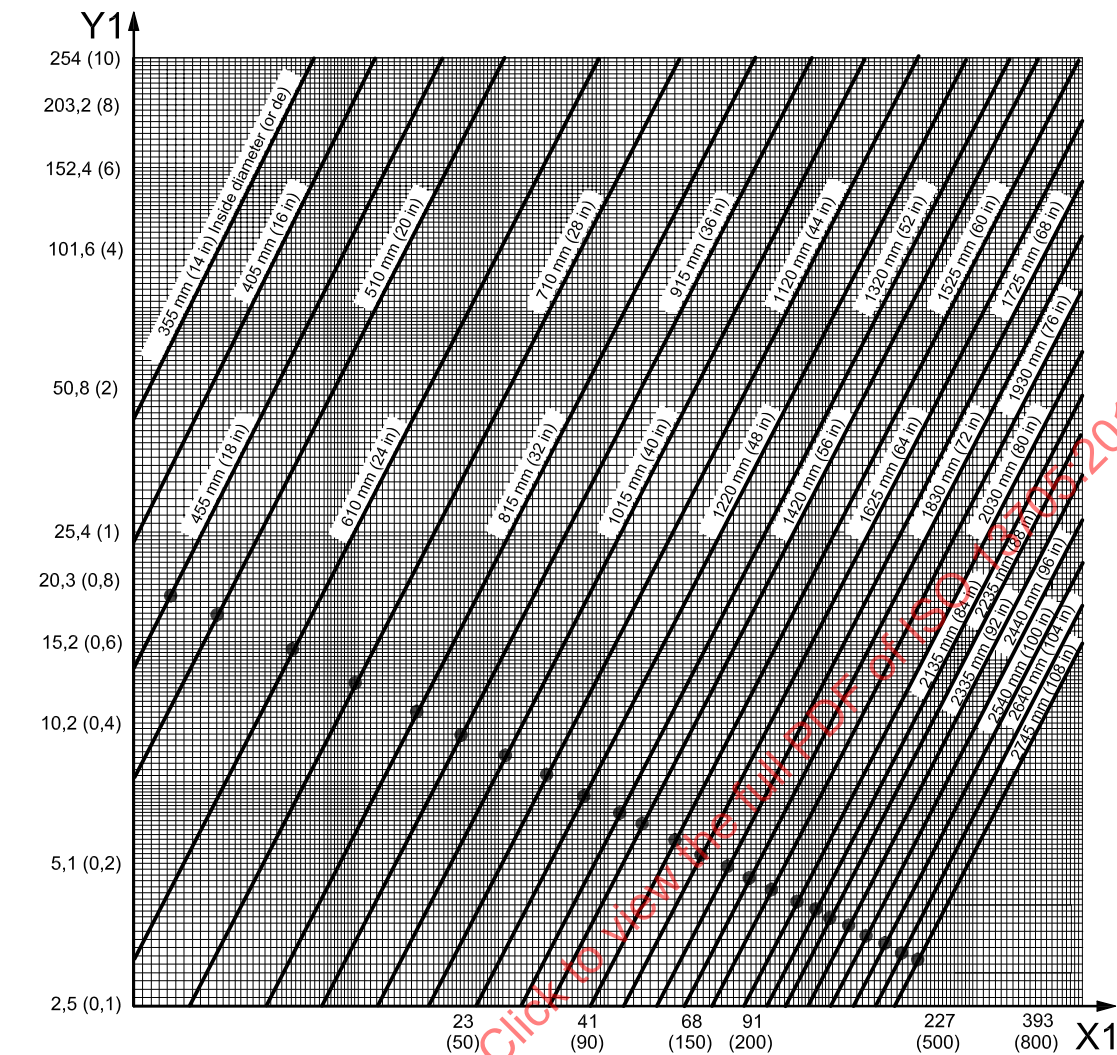
C_1 is a pressure-drop correction factor for temperature taken from Figure F.8 b);

C_2 is a roughness correction factor, as follows:

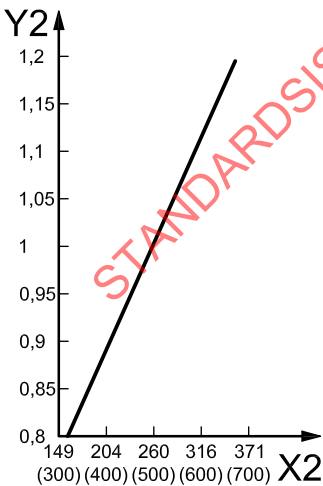
— very rough (e.g. brick):	1,0
— medium-rough (e.g. castable refractory):	0,68
— smooth (e.g. unlined steel):	0,45

The calculation for rectangular ducts is as given in Equation (F.13):

$$d_e = \frac{1,3[(a + b) \cdot 0,25]}{(a \times b) \cdot 0,65} \quad (\text{F.13})$$



a) Uncorrected pressure drop



b) Temperature correction factor

Key

- X1 flue gas mass flow rate, 10³ kg/h (10² lb-m/h)
- Y1 pressure drop, Δp_1 , expressed as millimetres H₂O per 30 linear m (inches H₂O per 100 linear ft)
- X2 flue gas temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
- Y2 pressure-drop correction, C_1

NOTE 1 The flue gas relative molecular mass is 28.

NOTE 2 The gauge pressure in the duct is 100 kPa (14.5 psi).

NOTE 3 The bullet points in the figure coincide with a flue gas velocity of 15 m/s (50 ft/s).

Figure F.8 — Duct pressure drop versus mass flow

F.8.4.4 Pressure drop in fittings and changes in cross-section

The pressure drop, Δp , of formed round elbows, various fittings, shape changes and flow disturbances can be calculated with the loss coefficients provided in Table F.2 and Equations (F.14) and (F.15) for SI units, with Δp expressed in millimetres of water column (mm H₂O), and Equations (F.16) and (F.17) for USC units with Δp expressed in inches of water column (in H₂O).

In SI units:

$$\Delta p = C(5,102 \times 10^{-2}) \rho \cdot v^2 \quad (\text{F.14})$$

or

$$\Delta p = C(5,102 \times 10^{-2}) q_{m,a}^2 / \rho \quad (\text{F.15})$$

where

C is the fitting loss coefficient from Table F.2;

ρ is the flowing bulk density, in kilograms per cubic metre;

v is the linear velocity, in metres per second;

$q_{m,a}$ is the areic mass flow rate, in kilograms per square metre per second.

In USC units:

$$\Delta p = C(2,989 \times 10^{-3}) \rho \cdot v^2 \quad (\text{F.16})$$

or

$$\Delta p = C(2,989 \times 10^{-3}) q_{m,a}^2 / \rho \quad (\text{F.17})$$

where

C is the fitting loss coefficient from Table F.2;

ρ is the flow density, in pounds per cubic foot;

v is the linear velocity, in feet per second;

$q_{m,a}$ is the areic mass flow rate, in pounds-mass per square foot per second;

As previously noted in F.8.4.2, the pressure drop of multiple-piece mitred elbows can be calculated using Equations (F.7) through (F.10) and the equivalent lengths provided. The hydraulic length of a mitred elbow can be obtained by simply multiplying the equivalent length from Figure F.9 by the elbow's flow diameter. Consideration should be given to the use of turning or flow-straightening vanes to improve the flow characteristics of high-pressure-drop fittings. Additional information on this subject can be found in the references cited in F.8.9.

Table F.2 — Loss coefficients for common fittings

Fitting type	Fitting illustration	Dimensional condition	Loss coefficient	<i>L/D</i> or <i>L/W</i>
Elbow of <i>N</i> degree turn (rectangular or round)		No vanes	<i>N</i> /90 times the value for a similar 90° elbow	
90° round section elbow		Mitre ^a	1,30	65
		<i>R/D</i> = 0,5	0,90	45
		<i>R/D</i> = 1,0	0,33	17
		<i>R/D</i> = 1,5	0,24	12
		<i>R/D</i> = 2,0	0,19	10
90° rectangular section elbow		Mitre, <i>H/W</i> = 0,25	1,25	25
		<i>R/W</i> = 0,5	1,25	25
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,0	0,37	7
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,5	0,19	4
		Mitre <i>H/W</i> = 0,5	1,47	49
		<i>R/W</i> = 0,5	1,10	40
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,0	0,28	9
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,5	0,13	4
		Mitre <i>H/W</i> = 1,0	1,50	75
		<i>R/W</i> = 0,5	1,00	50
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,0	0,22	11
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,5	0,09	4,5
90° mitre elbow with vanes ^a		Mitre <i>H/W</i> = 4,0	1,35	110
		<i>R/W</i> = 0,5	0,96	85
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,0	0,19	17
		<i>R/W</i> = 1,5	0,07	6
90° mitre elbow with vanes ^a			<i>C</i> = 0,1 to 0,25	
Mitred tee with vanes		Equal to an equivalent elbow (90°) (base loss on the entering velocity)		
Formed tee		Equal to an equivalent elbow (90°) (base loss on the entering velocity)		
Sudden contraction		<i>A</i> ₂ / <i>A</i> ₁ = 0,2	0,32	
		<i>A</i> ₂ / <i>A</i> ₁ = 0,4	0,25	
		<i>A</i> ₂ / <i>A</i> ₁ = 0,6	0,16	
		<i>A</i> ₂ / <i>A</i> ₁ = 0,8	0,06	

Table F.2 (continued)

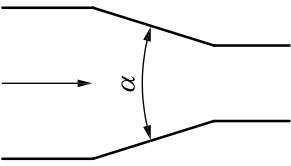
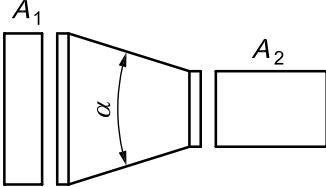
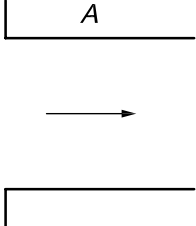
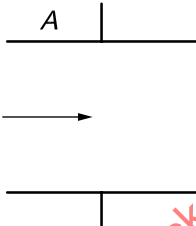
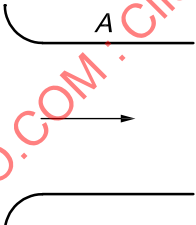
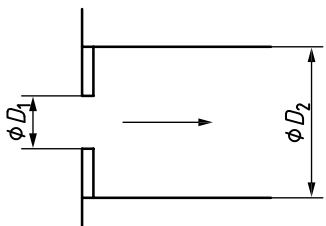
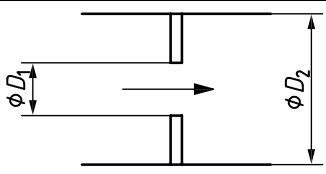
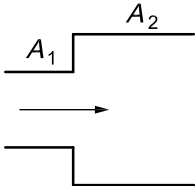
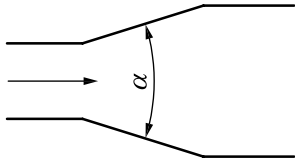
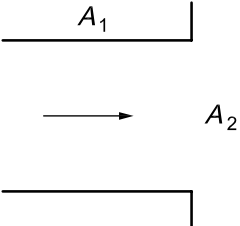
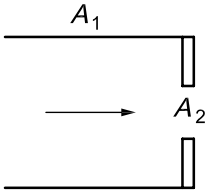
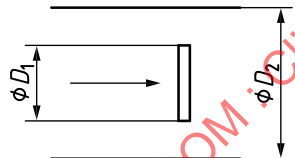
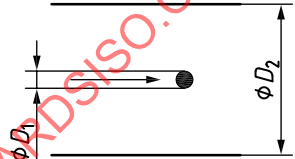
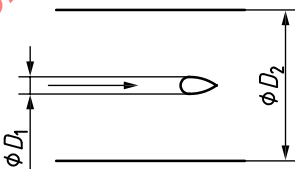
Fitting type	Fitting illustration	Dimensional condition	Loss coefficient based on velocity in smaller area
Gradual contraction		$\alpha = 30^\circ$ $\alpha = 45^\circ$ $\alpha = 60^\circ$	0,02 0,04 0,07
Slight contraction, change of axis		$A_1 \cong A_2$ $\alpha \leq 14^\circ$	0,15
Flanged entrance			0,34
Entrance to larger duct			0,85
Bell or formed entrance			0,03
Square-edged orifice at entrance		$D_1/D_2 = 0,2$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,4$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,6$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,8$	1,90 1,39 0,96 0,61
Square-edged orifice in duct ^b		$D_1/D_2 = 0,2$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,4$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,6$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,8$	1,86 1,21 0,64 0,20

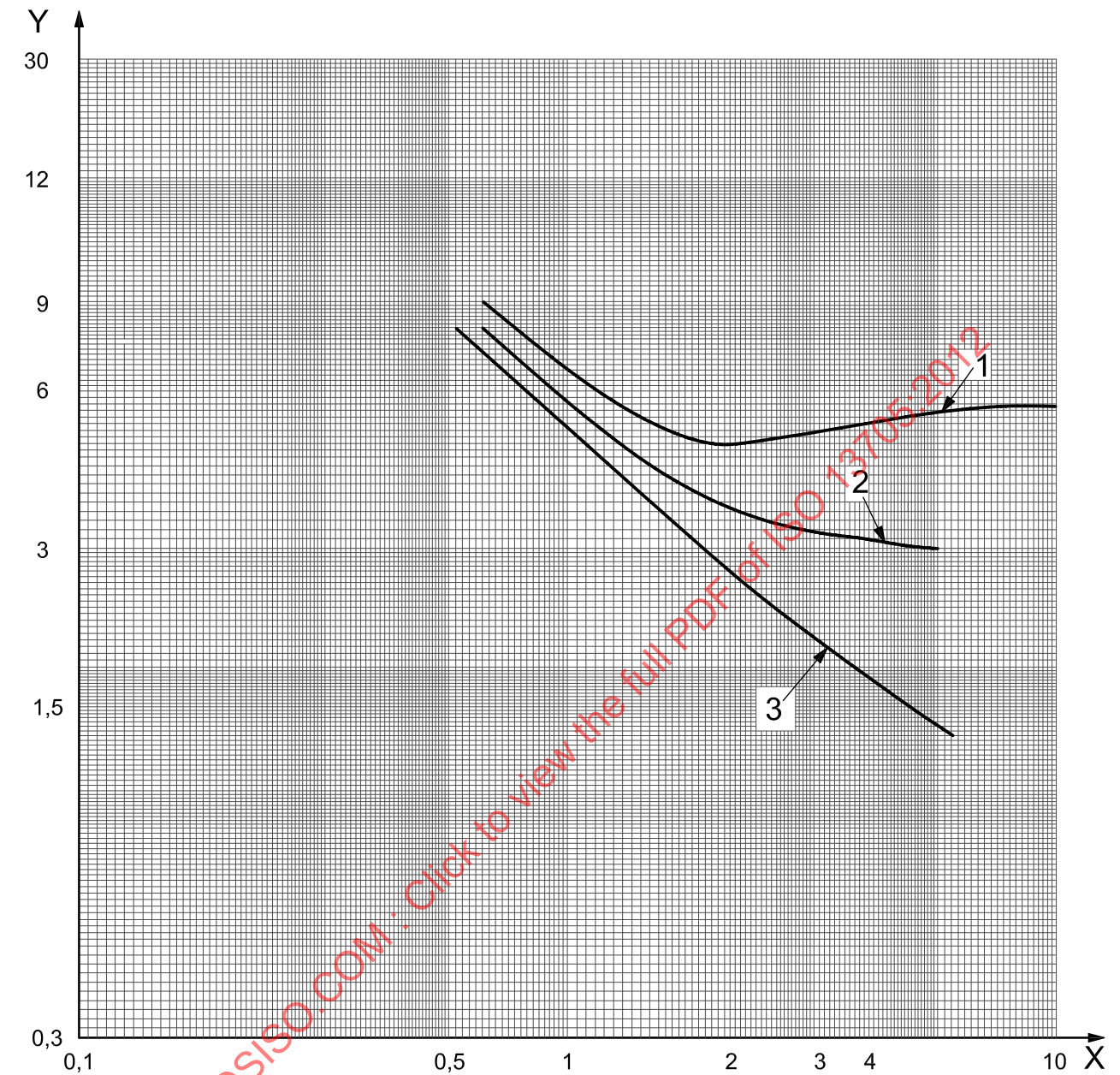
Table F.2 (continued)

Fitting type	Fitting illustration	Dimensional condition	Loss coefficient based on velocity in smaller area
Sudden enlargement		$A_1/A_2 = 0,1$ $A_1/A_2 = 0,3$ $A_1/A_2 = 0,6$ $A_1/A_2 = 0,9$	0,81 0,49 0,16 0,01
Gradual enlargement		$\alpha = 5^\circ$ $\alpha = 10^\circ$ $\alpha = 20^\circ$ $\alpha = 30^\circ$ $\alpha = 40^\circ$	0,17 0,28 0,45 0,59 0,73
Sudden exit		$A_1/A_2 \cong 0$	1,0
Square-edged orifice at exit		$A_2/A_1 = 0,2$ $A_2/A_1 = 0,4$ $A_2/A_1 = 0,6$ $A_2/A_1 = 0,8$	2,44 2,26 1,96 1,54
Bar in duct		$D_1/D_2 = 0,10$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,25$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,50$	0,7 1,4 4,0
Pipe or rod in duct		$D_1/D_2 = 0,10$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,25$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,50$	0,2 0,55 2,0
Streamlined object in duct		$D_1/D_2 = 0,10$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,25$ $D_1/D_2 = 0,50$	0,07 0,23 0,90

NOTE A and D represent the cross-sectional area and the diameter, respectively, of the relevant section of the fitting.

a This value is for a two-piece mitre. For three-, four- or five-piece mitres, see Figure F.9.

b For permanent loss in venturis, use a loss coefficient of 0,05 based on throat area.

**Key**X radius ratio, R/D Y equivalent length, L/D

1 3-piece elbow

2 4-piece elbow

3 5-(or more) piece elbow

Figure F.9 — Equivalent lengths for mitred elbows of round cross-section

F.8.4.5 Pressure drop in branch connections

Velocity head, $H_{v,i}$ at location i , expressed in millimetres of water column (mm H₂O), and the corresponding pressure-drop values for the flow-through manifold branch and run connections can be calculated in SI units as given in Equations (F.18) and F.19):

$$H_{v,i} = (5,102 \times 10^{-2}) \rho \cdot v_i^2 \quad (\text{F.18})$$

or

$$H_{v,i} = (5,102 \times 10^{-2}) q_{m,a,i} / \rho \quad (\text{F.19})$$

where

- v_i is the linear velocity at location i , expressed in metres per second;
- ρ is the flowing bulk density, in kilograms per cubic metre (kg/m³);
- $q_{m,a,i}$ is the linear velocity at location i , expressed in kilograms per square metre per second;
- i equals 1 for an upstream location, 2 for a downstream location and 3 for a branch location; see Figures F.10 and F.11.

Velocity head, $H_{v,i}$ at location i , expressed in inches of water column (in H₂O), and the corresponding pressure-drop values for the flow-through manifold branch and run connections can be calculated in USC units as given in Equations (F.20) and F.21):

$$H_{v,i} = (2,989 \times 10^{-3}) \rho \cdot v_i^2 \quad (\text{F.20})$$

or

$$H_{v,i} = (2,989 \times 10^{-3}) q_{m,a,i} / \rho \quad (\text{F.21})$$

where

- v_i is the linear velocity at location i , expressed in feet per second;
- ρ is the flowing bulk density, expressed in pounds-mass per cubic foot;
- $q_{m,a,i}$ is the linear velocity at location i , expressed in pounds per square foot per second;
- i equals 1 for an upstream location, 2 for a downstream location and 3 for a branch location; see Figures F.10 and F.11.

Upon obtaining the velocity-head figures at the necessary locations, the run- or branch-connection pressure drop can then be calculated, respectively, with Equations (F.22) and (F.23).

The pressure drop, $\Delta P_{1,2}$, in the run location 1 to 2, expressed in mm H₂O (in H₂O), is given by Equation (F.22) in SI or USC units:

$$\Delta P_{1,2} = C_{r,1,2} (H_{v,1} - H_{v,2}) \quad (\text{F.22})$$

where

$C_{r,1,2}$ is the run-loss coefficient, from location 1 to 2, dimensionless;

NOTE A typical value is 0,50 for the net value of loss and regain, but this could be lower for a well-designed branch connection.

$H_{v,1}$ and $H_{v,2}$ are the velocity heads at locations 1 and 2, respectively, expressed in mm H₂O (in H₂O).

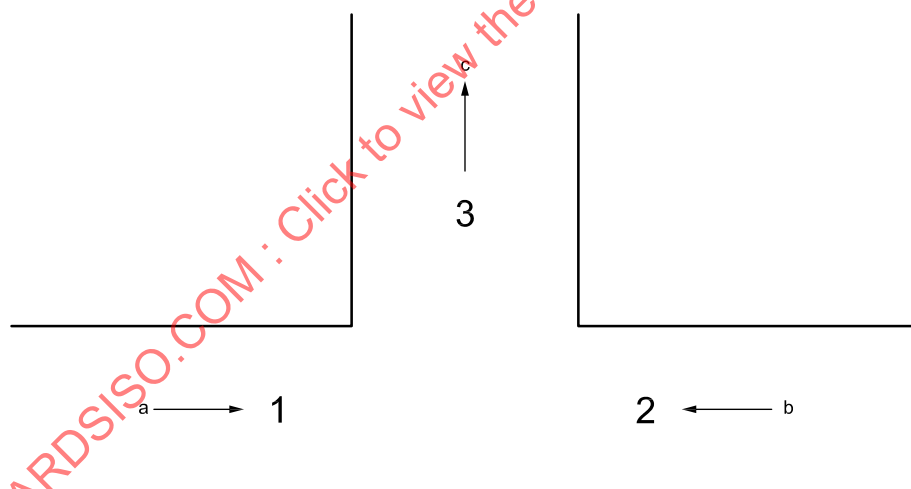
The pressure drop, $\Delta P_{1,3}$, into branch, location 1 to 3, expressed in mm H₂O (in H₂O), is given by Equation (F.23) in SI or USC units:

$$\Delta P_{1,3} = H_{v,1} (C_{b,1,3} - 1) + H_{v,3} \quad (\text{F.23})$$

where

$H_{v,1}$ and $H_{v,3}$ are the velocity heads, at locations 1 and 3, respectively, expressed in mm H₂O (in H₂O);

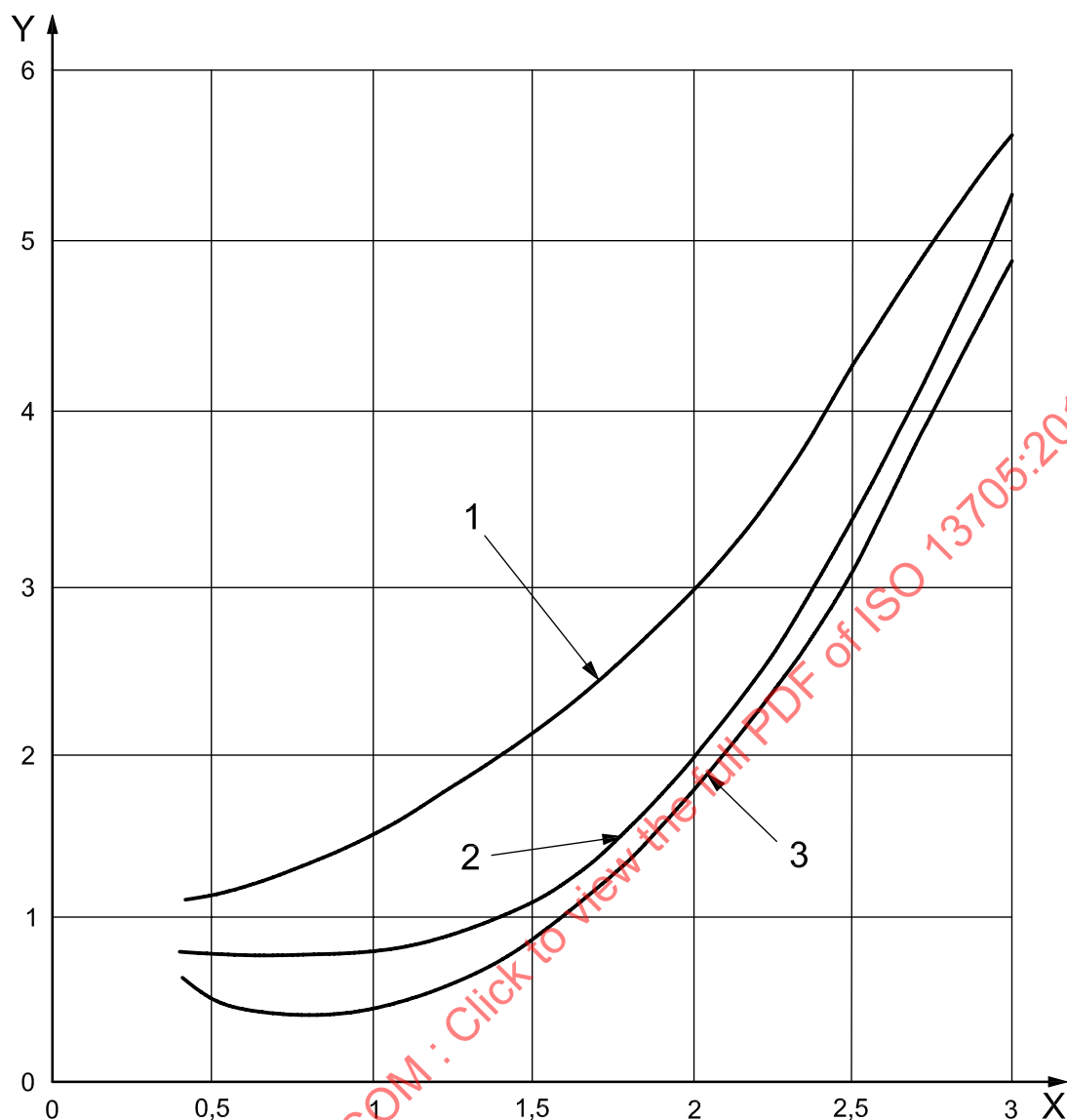
$C_{b,1,3}$ is the branch loss coefficient (see Figures F.9 and F.10), from location 1 to 3, dimensionless.



Key

- 1 inlet stream 1
- 2 inlet stream 2
- 3 combined stream in branch
- a v_1 or $q_{m,a,1}$
- b v_2 or $q_{m,a,2}$
- c v_3 or $q_{m,a,3}$

Figure F.10 — Location of pressure-measuring points 1, 2 and 3



Key

X branch to main velocity ratio, v_3/v_1

Y branch loss coefficient, C_b , based on upstream main velocity

1 90° take-off

2 60° take-off

3 45° take-off

Figure F.11 — Branch loss coefficients

F.8.5 Differential pressure (draught) resulting from temperature differential

The draught or differential pressure, ΔP , calculated in SI units and expressed in mm H₂O, is given by Equation (F.24):

$$\Delta P = 0,120\ 3 \times P_a [(29/T_a) - (M_r/T_g)] (l_2 - l_1) \quad (\text{F.24})$$

where

- P_a is the atmospheric absolute pressure at site grade, expressed in kilopascals;
- T_a is the absolute temperature of ambient air, expressed in kelvins;
- T_g is the temperature of flue gas or air in duct, expressed in kelvins;
- M_r is the relative molecular mass of the flue gas, expressed in kilograms per kilogram-mole;
- l_1 is the elevation of point 1 above grade, expressed in metres;
- l_2 is the elevation of point 2 above grade, expressed in metres.

The draught or differential pressure, ΔP , calculated in USC units and expressed in H₂O is given by Equation (F.25):

$$\Delta P = 0,017\ 9 \times P_a [(29/T_a) - (M_r/T_g)] (l_2 - l_1) \quad (\text{F.25})$$

where

- P_a is the atmospheric absolute pressure at site grade, expressed in pounds per square inch;
- T_a is the absolute temperature of ambient air, expressed in degrees Rankine;
- T_g is the temperature of flue gas or air in duct, expressed in degrees Rankine;
- M_r is the relative molecular mass of the flue gas, expressed in pounds per pound-mole;
- l_1 is the elevation of point 1 above grade, expressed in feet;
- l_2 is the elevation of point 2 above grade, expressed in feet.

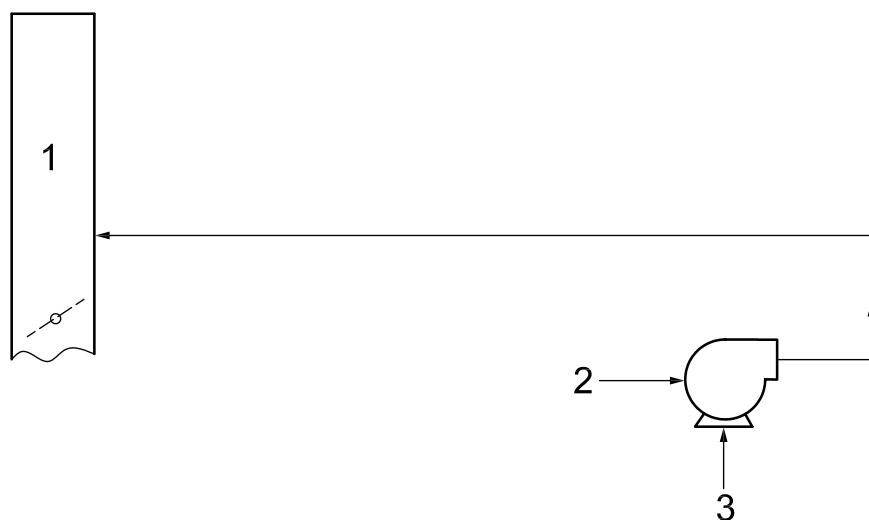
F.8.6 System zones

F.8.6.1 General

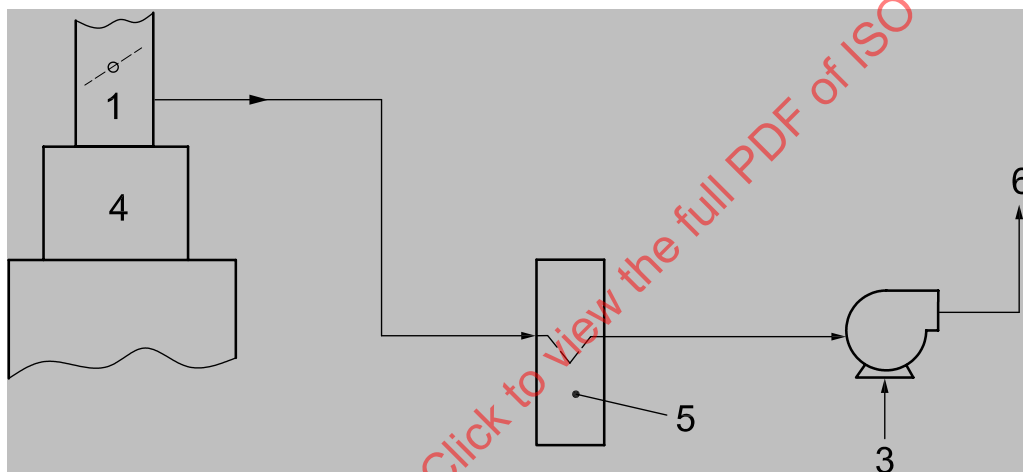
The duct zones of typical APH systems are shown in Figure F.12. The accuracy of flow calculations will be based on the accurate characterization of the flows, temperatures, pressure drops, and configuration of the APH system.

The following are two commonly overlooked sources of flow which add to the total fan flow rate.

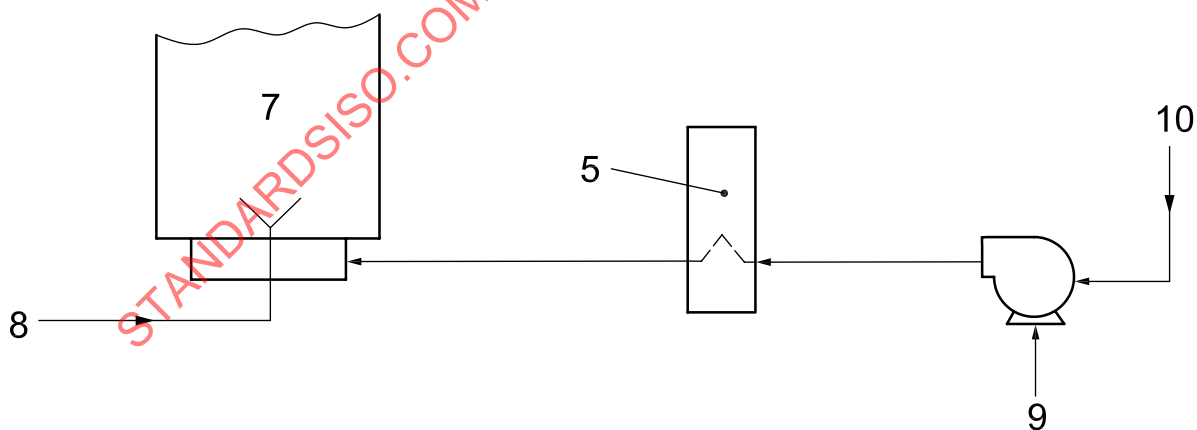
- a) Cold-to-hot flue gas leakage across the stack-isolation damper. Such leakage recycles flue gas through the APH, reducing its efficiency. If this flow is large, it can overload the ID fan.
- b) Air leakage into the flue gas stream in regenerative and recuperative APHs. Typically, regenerative exchangers in good condition experience 5 % to 15 % air leakage rates. Leakage rates are higher if the exchanger is in need of maintenance. Recuperative exchangers typically have less than 1,0 % leakage rates. If there is any air leakage across the APH, it is necessary to add it to the cold-flue gas flow to determine the induced-draught fan's flow rate.



a) Typical induced-draught zone (induced-draught blower to top of stack)



b) Typical induced-draught zone (furnace to induced-draught blower)



c) Typical forced-air zone

Key

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 stack with damper | 5 APH | 8 fuel |
| 2 from APH | 6 to stack | 9 forced-draught fan |
| 3 induced-draught blower | 7 furnace plenum | 10 inlet trunk or silencer |
| 4 furnace convection section | | |

Figure F.12 — Duct zones

F.8.6.2 Forced-draught zone

The forced-draught zone usually consists of the following: inlet stack, suction ducting, forced-draught fan, cold-air ducting, preheater, hot-air ducting, burner plenum and burners. Using the ends of this zone (e.g. the burner discharge and suction-stack inlet) as the anchor points, the operating pressure profile within the FD zone can be described as follows.

- a) The pressure at the burner discharge, inside the fired heater, is the draught at the floor (i.e. the arch draught plus the radiant-section draught). It is necessary to add the pressure drop across the burner to this floor-draught pressure (whether it be negative or positive) to obtain the burner-plenum or burner-duct pressure.
- b) If appropriate, the pressure losses of the feeder ducts (i.e. branch connections) should be added to the burner plenum pressure to arrive at the hot-combustion-air-duct terminus pressure.
- c) As appropriate, the pressure losses of the hot-combustion-air ducting should be added to the hot-air-duct terminus pressure to arrive at the preheater's hot-air outlet pressure.
- d) As appropriate, an allowance should be made for any dampers and/or flow measurement devices in the hot-combustion-air ducting.
- e) The preheater's air-side pressure drop should be added to the preheater's outlet pressure to arrive at the preheater's inlet pressure.
- f) The pressure losses of the fan discharge ducting should be added to the preheater's inlet pressure to arrive at an FD-fan discharge pressure.
- g) The pressure losses through the suction stack, silencer and suction ducting should be subtracted from the atmospheric pressure to obtain the FD fan's suction pressure.
- h) By definition, the FD fan's static pressure rise is the FD fan's discharge pressure minus its suction pressure.

Clearly, the above overview is conceptual and the pressure profile of each zone requires a specific analysis that accounts for the unique features of the system.

F.8.6.3 Induced-draught zone

The elements in this zone are typically the following: the convection section, uptake ducts, stack breeching, lower-stack section, isolation damper, hot-flue-gas ducting, APH, suction ducting, induced-draught fan, cold-flue gas ducting and stack. All pressures upstream of the ID fan are increasingly negative. Pressures downstream of the ID fan may be slightly positive (i.e. above atmospheric pressure) or slightly negative depending on the stack effect (if applicable). Using the ends of this zone (e.g. the arch and ID-fan inlet flange) as the anchor points, the operating-pressure profile within the ID zone can be described as follows.

- a) The gauge pressure at the arch is typically specified to be $-2,5 \text{ mm H}_2\text{O}$ ($-0,10 \text{ in H}_2\text{O}$).
- b) The pressure drop of the convection section, and any supplemental heat-recovery coils, should be subtracted from the arch pressure to arrive at the breeching pressure.
- c) The pressure drop of the stack transition, uptake ducts and stack plenum (as appropriate) should be subtracted from the breeching pressure to arrive at the stack-base pressure.
- d) The pressure losses of the lower stack, hot-flue ducts and preheater inlet transition should be subtracted from the stack-base pressure to arrive at the preheater inlet pressure.
- e) The pressure drop of the preheater should be subtracted from the inlet pressure to arrive at the preheater outlet pressure.
- f) The pressure drop of the preheater-outlet transition and suction ducting should be subtracted from the preheater outlet pressure to obtain the ID-fan suction pressure.

F.8.6.4 Flue gas-return zone (induced-draught fan to top of stack)

The elements in this zone are the induced-draught fan, the cold-flue-gas ducting and the upper stack. It should be noted that a separate stack can be utilized so that the flue gas is not returned to the original stack. Using the ends of this zone (e.g. the stack-discharge point and ID-fan inlet flange) as the anchor points, the operating pressure profile within this zone can be described as follows.

- a) The pressure drop of the upper stack, cold-flue-gas ducting and the ID-fan discharge ducting should be added to atmospheric pressure to arrive at the ID fan's discharge pressure.
- b) By definition, the ID fan's static pressure rise is the ID fan's discharge pressure minus its suction pressure.

F.8.7 Draught effects

Even though they are commonly considered during stack-draught calculations, draught effects are present for any system involving both a temperature differential (internal temperature vs. ambient temperature) and changes in elevation. This draught effect can produce either positive or negative pressure changes depending on elevation changes and conditions. All duct calculations should account for the differential pressures resulting from temperature differences, commonly known as draught effect. Draught effects should be accounted for in determining net pressure losses or gains in any system.

Refer to F.8.5 for the recommended methodology that may be used to calculate draught effect.

F.8.8 Dual-draught systems

In those systems with burners intended to be operated on natural draught as well as in the forced- or induced-draught mode, the sizing and arranging of ducts, plenums and air-door components shall accommodate both types of operations. It is necessary that the heater's draught be adequate to overcome the friction losses of the system between the burner and the atmosphere. To facilitate swift conversion to natural draught, it is common practice to provide "natural-draught air doors" on, or adjacent to, the burner plenum. These doors fail open as appropriate to provide a local source of ambient combustion air for the heater.

F.8.9 Additional references

References [39] to [43] provide additional information.

F.9 Major component design guidelines

F.9.1 Introduction

Clause F.9 covers the design and fabrication of the various APH system components that are not covered elsewhere in this International Standard. The preferred choice of materials, where applicable, is also included.

F.9.2 Ductwork

F.9.2.1 General

The ductwork requirements for APH systems can be separated into two classifications: flue gas ductwork and combustion air ductwork. The mechanical and structural design principles are the same for both. General recommended design requirements are the following:

- a) ducts should be gas-tight;
- b) field joints should be flange-and-gasket or seal-welded construction;
- c) ductwork should permit replacement of components (e.g. dampers, blowers, heat exchangers and expansion joints);

- d) ductwork should provide uniform fluid flow distribution into the APH exchanger;
- e) ductwork should provide uniform fluid flow distribution in the SCR reactor (if present).

Failure to achieve a uniform velocity distribution can reduce the performance of preheaters, fans, and SCRs. Internal duct bracing, if used, should not be installed within three diameters of equipment since disruption or restriction of the flow can occur. Use of turning vanes or straightening vanes should be considered to ensure uniform distribution.

In multiple burner installations, combustion air ductwork design should promote even distribution of air to the burners. Air distribution ductwork should be designed for constant velocity, so that the variance in the static and velocity pressure components to each burner is minimized. The variance in air flow to any one burner should be no greater than $\pm 5\%$ from the average. When NO_x emissions must be minimized, the variance should be $\pm 2,5\%$ when operating at 10 % excess air and normal heat release.

The burners should account for 90 % of the total air side pressure drop from the inlet of the combustion air distribution duct through the burners.

The purchaser shall specify if modelling of combustion air ductwork is required in order to demonstrate even distribution of air to the burners. This modelling may include computational fluid dynamics or cold-flow modelling.

F.9.2.2 Cross-section

The choice of round or rectangular duct designs is based on fluid flow requirements. Where space permits and branch transitions are not critical in maintaining even flow distribution, round sections of ducts are recommended because of the following.

- a) Round ducting provides the maximum flow area per unit of duct mass.
- b) Round ducting is structurally stronger than rectangular ductwork of the same mass, and therefore requires less additional structural support.
- c) Round ducting is less prone to resonating with the induced harmonics.

Where branch connections are required to maintain even flow distribution, rectangular ducts are preferred.

Rectangular ducts shall be reinforced in a manner that keeps the deflections and stresses within acceptable limits. Also, the designer should avoid having the flat side of ducts coincidentally resonant with blower or fan speeds. Designing for possible buckling of flat walls can require additional bracing for stiffness.

F.9.2.3 Layout and routing considerations

The following are recommended ductwork layout and routing guidelines.

- a) All flue gas ducts that tie into a heater stack should have a structural anchor (on the duct) close to the stack tie-in point. An expansion joint should be located between the fixed point (i.e. anchor) and the stack to minimize the duct thermal-expansion forces and the resultant significant bending moment.
- b) A single stack is recommended for "common" APH systems that service multiple heaters.
- c) Manually adjustable and lockable biasing dampers will likely be required for applications that have parallel air ducts connected to a common header. Each parallel air duct may require its own biasing damper to provide a means for adjusting the air flow in each duct. Flow modelling can determine the need for, location of, and proper setting of biasing dampers under various operating cases.
- d) All duct sections should be equipped with low-point drain connections. These connections should be at least DN 40 (NPS 1 1/2) nominal size.

- e) Manways should be a minimum of 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in × 24 in) and located (if size permits) to provide for internal access to the entire duct system.
- f) Vertical, self-supporting cylindrical ducts should be designed as stacks. These ducts should be designed to safely withstand wind loads and wind-induced (vortex-shedding) vibrations as specified in 13.5.
- g) Loads should not be imposed on expansion joints.
- h) Expansion provisions for lined ducts should be based on the calculated casing temperature plus 55 °C (100 °F).

F.9.2.4 Mechanical design

F.9.2.4.1 Design pressure

Ductwork should be structurally designed for the maximum expected shut-in pressure of the fan or the differential pressure (i.e. the maximum operating pressure minus the ambient pressure), whichever is greater, but not less than 3,4 kPa (0,5 psig). If the design defaults to 3,4 kPa (0,5 psig) design pressure, it should be assumed that the fluid pressure is positive within the duct. Flat surfaces on the rectangular ductwork, if operating at less than atmospheric pressure inside the duct, shall be designed for the maximum expected vacuum.

F.9.2.4.2 Design loads

Ducts and supports should be designed to accommodate all thermal and mechanical loads that can be imposed, including erection (including the mass of wet refractory during start-up, operation or shutdown of the system). Where duct sections can be removed for maintenance activities, the effect of existing loads and new forces results in changes of deflection or stress; the entire system design shall again be mechanically verified in accordance with codes or procedures agreed to by the user and the vendor. The loads and thermal effects of cold-weather design conditions (i.e. snow and ice) during shutdowns should also be considered in the analysis of ductwork. Additional reinforcement can be required for transient conditions or resonant fan conditions.

F.9.2.4.3 Thermal expansion

All ductwork subject to thermal expansion should be analysed for thermal stresses encountered at the design pressure and design metal temperature. All ductwork subject to thermal expansion shall have supports designed to freely accommodate the expected movement resulting from thermal effects or to accept the forces and stresses. The use of rollers, graphite slides or polytetrafluoroethylene slide plates can be required to prevent binding of support shoes.

F.9.2.5 Combustion air plenums

The plenum design and layout should be such that there is a clearance around and under the plenum to permit withdrawal of burner parts without dismantling the plenum. The plenum should not enclose the structural supports of the fired process heater without providing for structural integrity. Plenum design should be such that the process-heater floor structure does not fail in the event of a fire in the plenum.

In retrofit situations, the design of floor support beams in the existing process heater shall be verified during the design for the effects of preheated air on structural integrity. Separate insulated plenum boxes can be required. The use of air spaces between main structural supports and preheated air plenums should be considered during the design.

F.9.3 Expansion joints

F.9.3.1 General

All ductwork subject to thermal expansion shall be furnished with metallic-bellows or flexible-fabric-bellows expansion joints suitable for gas temperatures expected in the ductwork and resistant to any corrosion products in the gas stream. Internal sleeve liners to protect the bellows of the expansion joint should be considered. Stiffening rings may be installed on either end of expansion joints in the ductwork to prevent ovaling of the ductwork or other distortion of the ductwork in the event of replacement of the expansion joint.

All ducts having expansion joints at both ends shall be suitably anchored or restrained between the joints to ensure absorption of ductwork thermal growth in the expansion joints in the desired manner.

If duct thermal expansion is deliberately controlled to cause lateral deflection in the expansion joint, the expansion joint shall be specified and designed to absorb lateral deflection or angulation without overstressing the bellows material at design temperature. Expansion joints subject only to lateral deflection should be provided with tie rods across the bellows. The tie-rod connections to the ductwork shall be gimballed to allow lateral displacement in the expansion joint without bending or shearing the tie rods or tie-rod connections. Do not use a tied expansion joint to absorb both axial and lateral deflections. Only internal pressure thrusts are contained by tie rods.

F.9.3.2 Fabric expansion joints

Flexible fabric joints should be used to avoid stressing and/or deforming adjoining equipment. These expansion joints are usually a layered construction of materials suitable for the design conditions. If fabric expansion joints are used adjacent to components requiring steam cleaning or water washing, the use of internal sleeves is recommended to prevent water damage to the fabric joint.

F.9.3.3 Metallic slip joints

Packed slip expansion joints can be a suitable alternative to fabric joints for negative-pressure applications. These slip joints should be designed to provide positive retention of the packing and permit packing replacement from the outside while the duct is in service. These joints should be between solid anchor points in hot ductwork.

Slip joints are subject to binding because of dirt, paint or corrosion. Avoid using slip joints adjacent to blower/fan inlet or outlet flanges. Slide bars or guide pins should be provided to prevent angulation (i.e. cocking) in the gland when friction or stresses within the gland is/are inconsistent around the joint circumference. Packed expansion joints can be designed to take horizontal movements if used as two hinged joints.

F.9.4 Dampers

F.9.4.1 Overview

In any duct system design, the selection and location of the system's dampers should consider reliability, controllability and ease of maintenance. The unique requirements of each damper application should be considered. Table F.3 provides recommended damper types for the common APH system applications.

When selecting a damper, the following should be considered:

- a) design pressure and design differential pressure;
- b) design temperature;
- c) design leakage rate;
- d) application type, as discussed below;

- e) mode of operation (manual, automatic, etc.);
- f) materials of construction of blades, shafts, bearings, frame, etc.;
- g) rate of operation;
- h) local instrumentation (limit switches, positioners, etc.).

Actuator design should be based on weathered, in-service bearing-friction loads (not new, clean values).

Dampers can be classified into four types, based upon the amount of internal leakage across the closed damper at operating pressures:

- tight shutoff: low leakage;
- isolation or guillotine (slide gate): no leakage;
- flow control or distribution: medium to high leakage;
- natural-draught air-inlet doors: low leakage to full open.

Tight shutoff dampers may be of single-blade or multi-blade construction. Leakage rates of 0,5 % or less of flow at operating conditions are typical.

Guillotine blinds or slide gates are used to isolate equipment, either after a change to natural draught or when isolating one of several heaters served by a common preheat system. The design should consider exposure of personnel, the effects of leakage on heater operation, the tightness of damper shutoff and the location of the damper (close to, or remote from, the affected heater). Isolation or guillotine (slide gate) dampers are designed to have no internal leakage when closed and may include double-gate with air purge or double-block-and-bleed designs consisting of one or more dampers in series with an air purge between them. Internal leakage rates of 0 % are expected with this type of damper. Guillotines may have insulated blades to allow personnel to safely enter ductwork (downstream of the damper) during operation of connected equipment. Refer to F.9.4.3 for further guidelines.

Flow-control dampers are typically multiple-louvre, opposed-acting, multiple-blade dampers because such dampers have superior flow-control capabilities. Parallel-blade or single-blade dampers should not be applied where the flow-directing feature inherent in their design can impair fan performance or provide an unbalanced flow distribution in the preheater. Actuation linkage for dampers used for control or tight shutoff should have a minimum number of parallel or series arms. The potential for asymmetrical blade movement and leakage increases with linkage complexity.

The force required to re-open a fully closed in-service damper can be greater than the actuator can supply. Flow-control dampers should be provided with a means to prevent full closure to avoid this possibility.

Natural-draught air doors shall be designed as fail-open devices in the event of loss of mechanical draught provided by combustion air fan. Natural-draught air doors should be sized and located in the ductwork such that combustion air flow to the burners during natural-draught operations is symmetrical and unrestricted. The expected leakage or the leakage to be tolerated shall be stated in specifying damper requirements. With the exception of isolation-damper designs, the amount of leakage varies with type and operating conditions.

Table F.3 — Recommended damper types

Equipment	Function	Recommended damper type
Forced-draught		
Inlet	Control	Blade louvre or inlet box damper
Outlet	Isolation for personnel safety	Zero-leakage slide gate or guillotine blind
Outlet	Control	Multi-blade louvre
Induced-draught		
Inlet	Control	Multi-blade louvre or inlet box damper
Inlet	Isolation for personnel safety	Zero-leakage slide gate or guillotine blind
Outlet	Isolation for personnel safety	Zero-leakage slide gate or guillotine blind
Stack	Quick response, isolation and control	Multi-blade louvre or butterfly damper
Combustion air bypass	Quick response, isolation and control	Multi-blade louvre or butterfly damper
Emergency natural draught/air inlet	Quick response and isolation	Low-leakage damper or door
Fired heater	Burner control	Multi-blade or butterfly damper
	Isolation	Zero-leakage slide gate or guillotine blind

F.9.4.2 Design and construction

Damper frames should be structural shapes using either rolled structural steel or formed plate. The frame design should be based on the maximum loading of any individual or appropriate combination of the following loads:

- a) wind, seismic and snow loads;
- b) shipping or erection loads;
- c) actuator loading;
- d) system failure or thermal or dead-weight load;
- e) corroded-condition load.

Dampers should be considered structural members and as such should meet all structural-design criteria of fired-heater structural members outlined in Clause 12. Damper-blade deflections should be less than 1/360 of the blade span. Stress of each blade-assembly component, based on maximum system static pressure, temperature, seismic loading and the moment of inertia through the cross-section of the blade assembly, should not exceed those levels specified in Reference [3]. The torsional and bending stresses should be considered if the gas-stream temperature is equal to or greater than 400 °C (750 °F). Allowable bending stress should be limited to 60 % of the yield stress at the specified operating temperature. If the metal temperature is in the creep range, the allowable stress shall be based upon 1 % of the rupture stress at the 100 000 h life span.

When damper actuators are specified, they should be mounted and linked by the damper manufacturer and tested in their shop before shipment. The actuator and linkage shall be installed outside of the flowing gas stream. The strength of the actuator mount on the damper frame shall be based on seismic loading and required actuator torque. Its strength shall not exceed 10 % of the yield strength of the damper in any mode of stress. Actuators and all drive system components shall be sized with a 3,0 safety factor.

F.9.4.3 Isolation/guillotine damper

The slide gate damper shall be a complete, self-sufficient structure not requiring additional integral support or bracing. The actuator for slide-gate dampers shall be electric, manual, pneumatic or hydraulic and shall be operated by sprockets, chains, jack screws or a direct-drive piston. The required cycle time (e.g. from full open to full closed) shall be specified by the user.

If chains are used, a minimum of two chains should be used and arranged to drive evenly on each side of the blade to prevent binding. In the event of chain failure, the remaining chain or chains shall be able to support the entire blade load. Operator- and drive-system sizing shall incorporate a 300 % dead-load plus a 200 % live-load (push-pull, open/close) safety factor as a minimum. For installations that are required to be safe for personnel to enter, double block-and-bleed or double block-and-purge designs shall be applied. The space between dual-closed damper blades or the space between two rows of edge seals is normally purged with clean air of greater pressure than the duct stream or outside air pressure to ensure a clean air barrier to gas leaks into the duct system past the guillotine damper.

F.9.4.4 Louvre dampers

Louvre dampers consist of a series of parallel damper blades. The blade construction may be a solid blade with a central axial round shaft. If the blade of the damper is of airfoil composite design, the central shaft may consist of a structural member as a central axial support of the airfoil blade. At each end, round stub shafts are splined into the axial structural member with suitable clearances to prevent buckling of the shaft as it thermally expands as a result of heat. The stub shafts pass through the bearings mounted on the damper frame. The edges of the blades are fitted with metal seals to minimize leakage past the damper edges when the damper blade is closed. These seals are often of proprietary design.

Airfoil blade designs should have blade skins provided with elongated bolt holes to compensate for thermal growth of the shaft and blade skin. Heating holes in one side of airfoil blade designs should be considered if excessive temperatures are encountered across closed dampers. The holes reduce thermal stresses and warping of the blades. Blades and shafts should be of thermally compatible material of similar thermal-growth rates. If possible, provide for thermal growth of the damper blade away from the actuator or drive side of the damper.

Louvre-style multiple damper blades shall be linked together outside the damper frame. Linkage shall consist of a structural bar hinged with shoulder bolts, complete with lock nuts set in self-lubricating bearings of a type specified by the user. Other designs consisting of an adjustable linkage to compensate for the differential expansion between the damper frame and the linkage to ensure tight shutoff at the operating temperature should be considered. Completed linkages shall be tested and fixed in position at the damper manufacturer's facility.

The link bars of each individual blade shall be welded to set collars fastened to the damper shaft with shear pins. Linkage shall be tight and vibration-free and shall prevent independent action of the blade. The position of the damper on its shaft shall be scribed on the end of the shaft visible from outside the duct.

Other designs incorporating stainless-steel stub shafts and linkage pins and hardware consisting of cast-steel clevis arms attached to the stub shaft can eliminate corrosion and can facilitate rapid removal. These designs should also be considered in situations where dampers might not be used open and tend to freeze.

Bearings shall be mounted in pillow-block assemblies furnished by the bearing manufacturer and shall be bolted to bearing mounts welded to the damper frame. Each bearing and bearing mount, including welds holding the mount, shall have a duty factor capable of withstanding 200 % of the stress transmitted as a result of the system load acting on the blade plus the operator output torque. If removable bearings are specified, linkage cranks shall be removable also. Do not weld linkage cranks to shafts.

A packing gland, if specified, shall be welded to the damper frame at each shaft clearance hole and shall be filled with packing adequate for the service. Design of the packing gland shall allow removal and replacement without removal of bearings or linkage. Packing glands are recommended for negative-pressure corrosive-flue gas applications.

F.9.4.5 Miscellaneous construction details

The following features are recommended.

- a) Dampers constructed integral to ducts should be of a bolted design to allow replacement of parts.
- b) Damper bearings shall not be covered by insulation.
- c) Damper shafts shall be of austenitic stainless steel or a more corrosion-resistant material suitable for the operating conditions.

F.9.5 Ducting refractory and insulation systems

F.9.5.1 General

The design and installation of all APH refractories and insulations should be in accordance with Clause 11. Subclauses F.9.5.2 to F.9.5.6 provided supplemental recommendations.

F.9.5.2 Internal refractory and external insulation systems

Externally insulated ducting can be desirable in relatively cool flue gas applications, as external insulation is capable of maintaining casing-metal temperatures above the dew-point corrosion. Even though externally insulated ducting experiences greater thermal expansion than internally refractory-lined ducting, for medium-to-low-temperature applications, this expansion is not a design problem.

External insulation is typically applied after the ductwork has been set in place to avoid damage during shipping. Externally insulated duct sections should be covered with weatherproofing and/or metal covers. All insulating materials should be rated for a service temperature of at least 170 °C (300 °F) above its calculated operating temperature.

Internal refractory should be considered for hot flue gas and hot-combustion air ducts to reduce the metal temperature of the duct envelope, thereby reducing the duct thermal expansion. In the event of a fire in the duct system, refractory linings are desirable. Refractory, however, can break loose from the duct wall and result in clogged ductwork, plugged APHs and possible damage to fans. Loss of internal linings also exposes ductwork to corrosive attack and temperatures higher than design.

F.9.5.3 Castable refractory

The minimum castable refractory thickness should be 50 mm (2,0 in).

In oil-fired applications, castable refractories should be used for all burner plenum and adjoining hot-air ducting to minimize adsorption of fuel oil into the refractory.

F.9.5.4 Ceramic-fibre-blanket refractory

Ceramic-fibre-blanket refractory systems with protective metal liners should be in accordance with API RP 534. Application of unlined ceramic-fibre-blanket refractory should be in accordance with Clause 11.

Flue gas ducting using relatively porous ceramic-fibre and/or block refractory should have either a protective internal coating (applied to the ducting's internal casing surfaces prior to application of refractory materials) or a stainless-steel-foil vapour barrier (sandwiched within the refractory layers, if possible) for applications with fuels containing more than 1,0 % (mass fraction) of sulfur in a liquid fuel or 1,5 % (volume fraction) of hydrogen sulfide in a fuel gas.

Exposed ceramic-fibre insulation should not be used in flue gas ducting upstream of SCR reactors. Loose fibres may migrate downstream and plug SCR catalysts.

F.9.5.5 Block and board refractory

Block and board refractories are defined as rigid and semi-rigid. Single layers may be used below 260 °C (500 °F). It may be used as a backup layer with other refractories. The velocity of the flowing gas stream shall not exceed 6 m/s (20 ft/s). Two layers of insulation are preferred.

F.9.5.6 Mineral-wool blanket insulation

Blanket insulation is a flexible material, e.g. as specified in ASTM C 553. Unprotected insulation shall not be located adjacent to water- or steam-cleaning devices. Surface protection consisting of wire mesh, expanded metal mesh or chemical rigidizers shall be provided for areas where flue gas or air velocities exceed 12 m/s (40 ft/s). Two layers are preferred. Materials shall be overlapped in the hot-face on the first layer to ensure that no exposure of casing or duct envelope to lower-temperature insulating materials occurs.

F.9.6 Fans and drivers

F.9.6.1 General

Fans and drivers should be in accordance with Annex E.

F.9.6.2 Wheel types

Maximum aerodynamic efficiency for fans can be achieved with backwardly inclined (non-overloading) blades. The blade construction may be of single thickness or airfoil design. On applications where the fan provides induced-draught service, avoid airfoil designs that have hollow-cross-section blades consisting of metal skin on ribs if they are not furnished with wheel-cleaning facilities. Induced-draught fans handling elevated-temperature flue gas containing significant particulates should be considered and specified as radial or modified-radial blades on the fan wheel.

F.9.6.3 Construction

Fans in flue gas service should have continuously welded seams.

F.9.6.4 Shafts

Fan wheel shafts should be capable of handling 110 % of rated driver torque from rest to design speed.

F.9.6.5 Elimination of induced-draught fan

A stack of greater height than normally required can replace an induced-draught fan on some systems, thereby improving the mechanical reliability of a system.

F.9.7 APH exchangers

F.9.7.1 Direct exchangers

In a fixed-bundle APH, consider making the bundle removable if it is subject to corrosion. Pressure parts of coils or tube bundles handling a combustible fluid should be of all-welded construction. Circumferential welds shall not be located in the air stream.

In rotating exchangers with metallic elements, the heating surface should be provided in two or more layers. The cold-end layer of elements shall be in baskets for radial removal through a housing. Other layers may be in baskets for removal through hot-end ductwork. Regenerative systems using revolving elements can be mechanically damaged if rotation stops while flue gas and air flow continue. An auxiliary drive on the preheater is recommended to protect against loss of rotation resulting from a power failure or other cause. An alternative action is to revert to natural draught, bypassing the preheater, until rotation can be reestablished.

F.9.7.2 Indirect exchangers

The design and manufacture of the hot exchanger coils (inside the convection module) should meet the requirements of this International Standard and ISO 13704. The design and manufacture of the cold exchanger coils (inside the combustion air ducting) typically meet the requirements of this International Standard and ISO 13704.

Each pass of multiple-pass coils shall be symmetrical and equal in length to all other passes. Recirculating reheat coils shall not be oriented to view direct radiation from the firebox or from high-temperature refractory surfaces.

The performance of indirect exchangers is directly related to, and a function of, the system's working-fluid properties. Some characteristics of the working fluid can deteriorate over time and/or under extreme service conditions. Systems with closed circulating loops should incorporate provisions to drain the working fluid from the hot exchanger in the event of low fluid flow or high flue gas temperature. Failure to drain the heating coil under these conditions can lead to premature thermal degradation of the working fluid. Hot exchanger coils should be drainable and include appropriate high-point vents and low-point drains unless specifically deleted by the purchaser. All flanges should be located outside the duct periphery.

The design pressure of the coils in heated liquid service shall be based upon a pressure greater than the vapour pressure of the heating fluid at the operating temperature. This ensures that the coil design pressure is great enough to allow selection of pumping pressures sufficient to prevent possible two-phase (liquid/vapour) flowing regimes in the coils and to contain and hold the fluid if the blower fails with no reduction in heat input.

Fluid-pressure-retaining circumferential field welds on the air-heating element of systems employing a pumped, circulating, combustible heat medium shall be outside the air duct. Electric-resistance-welded tubing, however, is permitted for coil designs where the coil is inside the duct.

F.9.7.3 Two-phase operation

To ensure against "vapour lock" of the heat-transfer fluid in the coils, elevate the system pressure to a level above the vapour pressure of the liquid, which ensures that the coil contains all liquid, and then reduce the pressure directly in a vapour "flash" drum downstream of the coil.

F.9.7.4 Pump design for circulating systems

Pumps should be designed in accordance with ISO 13709. Head-capacity curves shall rise continuously to shut-off. Rated pump capacity shall fall to the left or on the peak-efficiency line. Pumps handling flammable or toxic liquids shall have flanged suction and discharge nozzles. Spare pumps should be provided unless used in a system that can be completely bypassed without detriment to the normal heater service.

NOTE For the purpose of this provision, API Std 610 is equivalent to ISO 13709.

F.9.7.5 Interconnecting piping

Piping used to interconnect various components in an APH system should be designed and fabricated in accordance with ISO 15649.

NOTE For the purposes of this provision, ASME B 31.3 is equivalent to ISO 15649.

F.10 Environmental impact

F.10.1 Energy conservation

Retrofitting an existing unit with an air preheat system will normally increase efficiency, reducing fuel use.

F.10.2 Stack emissions

F.10.2.1 General

The use of an APH system results in a lower flue gas exit temperature, which increases the possibility of an exhaust stack plume. The normal way to eliminate any adverse effect is to increase the stack exit height above grade and/or increase the effluent velocity so that natural diffusion and wind currents minimize acid fallout.

Both balanced-draught and induced-draught systems incorporate an ID fan, which can be sized to provide the flow energy to achieve high stack effluent velocities. Alternatively, a longer stack can provide additional draught and stack velocity while simultaneously providing a higher emissions point.

The primary flue gas pollutants of interest are discussed below.

F.10.2.2 Nitrogen oxides

The oxides of nitrogen produced depend on the time, temperature and the oxygen concentration of any specific fuel's combustion process. The reactions involved are many and complex. The following can be stated in general.

- a) NO_x produced increases with increasing firebox or combustion temperatures.
- b) NO_x produced decreases with decreasing excess air.

Preheating combustion will normally increase NO_x . However, depending on the design of the system, an air preheat system with forced draft burners may partially or substantially offset this increase by improved fuel efficiency and the ability to run at lower excess air levels versus a natural draft system.

F.10.2.3 Sulfur oxides

The sulfur oxide fraction of the flue gas depends solely on the composition of the gas or oil burned and is not affected to any extent by the APH system. However, since fuel consumption is reduced when an APH system is used, the mass of sulfur dioxide (SO_2) emitted is reduced for any given process duty. This results in a net reduction in SO_x emissions (i.e. an environmental benefit).

F.10.2.4 Particulates

The formation of particulates during combustion is normally a function of burner application and the specific fuel burned. The use of air preheat and forced-draught systems involved have enabled burner manufacturers to reduce the formation of carbon when burning normal fuels. This can reduce the particulates formed to essentially the ash content of the fuel. Therefore, the use of an APH system reduces the total solids emission from many heater applications since the amount of fuel burned, and hence of ash emitted, is reduced.

F.10.2.5 Combustibles

The presence of combustibles, such as unburned hydrocarbons and carbon monoxide, in the flue gases from fired heaters is related to the incomplete combustion of the fuel. This, in turn, can result from insufficient excess air. The application of an APH system enhances the ability to burn fuels completely at the lowest possible excess air level, producing fewer unburned hydrocarbons.

F.10.3 Noise

The main sources of noise from a fired heater are the burners and fans. Retrofitting an APH system to an existing unit will add fans and ducts around the burners, in addition to other items. Therefore, an APH system will have more fan noise and less burner noise compared to a natural draft system. This trade-off should be considered in the design of an APH system.

F.11 Preparing an enquiry

F.11.1 Introduction

The purpose of Clause F.11 is to provide guidance and a checklist for obtaining sufficient information and data for selecting the most economical APH system and for preparing the required enquiry. Before preparing an enquiry, it is recommended that an economic study be conducted to justify the installation of an APH system.

F.11.2 Enquiry

Final selection of the APH system often requires technical information on more than one system. This information is usually obtained from suppliers responding to the enquiry. An enquiry for an APH system should include the following:

- a) data sheets for the fired heater(s), existing or proposed;
- b) air-preheater data sheets;
- c) APH system specifications and process and instrumentation diagrams;
- d) plot plan, plot area or specification of the APH-system plot-area restrictions.

The data for a) are often available from manufacturer's data books. The fired-heater operating data shall represent the intended heater operation, which, in the case of a retrofit, can differ from the original design data; if so, both the original and the intended operating data shall be supplied.

F.11.3 APH system checklist

The following is a checklist of information and data to be included in the APH system enquiry:

- a) fired-heater data sheets (with appropriate information);
- b) environmental restrictions; NO_x , UHC, CO, and noise;
- c) fuel type, SO_x concentration;
- d) space and/or site constraints;
- e) number of fired heaters to be serviced by the APH system;
- f) required reliability and service factor of the fired heater(s) in APH operation;
- g) required heater performance in the event of equipment failure;
- h) project specifications (heater, refractory, coatings, structural, fans and fan drivers);
- i) applicable standards;
- j) applicable building regulations.

F.12 Flue-gas dew point

F.12.1 General

The furnace designer should be aware of the various design and operational factors that affect flue gas dew point and corrosion rates, even though the designer has control over only a few of these variables. Dew point is addressed in F.3.5.

Annex G (informative)

Measurement of efficiency of fired process heaters

G.1 General

G.1.1 Introduction

This annex is intended to establish a standard approach for measuring the thermal and fuel efficiency of fired process heaters. It comprises a comprehensive procedure for conducting the necessary tests and reporting the results.

This procedure is intended to be used for fired-heater burning liquid or gaseous fuels. It is not recommended for determining the thermal or fuel efficiency if a solid fuel is being burned.

The test procedure considers only stack heat loss, radiation heat loss and total heat input. Process data are obtained for the purposes of reference and comparison only. Any modifications of the procedure and any assumptions required for testing should be established before testing.

G.1.2 Terms, definitions and symbols

G.1.2.1 Terms and definitions

The following terms and definitions used in this annex are given for information.

G.1.2.1.1

thermal efficiency

total heat absorbed divided by total heat input

NOTE This definition differs from the traditional definition of fired-heater efficiency, which generally refers to the fuel efficiency.

G.1.2.1.2

fuel efficiency

total heat absorbed divided by the heat input derived from the combustion of the fuel only (h_L)

G.1.2.1.3

total heat absorbed

total heat input minus total heat loss

G.1.2.1.4

total heat input

sum of net heat of combustion of the fuel (h_L) and sensible heat of the air, fuel and atomizing medium

G.1.2.1.5

total heat loss

sum of radiation heat loss and stack heat loss

G.1.2.1.6

radiation heat loss

defined percentage of net heat of combustion of the fuel

G.1.2.1.7**stack heat loss**

total sensible heat of the flue gas components at the temperature of flue gas when it leaves the last heat-exchange surface

G.1.2.1.8**sensible heat correction**

sensible heat differential at test temperatures when compared with a datum temperature of 15 °C (60 °F) for air, fuel and the atomizing medium

NOTE With steam as an atomizing medium, the datum enthalpy is 2 530 kJ/kg (1 087,7 Btu/lb).

G.1.2.2 Symbols

The following symbols are used in this annex:

e	net thermal efficiency, as a percentage
e_f	fuel efficiency, as a percentage
e_g	gross thermal efficiency, as a percentage
h_L	lower massic heat value of the fuel burned, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
h_H	higher massic heat value of the fuel burned, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
$c_{p a}$	specific heat capacity of the air, in J/kg·K (Btu/lb·°F)
$c_{p f}$	specific heat capacity of the fuel, in J/kg·K (Btu/lb·°F)
$c_{p m}$	specific heat capacity of the atomizing medium, in J/kg·K (Btu/lb·°F)
ΔE	enthalpy difference
Δh_a	air sensible massic heat correction, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
Δh_f	fuel sensible massic heat correction, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
Δh_m	atomizing medium sensible massic heat correction, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
h_r	radiation massic heat loss, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
h_s	stack massic heat loss, in J/kg (Btu/lb)
m_a	mass of air, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass)
m_f	mass of the fuel, in kilograms (pounds mass)
m_m	mass of the medium, in kilograms (pounds mass)
m_{st}	mass of the steam, in kilograms (pounds mass)
T_a	air temperature, in °C (°F)
$T_{a,a}$	ambient air temperature, in °C (°F)
T_d	design datum temperature, in °C (°F)
T_e	exit flue gas temperature, in °C (°F)
T_f	fuel temperature, in °C (°F)
T_{in}	inlet coil temperature, in °C (°F)
T_m	atomizing-medium temperature, in °C (°F)

G.1.3 Instrumentation

G.1.3.1 General

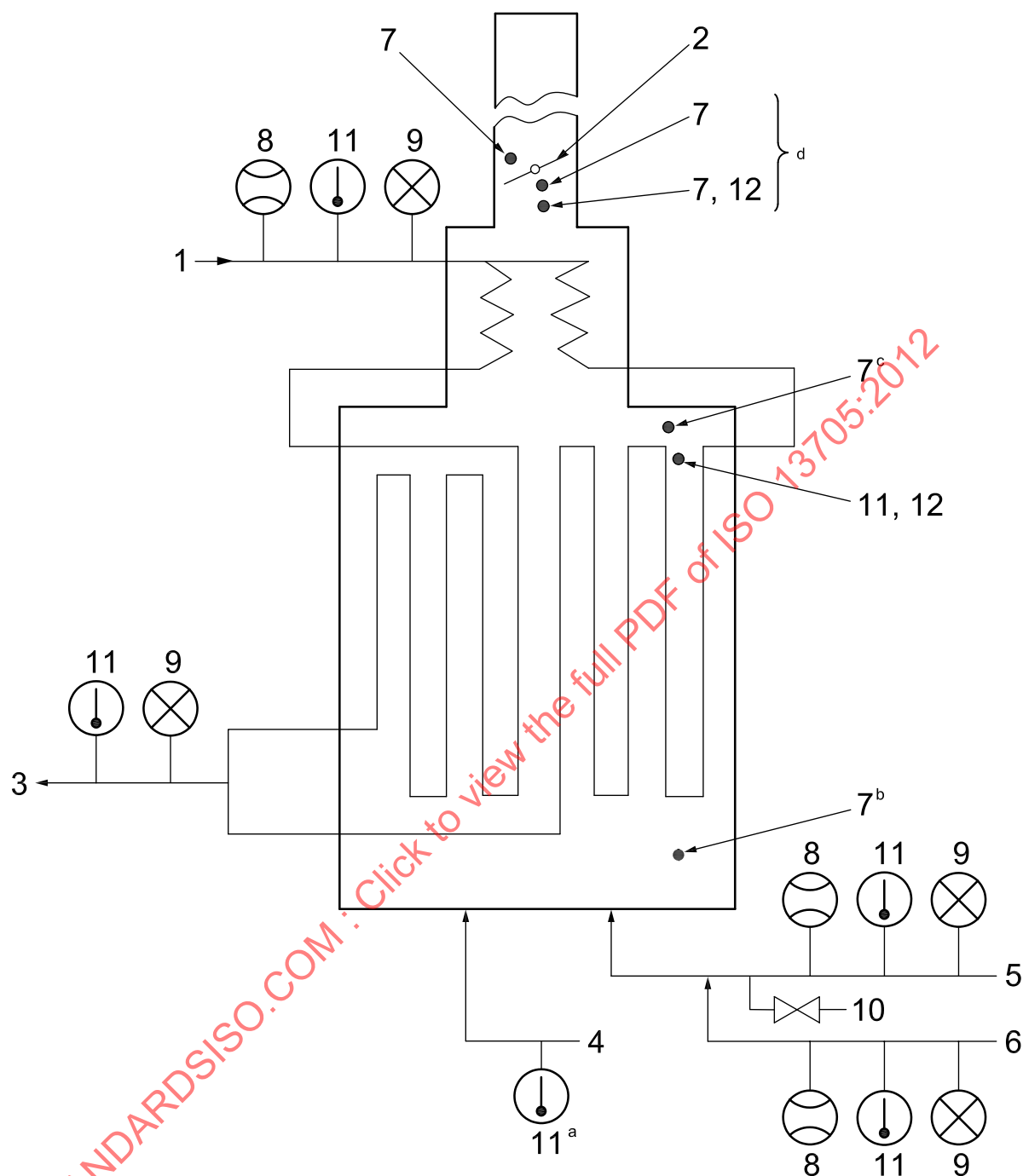
The instrumentation specified in G.1.3.2 and G.1.3.3 is required for the collection of data and the subsequent calculations necessary to determine the thermal efficiency of a heater (see Figure G.1).

G.1.3.2 Temperature-measuring devices

A multi-shielded aspirating (high-velocity) thermocouple (see Figure G.2) shall be used to measure all temperatures of the flue gas and temperatures of the preheated combustion air above 260 °C (500 °F). Thermocouples with thermowells may be used to measure temperatures at or below 260 °C (500 °F).

Conventional measuring devices may be used to measure the temperatures of the ambient air, the fuel and the atomizing medium. For a discussion of conventional temperature measurements, refer to API RP 554.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012

**Key**

1 feed in	5 fuel in	9 pressure indicator
2 damper	6 atomizing medium	10 sampling connection
3 feed out	7 draught gauge	11 temperature indicator
4 air in	8 flow indicator	12 oxygen sampling

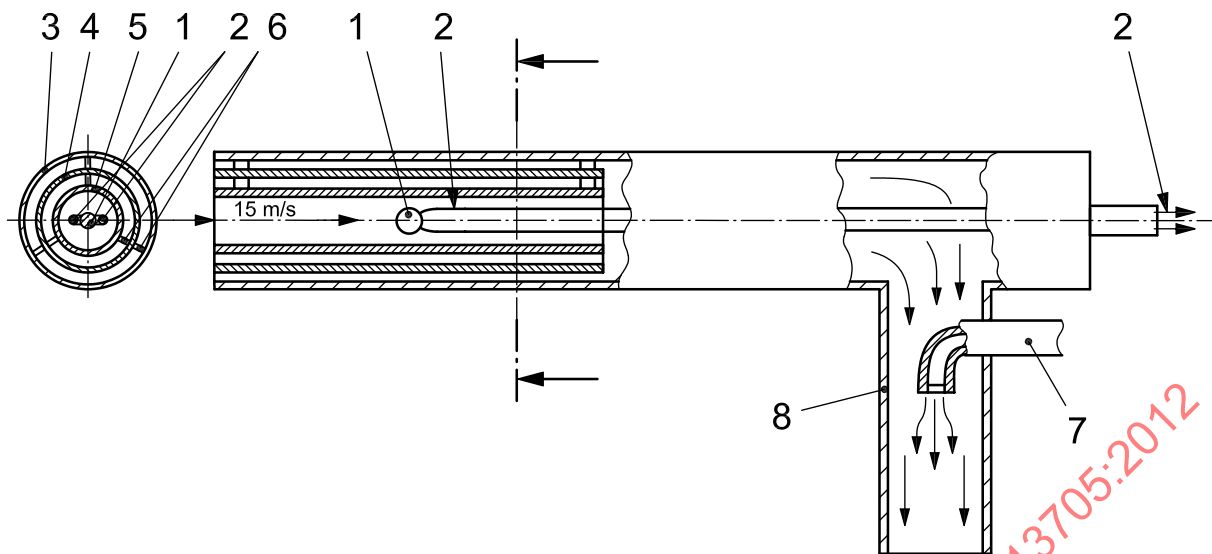
a Before preheater for internal heat source or after preheater for external heat source.

b Near burners.

c Arch.

d After preheater for internal-heat-source system.

Figure G.1 — Instrument and measurement locations

**Key**

- 1 thermocouple junction
- 2 thermocouple wires to temperature-indicating instrument
- 3 outer thin-wall 310 stainless-steel tube
- 4 middle thin-wall 310 stainless-steel tube
- 5 centre thin-wall 310 stainless-steel tube
- 6 centring tripods
- 7 air or steam at 600 kPa [6 bar (ga)] or more, in increments of 600 kPa (6 bar) until stable
- 8 hot-gas eductor

Figure G.2 — Typical aspirating (high-velocity) thermocouple

G.1.3.3 Flue gas analytical devices

A portable or permanently installed analyser shall be used to analyse for oxygen and combustible gases in the flue gas. The analysis of the flue gas may be made on either a wet or a dry basis, but the calculations shall be consistent with the basis used. For a discussion of sampling systems and flue gas analysers, refer to API RP 555.

G.1.4 Measurement

The following measurements shall be taken for reference purposes and for the identification of heater operating condition. If more than one process service or auxiliary stream is present, the data should be taken for all services:

- a) fuel flow rate;
- b) process flow rate;
- c) process-fluid inlet temperature;
- d) process-fluid outlet temperature;
- e) process-fluid inlet pressure;
- f) process-fluid outlet pressure;
- g) fuel pressure at the burner;
- h) atomizing-medium pressure at the burner;
- i) flue gas draught profile.

G.2 Testing

G.2.1 Preparation for testing

G.2.1.1 The following ground rules shall be established in preparation for the test, prior to the date of the actual test run:

- a) operating conditions that will prevail during the test;
- b) any re-rating that will be necessary to account for differences between the test conditions and the design conditions;
- c) acceptability of the fuel or fuels to be fired.
- d) selection of instrumentation types, methods of measurement and specific measurement locations.

G.2.1.2 All instrumentation that will be used during the test shall be calibrated before the test.

G.2.1.3 Immediately before the actual test, the following items shall be verified:

- a) that the fired process heater is operating at steady-state conditions;
- b) that the fuel to be fired is acceptable;
- c) that the heater is operating properly with respect to the size and shape of the flame, excess air, flue gas draught profile, cleanliness of the heating surfaces and balanced burner firing.

G.2.2 Testing

G.2.2.1 The heater shall be operated at a uniform rate throughout the test.

G.2.2.2 The test shall last for a minimum of 4 h. Data shall be taken at the start of the test and every 2 h thereafter.

G.2.2.3 The duration of the test shall be extended until three consecutive sets of collected data fall within the prescribed limits listed in Table G.1.

Table G.1 — Allowed variability of data measurements

Datum	Limit
Heating value of fuel	$\pm 5 \%$
Fuel rate	$\pm 5 \%$
Flue gas combustibles content	$< 0,1 \%$
Flue gas temperature	$\pm 5 \text{ }^{\circ}\text{C} (9 \text{ }^{\circ}\text{F})$
Flue gas oxygen content	$\pm 1 \%$
Process flow rate	$\pm 5 \%$
Process temperature in	$\pm 5 \text{ }^{\circ}\text{C} (9 \text{ }^{\circ}\text{F})$
Process temperature out	$\pm 5 \text{ }^{\circ}\text{C} (9 \text{ }^{\circ}\text{F})$
Process pressure out	$\pm 5 \%$

G.2.2.4 The data shall be collected as follows.

- All of the data in each set shall be collected as quickly as possible, preferably within 30 min.
- The quantity of fuel gas shall be measured and recorded for each set of data and a sample shall be taken simultaneously for analysis.
- For gaseous fuels, the net heating value shall be obtained by composition analysis and calculation.
- The quantity of liquid fuel shall be measured and recorded for each set of data. It is necessary to take only one sample for analysis during the test run.
- For liquid fuels, the net heating value shall be obtained by calorimeter test. Liquid fuels shall also be analysed to determine the hydrogen/carbon ratio, sulfur content, water content and the content of other components.
- Flue gas samples shall be analysed to determine the content of oxygen and combustibles. Samples shall be taken downstream of the last heat-exchange (heat-absorbing) surface. If an air heater is used, samples shall be taken after the air heater. The cross-sectional area shall be traversed to obtain representative samples. A minimum of four samples shall be taken not more than 1 m (3 ft) apart.
- The flue gas temperature shall be measured at the same location used to extract samples of flue gas for analysis. Systems designed to operate on natural draught upon loss of preheated air shall also measure the flue gas temperature above the stack damper. If the measured temperature reveals leakage (that is, if the stack temperature is higher than the temperature at the exit from the air heater), then flue gas samples shall also be taken at this location to determine the correct overall thermal efficiency. The cross-sectional area shall be traversed to obtain the representative temperature. A minimum of four measurements shall be taken not more than 1 m (3 ft) apart.

G.2.2.5 The thermal efficiency shall be calculated from each set of valid data. The accepted final results are then the arithmetic average of the calculated efficiencies.

G.2.2.6 All of the data shall be recorded on the standard forms presented in Clause G.4.

G.3 Determination of thermal and fuel efficiencies

G.3.1 Calculation of thermal and fuel efficiencies

G.3.1.1 Net thermal efficiency

Figures G.3, G.4 and G.5 illustrate heat inputs and heat losses for typical arrangements of fired process heater systems.

For the arrangements in Figures G.3, G.4 and G.5, the net thermal efficiency, e , (based on the lower heating value of the fuel) is equal to the total heat absorbed times 100, divided by the total heat input. The total heat absorbed is equal to the total heat input minus the total heat losses, so the net thermal efficiency, e , is given by Equation (G.1):

$$e = \frac{(h_L + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m) - (h_r + h_s)}{(h_L + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m)} \times 100 \quad (\text{G.1})$$

where

e is the net thermal efficiency, expressed as a percentage;

h_L is the lower massic heat value of the fuel burned, expressed in kJ/kg (Btu/lb);

Δh_a is the air sensible massic heat correction, expressed in kJ/kg (Btu/lb)

$= c_{pa} \cdot (T_a - T_d) \cdot m_a/m_f$, or the enthalpy difference, ΔE , multiplied by the mass of air per unit mass of fuel;

m_a is the mass of air, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

m_f is the mass of the fuel, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

Δh_f is the fuel sensible massic heat correction, expressed in kJ/kg (Btu/lb)

$= c_{pf} \cdot (T_f - T_d)$;

Δh_m is the atomizing medium sensible massic heat correction, expressed in kJ/kg (Btu/lb)

$= c_{pm} \cdot (T_m - T_d) \cdot m_m/m_f$, or the enthalpy difference, ΔE , multiplied by the mass of medium per unit mass of fuel;

m_m is the mass of the medium, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

h_r is the assumed radiation massic heat loss, expressed in kJ/kg (Btu/lb) of fuel;

h_s is the calculated stack massic heat loss (see stack loss work sheet, Clause G.5), in kJ/kg (Btu/lb) of fuel.

G.3.1.2 Gross thermal efficiency

The gross thermal efficiency of a fired process heater system, e_g , expressed as a percentage, is determined by substituting into Equation (G.1) the higher heating value, h_H , in place of h_L and adding to h_s a value equal to 2 464,9 kJ/kg (1 059,7 Btu/lb) of H_2O multiplied by the mass, m , expressed in kilograms (pounds), of H_2O formed in the combustion of the fuel, as given in Equation (G.2):

$$e_g = \frac{(h_H + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m) - [h_r + h_s + (m_{H_2O} \times 2\,464,9)]}{(h_H + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m)} \times 100 \quad (G.2)$$

However, h_H , the higher massic heat value of the fuel burned, expressed in kJ/kg (Btu/lb) of fuel, can be expressed as given in Equation (G.3):

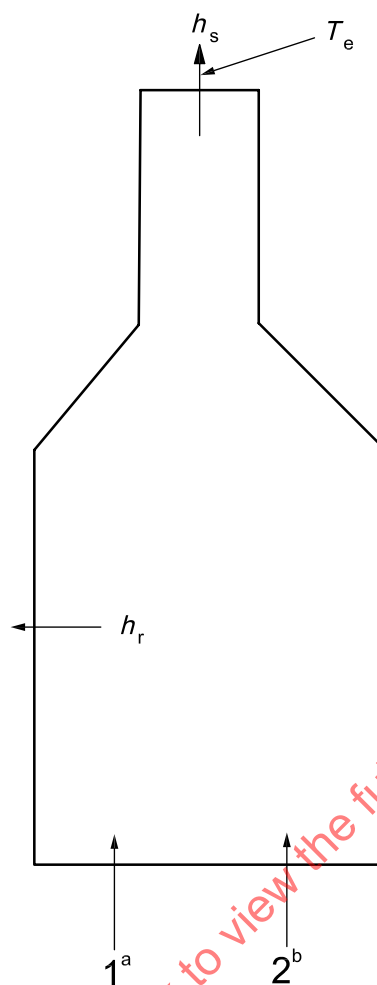
$$h_H = h_L + (m_{H_2O} \times 2\,464,9) \quad (G.3)$$

Making this substitution, Equation (G.2) reduces to Equation (G.4):

$$e_g = \frac{(h_L + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m) - (h_r + h_s)}{(h_H + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m) + (m_{H_2O} \times 2\,464,9)} \times 100 \quad (G.4)$$

Equation (G.4) can be reduced further to Equation (G.5):

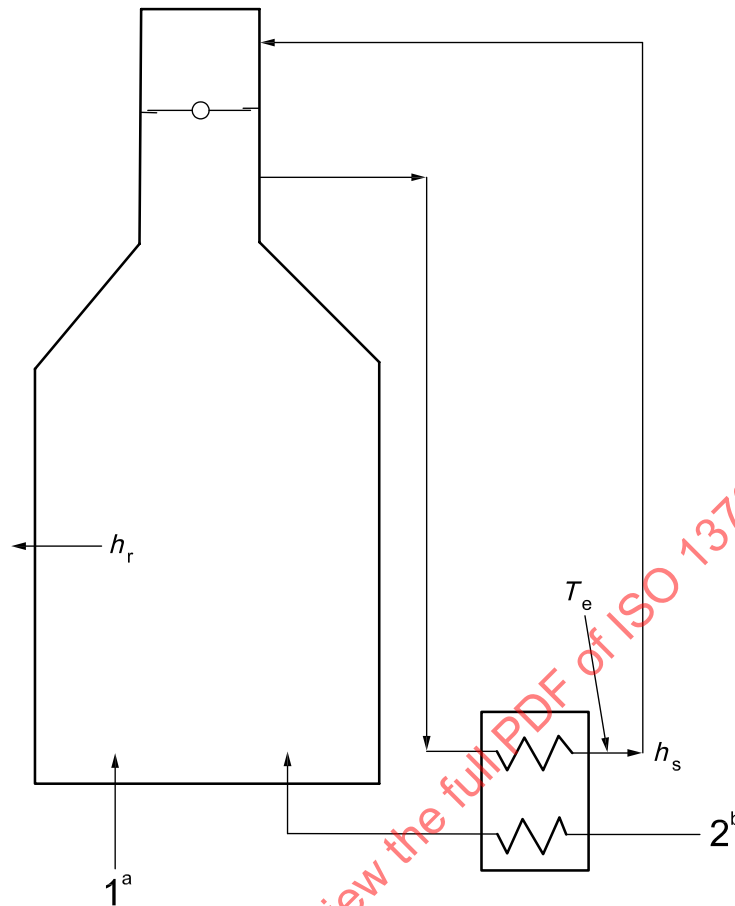
$$e_g = \frac{(h_L + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m) - (h_r + h_s)}{(h_H + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m)} \times 100 \quad (G.5)$$



Key

- 1 fuel
- 2 ambient air
- ^a $h_L = \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m$
- ^b Δh_a at $T_a = T_{a,a}$

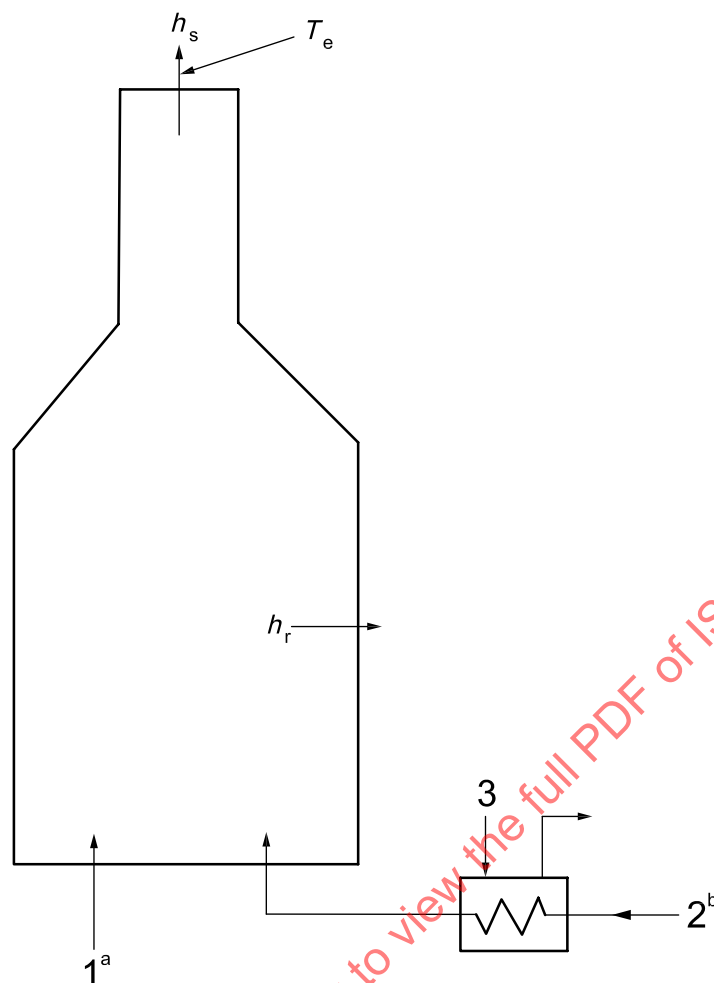
Figure G.3 — Typical heater arrangement with non-preheated air

**Key**

1 fuel

2 ambient air

a $h_L = \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m$ b Δh_a at $T_a = T_{a,a}$ **Figure G.4 — Typical heater arrangement with preheated air from an internal heat source**



Key

- 1 fuel
- 2 ambient air at $T_{a,a}$
- 3 external heat
- ^a $h_L = \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m$
- ^b Δh_a at T_a

Figure G.5 — Typical heater arrangement with preheated air from an external heat source

G.3.1.3 Fuel efficiency

The fuel efficiency of a fired heater, e_f , expressed as a percentage, is found by dividing the total heat absorbed by the heat input due only to the combustion of the fuel. The fuel efficiency can be determined by eliminating the sensible heat correction factors for air, fuel and steam from the denominator of Equation (G.1), resulting in Equation (G.6):

$$e_f = \frac{(h_L + \Delta h_a + \Delta h_f + \Delta h_m) - (h_f + h_s)}{h_L} \times 100 \quad (\text{G.6})$$

G.3.2 Sample calculations

G.3.2.1 General

The examples in G.3.2.2 through G.3.2.4 illustrate the use of the preceding equations to calculate the thermal efficiency of three typical heater arrangements.

G.3.2.2 Oil-fired heater with natural draught

G.3.2.2.1 Example conditions

In this example (see Figure G.3), the ambient air temperature ($T_{a,a}$) is 26,7 °C (80 °F), the air temperature (T_a) is 26,7 °C (80 °F), the flue gas temperature to the stack (T_e) is 232 °C (450 °F), the fuel oil temperature (T_f) is 176 °C (350 °F), and the relative humidity is 50 %. The flue gas analysis indicates that the oxygen content (on a wet basis) is 5 % (volume fraction) and that the combustibles content is nil. The radiation heat loss is 1,5 % of the lower massic heat value of the fuel. The analysis of the fuel indicates that its gravity is 10 °API, its carbon-hydrogen ratio is 8,06, its higher massic heat value (by calorimeter) is 42 566 kJ/kg (18 300 Btu/lb), its sulfur content is 1,8 % (mass fraction) and its inerts content is 0,95 % (mass fraction). The temperature of the atomizing steam (T_m) is 185 °C (366 °F) at a pressure of 1,03 MPa (150 psi) gauge; the mass of atomizing steam per unit mass of fuel is 0,5 kg/kg (0,5 lb/lb). Clause G.6 contains the work sheets from Clause G.5 filled out for this example.

The fuel's carbon content and the content of the other components are entered as mass fractions in column 3 of the Combustion work sheet (see Clause G.6) to determine the flue gas components. By entering the fuel's higher massic heat value (h_H) and its components on the lower massic heat value (liquid fuels) work sheet (see Clause G.6), the fuel's lower massic heat value (h_L) and carbon content (as a percentage) can be determined. Using this method, $h_L = 40\,186$ kJ/kg (17 277 Btu/lb) of fuel.

G.3.2.2.2 Massic heat losses

The radiation massic heat loss, h_r , is determined by multiplying h_L by the radiation loss expressed as a percentage. Therefore, $h_r = 0,015 \times 40\,186 = 602,8$ kJ/kg ($= 0,015 \times 17\,277 = 259,2$ Btu/lb) of fuel.

The stack massic heat loss, h_s , is determined from a summation of the heat content of the flue gas components at the exit flue gas temperature, T_e (see stack loss work sheet, Clause G.6). Therefore, $h_s = 4\,788,4$ kJ/kg (2 058,5 Btu/lb) of fuel at 232 °C (450 °F).

The sensible massic heat corrections (Δh_a for combustion air, Δh_f for fuel and Δh_m for atomizing steam) are determined as given in Equation (G.7):

$$\Delta h_a = c_{pa} \cdot (T_a - T_d) \cdot m_a/m_f \quad (\text{G.7})$$

where

m_a is the mass of air, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

m_f is the mass of the fuel, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

m_a/m_f is the sum of the values, expressed as kilograms (pounds mass) of air per kilogram (pound mass) of fuel, from lines (b) and (e) on the excess air and relative humidity work sheet (see Clause G.6).

The calculation in SI units:

$$\Delta h_a = 1,005 (26,7 - 15,6) \times (13,86 + 4,896)$$

$$\Delta h_a = 209,3 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

$$\Delta h_f = c_{p\text{fuel}} \cdot (T_f - T_d)$$

$$\Delta h_f = 2,099 (176,7 - 15,6)$$

$$\Delta h_f = 323,8 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

The calculation in USC units:

$$\Delta h_a = 0,24 (80 - 60) \times (13,86 + 4,896)$$

$$\Delta h_a = 90,0 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

$$\Delta h_f = c_{p\text{fuel}} \cdot (T_f - T_d)$$

$$\Delta h_f = 0,48 (350 - 60)$$

$$\Delta h_f = 139,2 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

$$\Delta h_m = \Delta E \times m_{st}/m_f$$

where

ΔE is the enthalpy difference;

m_{st} is the mass of the steam, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass).

In SI units:

$$\Delta h_m = (2\,780,7 - 2\,530,0) \times 0,5$$

$$\Delta h_m = 125,4 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

In USC units:

$$\Delta h_m = (1\,195,5 - 1\,087,7) \times 0,5$$

$$\Delta h_m = 53,9 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

G.3.2.2.3 Thermal efficiency

The net thermal efficiency can then be calculated as follows [see Equation (G.1)].

In SI units:

$$e = \frac{(40\,186 + 209,3 + 323,8 + 125,4) - (602,9 + 4\,788,1)}{(40\,186 + 209,3 + 323,8 + 125,4)} \times 100$$

$$e = 86,8 \%$$

In USC units:

$$e = \frac{(17\,277 + 90,0 + 139,2 + 53,9) - (259,2 + 2\,058,5)}{(17\,277 + 90,0 + 139,2 + 53,9)} \times 100$$

$$e = 86,8 \%$$

The gross thermal efficiency is determined as follows [see Equation (G.5)].

In SI units:

$$e_g = \frac{(40\,186 + 209,3 + 323,8 + 125,4) - (602,9 + 4\,788,1)}{(42\,566 + 209,3 + 323,8 + 125,4)} \times 100$$

$$e_g = 82,0 \%$$

In USC units:

$$e_g = \frac{(17\,277 + 90,0 + 139,2 + 53,9) - (259,2 + 2\,058,5)}{(18\,300 + 90,0 + 139,2 + 53,9)} \times 100$$

$$e_g = 82,0 \%$$

The fuel efficiency is determined as follows [see Equation (G.6)].

In SI units:

$$e_f = \frac{(40\,186 + 209,3 + 323,8 + 125,4) - (602,9 + 4\,788,1)}{(40\,186)} \times 100$$

$$e_f = 88,2 \%$$

In USC units:

$$e_f = \frac{(17\,277 + 90,0 + 139,2 + 53,9) - (259,2 + 2\,058,5)}{(17\,277)} \times 100$$

$$e_f = 88,2 \%$$

G.3.2.3 Gas-fired heater with preheated combustion air from an internal heat source

G.3.2.3.1 Example conditions

In this example (see Figure G.4), the ambient air temperature ($T_{a,a}$) is $-2,2\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($28\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$), the air temperature (T_a) is also $-2,2\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($28\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$), the flue gas temperature at the exit from the air heater is $148,9\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($300\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$), the fuel gas temperature is $37,8\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($100\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$) and the relative humidity is 50 %. The flue gas analysis indicates that the oxygen content (on a wet basis) is 3,5 % (volume fraction) and that the combustibles content is nil. The radiation heat loss is 2,5 % of the lower heating value of the fuel. The analysis of the fuel indicates that the fuel's methane content is 75,4 % (volume fraction), its ethane content is 2,33 % (volume fraction), its ethylene content is 5,08 % (volume fraction), its propane content is 1,54 % (volume fraction), its propylene content is 1,86 % (volume fraction), its nitrogen content is 9,96 (volume fraction) and its hydrogen content is 3,82 % (volume fraction). Clause G.7 contains the combustion work sheet, excess air and relative humidity work sheet and stack loss work sheet from Clause G.5 filled out for this example.

G.3.2.3.2 Massic heat losses

The fuel's h_L is determined by entering the fuel analysis in column 1 of the combustion work sheet (see Clause G.7) and dividing the total heats of combustion (column 5) by the total fuel mass (column 3).

Therefore, $h_L = 780\,556/18,523 = 42\,140$ kJ/kg of fuel ($h_L = 335\,623/18,523 = 18\,120$ Btu/lb of fuel).

The radiation massic heat loss, h_r , is determined by multiplying h_L by the radiation loss expressed as a percentage. Therefore, $h_r = 0,025 \times 42\,147 = 1\,053,7$ kJ/kg of fuel ($= 0,025 \times 18\,120 = 453,0$ Btu/lb of fuel).

The stack massic heat loss, h_s , is determined from a summation of the heat content of the flue gas components at the exit flue gas temperature, T_e (see stack loss work sheet, Clause G.7). Therefore, $h_s = 2\,747,5$ kJ/kg of fuel at 148,9 °C (1 181,2 Btu/lb of fuel at 300 °F).

The sensible massic heat corrections, Δh_a for combustion air and Δh_f for fuel, are determined as given in Equation (G.8):

$$\Delta h_a = c_{pa} \times (T_a - T_d) \times m_a/m_f \quad (G.8)$$

where

m_a is the mass of air, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

m_f is the mass of the fuel, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass).

In SI units:

$$\Delta h_a = 1,005 (-2,2 - 15,6) \times (14,344 \times 1,2 + 0,201)$$

$$\Delta h_a = -313,3 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

In USC units:

$$\Delta h_a = 0,24 (28 - 60) \times (14,344 \times 1,2 + 0,201)$$

$$\Delta h_a = -134,7 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

$$\Delta h_f = c_{pf} \times (T_f - T_d)$$

In SI units:

$$\Delta h_f = 2,197 (37,8 - 15,6)$$

$$\Delta h_f = 48,8 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

In USC units:

$$\Delta h_f = 0,525 (100 - 60)$$

$$\Delta h_f = 21,0 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

G.3.2.3.3 Thermal efficiency

The net thermal efficiency can then be calculated as follows [see Equation (G.1)].

In SI units:

$$e = \frac{(42\,147 - 313,3 + 48,8) - (1\,053,7 + 2\,747,5)}{(42\,147 + 313,3 + 48,8)} \times 100$$

$$e = 90,9 \%$$

In USC units:

$$e = \frac{(18\,120 - 134,7 + 21) - (453,0 + 1\,181,2)}{(18\,120 - 134,7 + 21)} \times 100$$

$$e = 90,9 \%$$

To determine the gross thermal efficiency, follow the procedure in G.3.1.2 (see also G.3.2.1).

To determine the fuel efficiency, follow the procedure in G.3.1.3 (see also G.3.2.1).

G.3.2.4 Gas-fired heater with preheated combustion air from an external heat source

G.3.2.4.1 Example conditions

This example (see Figure G.5) uses the same data that are used in G.3.2.2 except for the following changes: the air temperature (T_a) is 148,9 °C (300 °F), the flue gas temperature to the stack (T_e) is 260 °C (500 °F), and the flue gas analysis indicates that the oxygen content (on a dry basis) is 3,5 % (volume fraction). Clause G.8 contains the excess air and relative humidity work sheet and stack loss work sheet from Clause G.5 filled out for this example.

G.3.2.4.2 Massic heat losses

h_L and Δh_f are determined exactly as they were in G.3.2.2. Therefore, $h_L = 42\,147$ kJ/kg (18 120 Btu/lb) of fuel, and $\Delta h_f = 1\,053,7$ kJ/kg (453,0 Btu/lb) of fuel.

In this example, the oxygen reading was taken on a dry basis, so it is necessary that the values for kilograms (pounds mass) of water per kilogram (pound mass) of fuel be entered as zero when correcting for excess air (see the excess air and relative humidity work sheet, Clause G.8). The calculation for total kilograms (pounds mass) of H₂O per kilogram (pound mass) of fuel (corrected for excess air) is again performed using values for water and moisture (see excess air and relative humidity work sheet).

The stack loss, h_s , is determined from a summation of the heat content of the flue gas components at the stack temperature, T_e (see stack loss work sheet, Clause G.8). Therefore, $h_s = 4\,884,4$ kJ/kg of fuel at 260 °C (2 099,9 Btu/lb of fuel at 500 °F).

The sensible massic heat corrections, Δh_a and Δh_f , are determined as they were in G.3.2.2, but Δh_a , which changes because of the different temperatures and quantities, is given by Equation (G.9):

$$\Delta h_a = c_{pa} \times (T_a - T_d) \times m_a/m_f \quad (G.9)$$

where

m_a is the mass of air, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass);

m_f is the mass of the fuel, expressed in kilograms (pounds mass).

In SI units:

$$\Delta h_a = 1,005 (148,9 - 15,6) (14,344 + 2,619)$$

$$\Delta h_a = 2\,272,7 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

$$\Delta h_f = 48,8 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

In USC units:

$$\Delta h_a = 0,24 (300 - 60) (14,344 + 2,619)$$

$$\Delta h_a = 977,1 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

$$\Delta h_f = (21,0 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel})$$

G.3.2.4.3 Thermal efficiency

The net thermal efficiency can then be calculated as follows [see Equation (G.1)].

In SI units:

$$e = \frac{(42\,147 + 2\,272,2 + 48,8) - (1\,053,7 + 4\,884,4)}{(42\,147 + 2\,272,2 + 48,8)} \times 100$$

$$e = 86,6 \%$$

In USC units:

$$e = \frac{(18\,120 + 977,1 + 21) - (453,0 + 2\,099,9)}{(18\,120 + 977,1 + 21)} \times 100$$

$$e = 86,6 \%$$

To determine the gross thermal efficiency and the fuel efficiency, follow the procedure given in G.3.1.2 and G.3.1.3, respectively; see also G.3.2.1:

G.4 Model format for laboratory and raw-test-data sheets

LABORATORY DATA SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 2

I. GENERAL INFORMATION

Owner: _____
 Unit: _____
 Heater No.: _____

Plant location: _____
 Site elevation: _____
 Service: _____

Test run date:

Test run time:

Run No.:

II. FUEL GAS SAMPLE

Sample taken by:

Sample No.:

Sampling location:

Date taken:

Time taken:

Fuel-gas analysis, volume fraction (%)

Hydrogen:

Methane:

Ethane:

Other C₂:

Propane:

Other C₃:

Butane:

Other C₄:

Pentane plus:

Carbon monoxide:

Hydrogen sulfide:

Carbon dioxide:

Nitrogen:

Oxygen:

Other inerts:

Total:

Remarks:

III. FUEL OIL SAMPLE

Sample taken by:

Sample No.:

Sampling location:

Date taken:

Time taken:

Sample temperature, °C (°F):

Analysis, mass fraction (%)

Carbon:

Hydrogen:

LABORATORY DATA SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 2 of 2

Carbon-hydrogen ratio ^a :					
Sulfur:					
Ash:					
Nitrogen:					
Oxygen:					
Water:					
Other:					
Total:					
Calorimeter heating value:					
Vanadium, mg/kg (ppm):					
Sodium, mg/kg (ppm):					
Density, kg/m ³ (°API):					
Additive used:					

IV. PROCESS STREAM SAMPLE

Sample taken by:					
Sample No.:					
Sampling location:					
Date taken:					
Time taken:					

Sample test conditions

Temperature, °C (°F):					
Pressure, kPa (psig):					
Name of fluid:					
Density, kg/m ³ (°API):					
Vapour relative molecular mass:					

ASTM liquid distillation

Initial boiling point:					
10 % vaporized					
20 % vaporized					
30 % vaporized					
40 % vaporized					
50 % vaporized					
60 % vaporized					
70 % vaporized					
80 % vaporized					
90 % vaporized					
End point:					

V. GENERAL CONDITIONS

Remarks:

^a May be entered instead of carbon and hydrogen contents.

RAW-TEST-DATA SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 3

I. GENERAL INFORMATION

Owner: _____
 Unit: _____
 Heater No.: _____
 Manufacturer: _____

Plant location: _____
 Site elevation: _____
 Service: _____

Test run date:

Test run time:

Run No.:

Recorded by:

II. GENERAL CONDITIONS

Ambient air temperature,
 °C (°F):

Wind direction:

Wind velocity, km/h (mph):

Plant barometric pressure,
 Pa (in Hg):

Radiation loss, %:

Relative humidity, %:

III. COMBUSTION DATA**Fuel gas**

Flow-meter reading:

Flow-meter factor and data base:

Pressure at flow meter,
 kPa (psig):

Temperature at flow
 meter, °C (°F):

Pressure at burners,
 kPa (psig):

Fuel oil (supply)

Flow-meter reading:

Flow-meter factor and data base:

Pressure at flow meter,
 kPa (psig):

Temperature at flow
 meter, °C (°F):

Pressure at burners,
 kPa (psig):

Fuel oil (return)

Flow-meter reading:

Flow-meter factor and data base:

Pressure at flow meter,
 kPa (psig):

Temperature at flow
 meter, °C (°F):

RAW-TEST-DATA SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 2 of 3

Atomizing medium

Flow-meter reading:
 Flow-meter factor and data
 base:
 Pressure at flow meter,
 kPa (psig):
 Temperature at flow
 meter, °C (°F):
 Pressure at burners,
 kPa (psig):

IV. PROCESS-STREAM DATA^a

Flow

Flow-meter reading:
 Flow-meter factor:
 Flow pressure in,
 kPa (psig):
 Flow temperature in,
 °C (°F):
 Flow pressure out,
 kPa (psig):
 Combined temperature
 out, °C (°F):

Steam injection

Location:
 Total consumption,
 kg/h (lb/h):

V. AIR AND FLUE GAS DATA

Pressure, Pa (in H₂O)

Draught at burners:
 Draught at firebox roof:

^a Similar data should be recorded for secondary streams such as boiler feed water, steam generation and steam superheat.

RAW-TEST-DATA SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 3 of 3

	Run No.			Run No.			Run No.		
	Traverse readings		Aver- age	Traverse readings		Aver- age	Traverse readings		Aver- age
Temperature, °C (°F)									
Air into preheater:									
Air out of preheater:									
Flue gas out of preheater ^a :									
Flue gas in stack ^a :									

Flue gas analysis, volume fraction (%)

Oxygen content ^a :									
Combustibles and carbon monoxide:									

VI. ASSOCIATED EQUIPMENT

Air heater

Nameplate size:					
Type:					
Bypass (open/closed):					
External preheat (on/off):					

Burners

No. in operation:					
Type of fuel:					
Burner type ^b :					

Remarks:

^a Readings shall be taken after the last heat-absorbing surface.

^b The burner type should be designated as ND (natural-draught), FD (forced-draught) or FD/PA (forced-draught preheated-air).

G.5 Model format for work sheets

LOWER MASSIC HEAT VALUE (LIQUID FUELS) WORK SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 1

Higher massic heat value (h_H), from calorimeter test, in kJ/kg (Btu/lb) of fuel: _____

Carbon-hydrogen ratio (CHR), from analysis: _____

Impurities, from analysis, mass fraction (%)

Water vapour: _____

Ash: _____

Sulfur: _____

Sodium: _____

Other: _____

Total (Z): _____

$$\% \text{ hydrogen} = (100 - Z)/(CHR + 1,0)$$

In SI units:

$$h_L = h_H - (9 \times 2\,464,9 \times \% \text{ hydrogen}/100), \text{ in kJ/kg of fuel}$$

In USC units:

$$h_L = h_H - (9 \times 1\,059,7 \times \% \text{ hydrogen}/100), \text{ in Btu/lb of fuel}$$

$$\% \text{ carbon} = 100 - (\% \text{ hydrogen} + Z):$$

INSTRUCTIONS

Calculate the values for % hydrogen, lower massic heat value (h_L) and % carbon. Enter these values in the appropriate columns of the combustion work sheet.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
SI units

 Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 2

Fuel component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3 (1 × 2)	Column 4	Column 5 (3 × 4)
	Volume fraction %	Relative molecular mass	Total mass kg	Net heating value kJ/kg	Heating value kJ
Carbon, C		12,0		—	
Hydrogen, H ₂		2,016		120 000	
Oxygen, O ₂		32,0		—	
Nitrogen, N ₂		28,0		—	
Carbon monoxide, CO		28,0		10 100	
Carbon dioxide, CO ₂		44,0		—	
Methane, CH ₄		16,0		50 000	
Ethane, C ₂ H ₆		30,1		47 490	
Ethylene, C ₂ H ₄		28,1		47 190	
Acetylene, C ₂ H ₂		26,0		48 240	
Propane, C ₃ H ₈		44,1		46 360	
Propylene, C ₃ H ₆		42,1		45 800	
Butane, C ₄ H ₁₀		58,1		45 750	
Butylene, C ₄ H ₈		56,1		45 170	
Pentane, C ₅ H ₁₂		72,1		45 360	
Hexane, C ₆ H ₁₄		86,2		45 100	
Benzene, C ₆ H ₆		78,1		40 170	
Methanol, CH ₃ OH		32,0		19 960	
Ammonia, NH ₃		17,0		18 600	
Sulfur, S		32,1		—	
Hydrogen sulfide, H ₂ S		34,1		15 240	
Water, H ₂ O		18,0		—	
Total					
Total per kg of fuel					

INSTRUCTIONS

If composition is expressed as volume fraction (%), insert in column 1; if composition is expressed as mass fraction (%), insert in column 3. Add all of the columns on the "Total" line and divide all of the column totals by the column 3 total to obtain the values for the "Total per kg of fuel" line. The excess air and relative humidity work sheet and the stack loss work sheet use the totals per kg of fuel to calculate stack loss; for example, if one of the work sheets asks for "kg of CO₂", the value is taken from the "Total per kg of fuel" line in Column 9.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
SI units

 Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 2 of 2

Column 6	Column 7 (3 × 6)	Column 8 ^a	Column 9 (3 × 8)	Column 10	Column 11 (3 × 10)	Column 12	Column 13 (3 × 12)
Air required kg of air per kg	Air required kg	CO₂ formed kg of CO ₂ per kg	CO₂ formed kg	H₂O formed kg of H ₂ O per kg	H₂O formed kg	N₂ formed kg of N ₂ per kg	N₂ formed kg
11,51		3,66		—		8,85	
34,29		—		8,94		26,36	
–4,32		—		—		–3,32	
—		—		—		1,00	
2,47		1,57		—		1,90	
—		1,00		—		—	
17,24		2,74		2,25		13,25	
16,09		2,93		1,80		12,37	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
13,29		3,38		0,69		10,21	
15,68		2,99		1,63		12,05	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,46		3,03		1,55		11,88	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,33		3,05		1,50		11,78	
15,24		3,06		1,46		11,71	
13,27		3,38		0,69		10,20	
6,48		1,38		1,13		4,98	
6,10		—		1,59		5,51	
4,31		2,00		—		3,31	
6,08		1,88		0,53		4,68	
—		—		1,00		—	

^a SO₂ shall be included in the CO₂ column. Although this is inaccurate, the usually small quantities will not affect any of the final results.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
USC units

 Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 2

Fuel component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3 (1 × 2)	Column 4	Column 5 (3 × 4)
	Volume fraction %	Relative molecular mass	Total mass pounds	Net heating value British thermal units per pound	Heating value British thermal units
Carbon, C		12,0		—	
Hydrogen, H ₂		2,016		51 600	
Oxygen, O ₂		32,0		—	
Nitrogen, N ₂		28,0		—	
Carbon monoxide, CO		28,0		4 345	
Carbon dioxide, CO ₂		44,0		—	
Methane, CH ₄		16,0		21 500	
Ethane, C ₂ H ₆		30,1		20 420	
Ethylene, C ₂ H ₄		28,1		20 290	
Acetylene, C ₂ H ₂		26,0		20 470	
Propane, C ₃ H ₈		44,1		19 930	
Propylene, C ₃ H ₆		42,1		19 690	
Butane, C ₄ H ₁₀		58,1		19 670	
Butylene, C ₄ H ₈		56,1		19 420	
Pentane, C ₅ H ₁₂		72,1		19 500	
Hexane, C ₆ H ₁₄		86,2		19 390	
Benzene, C ₆ H ₆		78,1		17 270	
Methanol, CH ₃ OH		32,0		8 580	
Ammonia, NH ₃		17,0		8 000	
Sulfur, S		32,1		—	
Hydrogen sulfide, H ₂ S		34,1		6 550	
Water, H ₂ O		18,0		—	
Total					
Total per pound of fuel					

INSTRUCTIONS

If composition is expressed as volume %, insert in column 1; if composition is expressed as mass %, insert in column 3. Total all of the columns on the "Total" line and divide all of the column totals by the column 3 total to obtain the values for the "Total per pound of fuel" line. The excess air and relative humidity work sheet and the stack loss work sheet use the totals per pound of fuel to calculate stack loss; for example, if one of the work sheets asked for "pounds of CO₂", the value would be taken from the "Total per pound of fuel" line in column 9.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
USC units

 Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 2 of 2

Column 6	Column 7 (3 × 6)	Column 8 ^a	Column 9 (3 × 8)	Column 10	Column 11 (3 × 10)	Column 12	Column 13 (3 × 12)
Air required pounds of air per pound	Air required pounds	CO₂ formed pounds of CO ₂ per pound	CO₂ formed pounds	H₂O formed pounds of H ₂ O per pound	H₂O formed pounds	N₂ formed pounds of N ₂ per pound	N₂ formed pounds
11,51		3,66		—		8,85	
34,29		—		8,94		26,36	
−4,32		—		—		−3,32	
—		—		—		1,00	
2,47		1,57		—		1,90	
—		1,00		—		—	
17,24		2,74		2,25		13,25	
16,09		2,93		1,80		12,37	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
13,29		3,38		0,69		10,21	
15,68		2,99		1,63		12,05	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,46		3,03		1,55		11,88	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,33		3,05		1,50		11,78	
15,24		3,06		1,46		11,71	
13,27		3,38		0,69		10,20	
6,48		1,38		1,13		4,98	
6,10		—		1,59		5,51	
4,31		2,00		—		3,31	
6,08		1,88		0,53		4,68	
—		—		1,00		—	

^a SO₂ shall be included in the CO₂ column. Although this is inaccurate, the usually small quantities will not affect any of the final results.

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY WORK SHEET ^a
SI units

Job No.: _____
Date of report: _____
Page 1 of 2

Atomizing steam: _____ kg per kg of fuel (assumed or measured)

CORRECTION FOR RELATIVE HUMIDITY (RH)

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Moisture in air} &= \frac{P_{\text{vapour}}}{P_{\text{air}}} \times \frac{RH}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\ &= \frac{\dots\dots\dots}{1013,3} \times \frac{\dots\dots\dots}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\ &= \dots\dots\dots \text{ kg of moisture per kg of air}\end{aligned}\quad (a)$$

where

P_{vapour} = vapour pressure of water at the ambient temperature, in mbar absolute (from steam tables);
 $P_{\text{air}} = 1\,013,3$ mbar.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{kg of wet air per kg of fuel required} &= \frac{\text{air required}}{1 - \text{moisture in air}} \\ &= \frac{\dots\dots\dots (7)}{1 - \dots\dots\dots (a)} \\ &= \dots\dots\dots\end{aligned}\quad (b)$$

kg of moisture per kg of fuel = kg of wet air per kg of fuel required – air required

$$\begin{aligned}&= \dots\dots\dots (b) - \dots\dots\dots (7) \\ &= \dots\dots\dots\end{aligned}\quad (c)$$

kg of H₂O per kg of fuel = H₂O formed + kg of moisture per kg of fuel + atomizing steam

$$\begin{aligned}&= \dots\dots\dots (11) + \dots\dots\dots (c) + \dots\dots\dots \\ &= \dots\dots\dots\end{aligned}\quad (d)$$

CORRECTION FOR EXCESS AIR ^b

kg of excess air per kg of fuel

$$\begin{aligned}&= \frac{(28,85 \times \% \text{ O}_2 \left(\frac{\text{N}_2 \text{ formed}}{28} + \frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ formed}}{44} + \frac{\text{H}_2\text{O formed}}{18} \right))}{20,95 - \% \text{ O}_2 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\text{kg of H}_2\text{O}}{\text{kg of air required}} \right) + 1 \right]} \\ &= \dots\dots\dots\end{aligned}\quad (e)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Percent excess air} &= \frac{\text{kg of excess air per kg of fuel}}{\text{air required}} \times 100 \\ &= \frac{\dots\dots\dots (e)}{\dots\dots\dots (7)} \times 100 \\ &= \dots\dots\dots\end{aligned}\quad (f)$$

**EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE
HUMIDITY WORK SHEET ^a**
SI units

Job No.: _____
Date of report: _____
Page 2 of 2

Total kg of H₂O per kg of fuel (corrected for excess air)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left(\frac{\text{percent excess air}}{100} \times \text{kg of moisture per kg fuel} \right) + \text{kg of H}_2\text{O per kg fuel} \\
 &= \left[\frac{\text{_____}(f)}{100} \times \text{_____}(c) \right] + \text{_____}(d) \\
 &= \text{_____}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{g}$$

^a All values used in the calculations above shall be on a "per kg of fuel" basis. Numbers in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the "Total per kg fuel" line of the combustion work sheet, and letters in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the corresponding lines of this work sheet.

^b If oxygen samples are extracted on a dry basis, a value of zero shall be inserted for line (e) where a value is required from lines (c) and (d). If oxygen samples are extracted on a wet basis, the appropriate calculated value shall be inserted.

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY WORK SHEET^a
USC units

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 2

Atomizing steam: _____ pounds per pound of fuel (assumed or measured)

CORRECTION FOR RELATIVE HUMIDITY (RH)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Moisture in air} &= \frac{P_{\text{vapour}}}{P_{\text{air}}} \times \frac{RH}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\ &= \frac{\quad}{14,696} \times \frac{\quad}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\ &= \quad \text{pounds of moisture per pound of air} \end{aligned} \quad (a)$$

where

P_{vapour} = vapour pressure of water at the ambient temperature, in pounds per square inch absolute (from steam tables);

$P_{\text{air}} = 14,696$ psi.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Pounds of wet air per pound of fuel required} &= \frac{\text{air required}}{1 - \text{moisture in air}} \\ &= \frac{\quad (7)}{1 - \quad (a)} \\ &= \quad \end{aligned} \quad (b)$$

Pounds of moisture per pound of fuel = pounds of wet air per pound of fuel required – air required

$$\begin{aligned} &= \quad (b) - \quad (7) \\ &= \quad \end{aligned} \quad (c)$$

Pounds of H₂O per pound of fuel = H₂O formed + pounds of moisture per pound of fuel + atomizing steam

$$\begin{aligned} &= \quad (11) + \quad (c) + \quad \\ &= \quad \end{aligned} \quad (d)$$

CORRECTION FOR EXCESS AIR^b

Pounds of excess air per pound of fuel

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{(28,85 \times \% \text{O}_2 \left(\frac{\text{N}_2 \text{ formed}}{28} + \frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ formed}}{44} + \frac{\text{H}_2\text{O formed}}{18} \right))}{20,95 - \% \text{O}_2 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\text{pounds of H}_2\text{O}}{\text{pounds of air required}} \right) + 1 \right]} \\ &= \frac{(28,85 \times \quad) \left(\frac{\quad (13)}{28} + \frac{\quad (9)}{44} + \frac{\quad}{18} \right)}{20,95 - \quad \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\quad (c)}{\quad (7)} \right) + 1 \right]} \\ &= \quad \end{aligned}$$

(e)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Pounds excess air} &= \frac{\text{pounds of excess air per pound of fuel}}{\text{air required}} \times 100 \\ &= \frac{\quad (e)}{\quad (7)} \times 100 \\ &= \quad \end{aligned} \quad (f)$$

**EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE
HUMIDITY WORK SHEET ^a
USC units**

Job No.: _____
Date of report: _____
Page 2 of 2

Total pounds of H₂O per pound of fuel (corrected for excess air)

$$= \left(\frac{\text{percent excess air}}{100} \times \text{pounds of moisture per pound fuel} \right) + \text{pounds of H}_2\text{O per pound fuel}$$

$$= \left[\frac{\text{_____}(f)}{100} \times \text{_____}(c) \right] + \text{_____}(d)$$

$$= \text{_____}$$

(g)

^a All values used in the calculations above shall be on a "per pound fuel" basis. Numbers in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the "Total per pound fuel" line of the combustion work sheet, and letters in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the corresponding lines of this work sheet.

^b If oxygen samples are extracted on a dry basis, a value of zero shall be inserted for line (e) where a value is required from lines (c) and (d). If oxygen samples are extracted on a wet basis, the appropriate calculated value shall be inserted.

STACK LOSS WORK SHEET

Job No.: _____
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 1

Exit flue gas temperature, T_e : _____ °C (°F)

Component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
	Component formed kg (lb) per kg (lb) of fuel	Enthalpy at T kJ/kg formed (Btu/lb formed)	Massic heat content kJ/kg of fuel (Btu/lb of fuel)
Carbon dioxide			
Water vapour			
Nitrogen			
Air			
Total			

INSTRUCTIONS

In column 1 above, insert the values from the "Total per kg of fuel" line of the combustion work sheet for carbon dioxide (column 9) and nitrogen (column 13). Insert the value from line (e) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for air, and insert the value from line (g) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for water vapour.

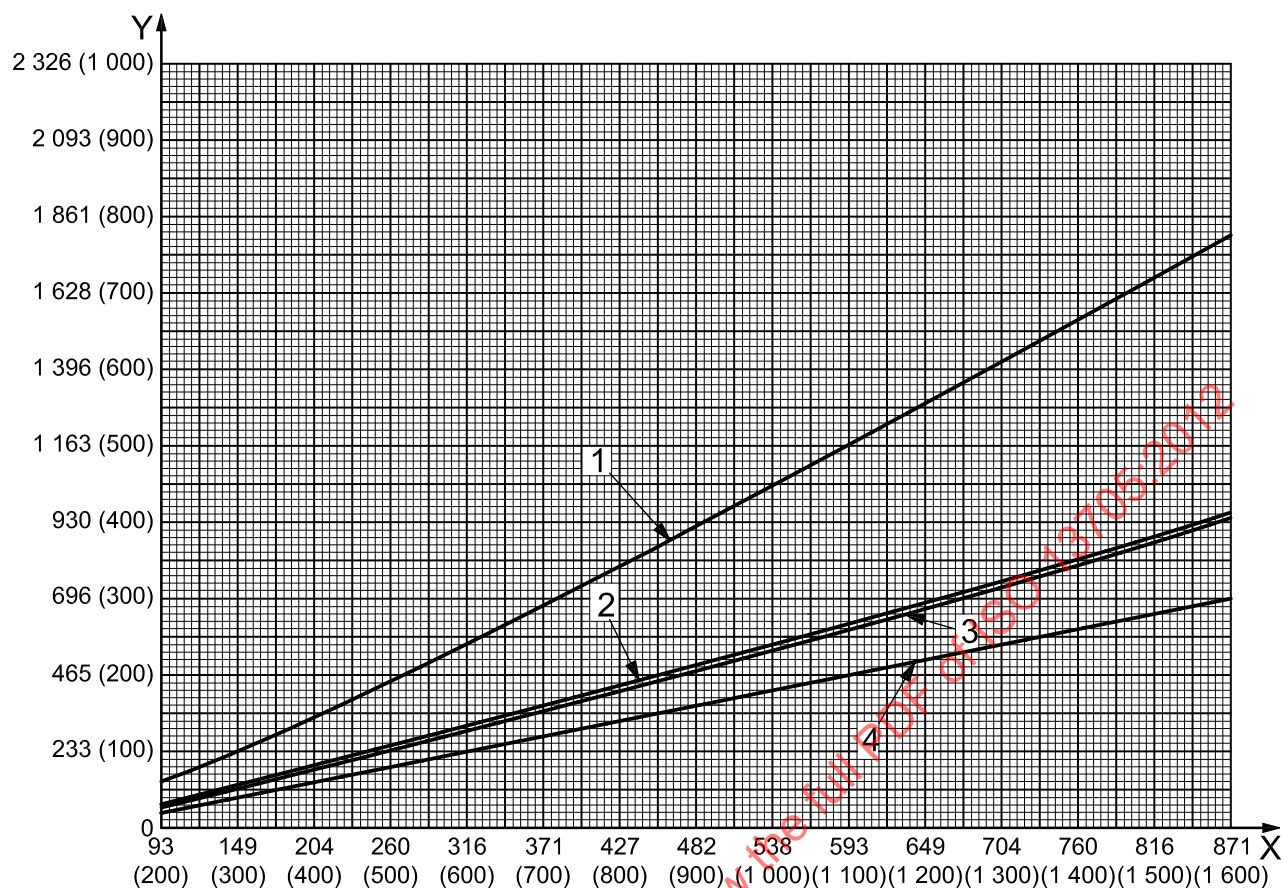
In column 2 above, insert the enthalpy values from Figures G.6 and G.7 for each flue gas component.

In column 3 above, for each component insert the product of the value from column 1 and the value from column 2. This is the massic heat content at the exit gas temperature.

Total the values in column 3 to obtain the massic heat loss to the stack, h_s .

Therefore,

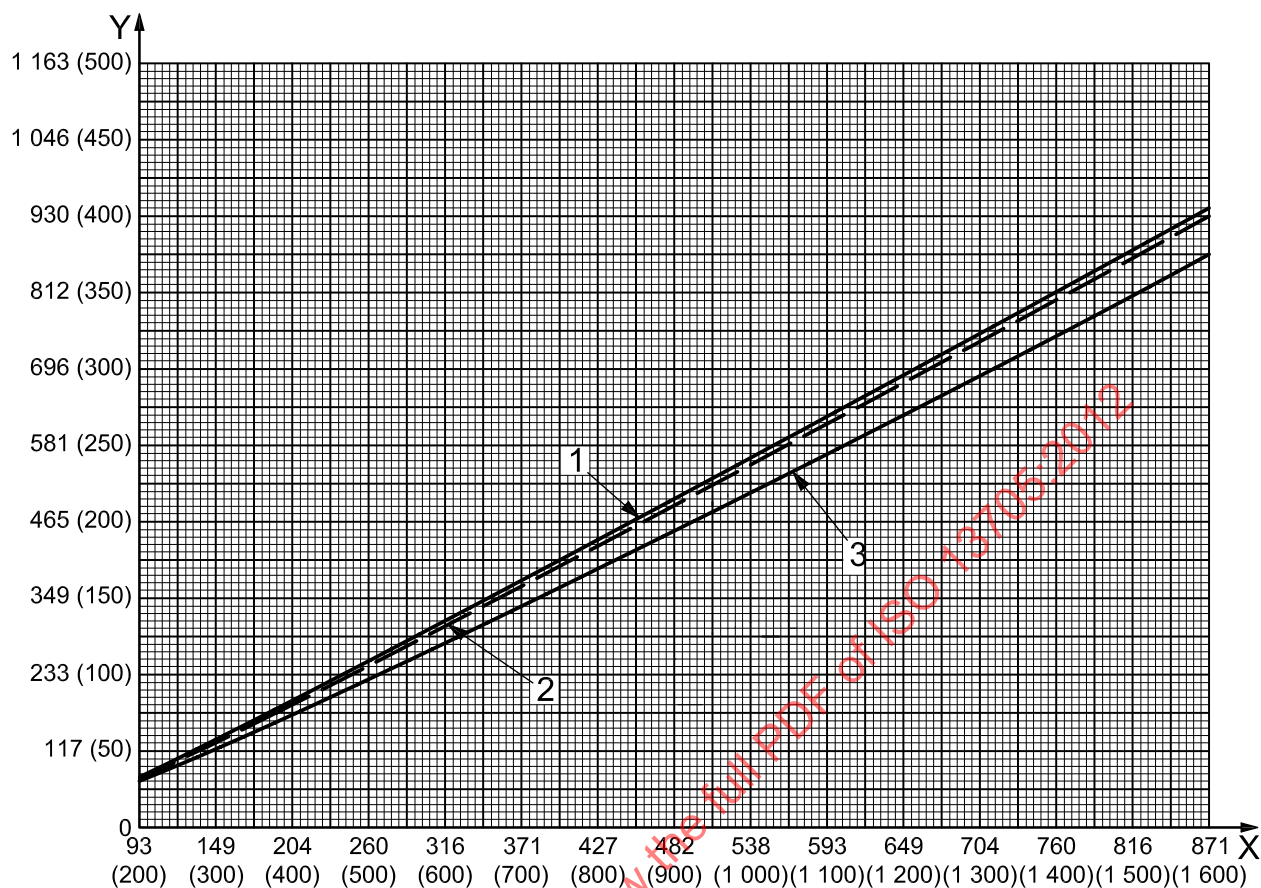
$$h_s = \sum \text{massic heat content at } T_e = \text{_____ kJ/kg (Btu/lb) of fuel}$$

**Key**

- X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)
 Y enthalpy above 15 °C, kJ/kg (60 °F)
 1 water vapour
 2 carbon monoxide
 3 carbon dioxide
 4 sulfur dioxide

NOTE Figure G.6 is taken from Reference [38], pp. 14-23.

Figure G.6 — Enthalpy of H₂O, CO, CO₂ and SO₂

**Key**

X temperature, expressed in degrees Celsius (degrees Fahrenheit)

Y enthalpy above 15 °C, kJ/kg (60 °F)

1 nitrogen

2 air

3 oxygen

NOTE Figure G.7 is taken from Reference [38], pp. 14-23.

Figure G.7 — Enthalpy of air, O₂ and N₂

G.6 Sample work sheets for an oil-fired heater with natural draught

NOTE See G.3.2.2.

**LOWER MASSIC HEAT VALUE
(LIQUID FUELS) WORK SHEET**
SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 1

Higher massic heat value (h_H), from calorimeter test, in kJ/kg of fuel: 42 566Carbon-hydrogen ratio (CHR), from analysis: 8,065

Impurities, from analysis, mass fraction (%)

Water vapour: _____

Ash: _____

Sulfur: 1,80

Sodium: _____

Other: 0,95Total (Z): 2,75% hydrogen = $(100 - Z) / (CHR + 1,0)$ 10,73 $h_L = h_H - (9 \times 2\,464,9 \times \% \text{ hydrogen} / 100)$, in kJ/kg of fuel: 40 186% carbon = $100 - (\% \text{ hydrogen} + Z)$: 86,52

INSTRUCTIONS

Calculate the values for % hydrogen, lower massic heat value (h_L) and % carbon. Enter these values in the appropriate columns of the combustion work sheet.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
SI units
Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 2

Fuel component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3 (1 × 2)	Column 4	Column 5 (3 × 4)
	Volume fraction %	Relative molecular mass	Total mass kg	Net heating value kJ/kg	Heating value kJ
Carbon, C		12,0	0,865 2	—	
Hydrogen, H ₂		2,016	0,107 2	120 000	
Oxygen, O ₂		32,0		—	
Nitrogen, N ₂		28,0		—	
Carbon monoxide, CO		28,0		10 100	
Carbon dioxide, CO ₂		44,0		—	
Methane, CH ₄		16,0		50 000	
Ethane, C ₂ H ₆		30,1		47 490	
Ethylene, C ₂ H ₄		28,1		47 190	
Acetylene, C ₂ H ₂		26,0		48 240	
Propane, C ₃ H ₈		44,1		46 360	
Propylene, C ₃ H ₆		42,1		45 800	
Butane, C ₄ H ₁₀		58,1		45 750	
Butylene, C ₄ H ₈		56,1		45 170	
Pentane, C ₅ H ₁₂		72,1		45 360	
Hexane, C ₆ H ₁₄		86,2		45 100	
Benzene, C ₆ H ₆		78,1		40 170	
Methanol, CH ₃ OH		32,0		19 960	
Ammonia, NH ₃		17,0		18 600	
Sulfur, S		32,1	0,018 0	—	
Hydrogen sulfide, H ₂ S		34,1		15 240	
Water, H ₂ O		18,0		—	
Inerts			0,009 5		
Total			1,000 0		
Total per kg of fuel			1,000 0		

INSTRUCTIONS

If composition is expressed as volume fraction (%), insert in column 1; if composition is expressed as mass fraction (%), insert in column 3. Add all of the columns on the "Total" line and divide all of the column totals by the column 3 total to obtain the values for the "Total per kg of fuel" line. The excess air and relative humidity work sheet and the stack loss work sheet use the totals per kg of fuel to calculate stack loss; for example, if one of the work sheets asked for "kg of CO₂," the value would be taken from the "Total per kg of fuel" line in column 9.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
SI units
Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Column 6	Column 7 (3 × 6)	Column 8 ^a	Column 9 (3 × 8)	Column 10	Column 11 (3 × 10)	Column 12	Column 13 (3 × 12)
Air required kg of air per kg	Air required kg	CO₂ formed kg of CO ₂ per kg	CO₂ formed kg	H₂O formed kg of H ₂ O per kg	H₂O formed kg	N₂ formed kg of N ₂ per kg	N₂ formed kg
11,51	9,958	3,66	3,167	—		8,85	7,657
34,29	3,679	—	—	8,94	0,959	26,36	2,828
– 4,32		—		—		–3,32	
—		—		—		1,00	
2,47		1,57		—		1,90	
—		1,00		—		—	
17,24		2,74		2,25		13,25	
16,09		2,93		1,80		12,37	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
13,29		3,38		0,69		10,21	
15,68		2,99		1,63		12,05	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,46		3,03		1,55		11,88	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,33		3,05		1,50		11,78	
15,24		3,06		1,46		11,71	
13,27		3,38		0,69		10,20	
6,48		1,38		1,13		4,98	
6,10		—		1,59		5,51	
4,31	0,078	2,00	0,036	—		3,31	0,060
6,08		1,88		0,53		4,68	
—		—		1,00		—	
	13,715		3,203		0,959		10,545
	13,715		3,203		0,959		10,545

^a SO₂ shall be included in the CO₂ column. Although this is inaccurate, the usually small quantities do not affect any of the final results.

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET ^a
SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 2

Atomizing steam: 0,50 kg per kg of fuel (assumed or measured)

CORRECTION FOR RELATIVE HUMIDITY (RH)

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Moisture in air} &= \frac{P_{\text{vapour}}}{1013,3} \times \frac{RH}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \frac{34,9}{1013,3} \times \frac{50}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \underline{0,0107} \text{ kg of moisture per kg of air}
 \end{aligned} \tag{a}$$

where

P_{vapour} = vapour pressure of water at the ambient temperature, in mbar absolute (from steam tables).

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{kg of wet air per kg of fuel} &= \frac{\text{air required}}{1 - \text{moisture in air}} \\
 \text{required} &= \frac{13,715 (7)}{1 - 0,0107} \\
 &= \underline{13,86}
 \end{aligned} \tag{b}$$

kg of moisture per kg of fuel = kg of wet air per kg of fuel required – air required

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \underline{13,86} (b) - \underline{13,715} (7) \\
 &= \underline{0,145}
 \end{aligned} \tag{c}$$

kg of H₂O per kg of fuel = H₂O formed + kg of moisture per kg of fuel + atomizing steam.

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \underline{0,959} (11) + \underline{0,145} (c) + \underline{0,50} \\
 &= \underline{1,604}
 \end{aligned} \tag{d}$$

CORRECTION FOR EXCESS AIR ^b

kg of excess air per kg of fuel

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times \% \text{O}_2 \left(\frac{\text{N}_2 \text{ formed}}{28} + \frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ formed}}{44} + \frac{\text{H}_2\text{O formed}}{18} \right))}{20,95 - \% \text{O}_2 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\text{kg of H}_2\text{O}}{\text{kg of air required}} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times 5,0 \left(\frac{10,545}{28} + \frac{3,203(9)}{44} + \frac{1,604(d)}{18} \right))}{20,95 - 5,0 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{0,145(c)}{13,715(7)} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \underline{4,896}
 \end{aligned} \tag{e}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Percent excess air} &= \frac{\text{kg of excess air per kg of fuel}}{\text{air required}} \times 100 \\
 &= \frac{4,896(e)}{13,715(7)} \times 100 \\
 &= \underline{35,7}
 \end{aligned} \tag{f}$$

**EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET**
SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Total kg of H₂O per kg of fuel (corrected for excess air)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left(\frac{\text{percent excess air}}{100} \times \text{kg of moisture per kg fuel} \right) + \text{kg of H}_2\text{O per kg fuel} \\
 &= \left[\frac{35,7(f)}{100} \times 0,145(c) \right] + 1,604(d) \\
 &= \underline{1,656}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{g}$$

^a All values used in the calculations above shall be on a "per kg of fuel" basis. Numbers in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the "Total per kg fuel" line of the combustion work sheet, and letters in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the corresponding lines of this work sheet.

^b If oxygen samples are extracted on a dry basis, a value of zero shall be inserted for line (e) where a value is required from lines (c) and (d). If oxygen samples are extracted on a wet basis, the appropriate calculated value shall be inserted.

STACK LOSS WORK SHEET
SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 1

Exit flue gas temperature, T_e : 232 °C

Component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
	Component formed kg per kg of fuel	Enthalpy at T kJ/kg formed	Massic heat content kJ/kg of fuel
Carbon dioxide	3,203	200	641
Water vapour	1,656	407	674
Nitrogen	10,545	227	2 391
Excess air	4,896	221	1 081
Total	20,300	—	4 788

INSTRUCTIONS

In column 1 above, insert the values from the “Total per kg of fuel” line of the combustion work sheet for carbon dioxide (column 9) and nitrogen (column 13). Insert the value from line (e) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for air, and insert the value from line (g) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for water vapour.

In column 2 above, insert the enthalpy values from Figures G.6 and G.7 for each flue gas component.

In column 3 above, for each component insert the product of the value from column 1 and the value from column 2. This is the heat content at the exit gas temperature.

Total the values in column 3 to obtain the massic heat loss to the stack, h_s .

Therefore,

$$h_s = \sum \text{heat content at } T_e = 4\,788 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

**LOWER MASSIC HEAT VALUE
(LIQUID FUELS) WORK SHEET
USC units**

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 1

Higher massic heat value (h_H), from calorimeter test, in Btu/lb of fuel: 18 300Carbon-hydrogen ratio (CHR), from analysis: 8,065

Impurities, from analysis, mass fraction (%)

Water vapour: _____

Ash: _____

Sulfur: 1,80

Sodium: _____

Other: 0,95Total (Z): 2,75% hydrogen = $(100 - Z)/(CHR + 1,0)$ 10,73 $h_L = h_H - (9 \times 1\,059,7 \times \% \text{ hydrogen}/100)$, in Btu/lb of fuel: 17 277% carbon = $100 - (\% \text{ hydrogen} + Z)$: 86,52**INSTRUCTIONS**

Calculate the values for % hydrogen, lower massic heat value (h_L) and % carbon. Enter these values in the appropriate columns of the combustion work sheet.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
USC units
Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 2

Fuel component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3 (1 × 2)	Column 4	Column 5 (3 × 4)
	Volume fraction %	Relative molecular mass	Total mass pounds	Net heating value British thermal units per pound	Heating value British thermal units
Carbon, C		12,0	0,865 2	—	
Hydrogen, H ₂		2,016	0,107 3	51 600	
Oxygen, O ₂		32,0		—	
Nitrogen, N ₂		28,0		—	
Carbon monoxide, CO		28,0		4 345	
Carbon dioxide, CO ₂		44,0		—	
Methane, CH ₄		16,0		21 500	
Ethane, C ₂ H ₆		30,1		20 420	
Ethylene, C ₂ H ₄		28,1		20 290	
Acetylene, C ₂ H ₂		26,0		20 740	
Propane, C ₃ H ₈		44,1		19 930	
Propylene, C ₃ H ₆		42,1		19 690	
Butane, C ₄ H ₁₀		58,1		19 670	
Butylene, C ₄ H ₈		56,1		19 420	
Pentane, C ₅ H ₁₂		72,1		19 500	
Hexane, C ₆ H ₁₄		86,2		19 390	
Benzene, C ₆ H ₆		78,1		17 270	
Methanol, CH ₃ OH		32,0		8 580	
Ammonia, NH ₃		17,0		8 000	
Sulfur, S		32,1	0,018 0	—	
Hydrogen sulfide, H ₂ S		34,1		6 550	
Water, H ₂ O		18,0		—	
Inerts			0,009 5		
Total			1,000 0		
Total per pound of fuel			1,000 0		

INSTRUCTIONS

If composition is expressed as volume %, insert in column 1; if composition is expressed as mass %, insert in column 3. Add all of the columns on the "Total" line and divide all of the column totals by the column 3 total to obtain the values for the "Total per pound of fuel" line. The excess air and relative humidity work sheet and the stack loss work sheet use the totals per pound of fuel to calculate stack loss; for example, if one of the work sheets asked for "pounds of CO₂", the value would be taken from the "Total per pound of fuel" line in column 9.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
USC units
Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Column 6	Column 7 (3 × 6)	Column 8 ^a	Column 9 (3 × 8)	Column 10	Column 11 (3 × 10)	Column 12	Column 13 (3 × 12)
Air required pounds of air per pound	Air required pounds	CO ₂ formed pounds of CO ₂ per pound	CO ₂ formed pounds	H ₂ O formed pounds of H ₂ O per pound	H ₂ O formed pounds	N ₂ formed pounds of N ₂ per pound	N ₂ formed pounds
11,51	9,958	3,66	3,167	—		8,85	7,657
34,29	3,679	—	—	8,94	0,959	26,36	2,828
–4,32		—		—		–3,32	
—		—		—		1,00	
2,47		1,57		—		1,90	
—		1,00		—		—	
17,24		2,74		2,25		13,25	
16,09		2,93		1,80		12,37	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
13,29		3,38		0,69		10,21	
15,68		2,99		1,63		12,05	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,46		3,03		1,55		11,88	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,33		3,05		1,50		11,78	
15,24		3,06		1,46		11,71	
13,27		3,38		0,69		10,20	
6,48		1,38		1,13		4,98	
6,10		—		1,59		5,51	
4,31	0,078	2,00	0,036	—		3,31	0,060
6,08		1,88		0,53		4,68	
—		—		1,00		—	
	13,715		3,203		0,959		10,545
	13,715		3,203		0,959		10,545

^a SO₂ shall be included in the CO₂ column. Although this is inaccurate, the usually small quantities do not affect any of the final results.

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET ^a
USC units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2
 Date of report: _____
 Page 1 of 2

Atomizing steam: 0,50 pounds per pound of fuel (assumed or measured)

CORRECTION FOR RELATIVE HUMIDITY (RH)

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Moisture in air} &= \frac{P_{\text{vapour}}}{14,696} \times \frac{RH}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \frac{0,5068}{14,696} \times \frac{50}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \underline{0,0107} \text{ pounds of moisture per pounds of air}
 \end{aligned} \tag{a}$$

where

P_{vapour} = vapour pressure of water at the ambient temperature, in pounds per square inch absolute (from steam tables).

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{\text{air required}}{1 - \text{moisture in air}} \\
 \text{Pounds of wet air per pound of fuel required} &= \frac{13,715 \text{ (c)}}{1 - 0,0107 \text{ (a)}} \\
 &= \underline{13,86}
 \end{aligned} \tag{b}$$

Pounds of moisture per pound of fuel = pounds of wet air per pound of fuel required – air required

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 13,86 \text{ (b)} - 13,715 \text{ (7)} \\
 &= \underline{0,145}
 \end{aligned} \tag{c}$$

Pounds of H₂O per pound of fuel = H₂O formed + pounds of moisture per pound of fuel + atomizing steam.

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 0,959 \text{ (11)} + 0,145 \text{ (c)} + 0,50 \\
 &= \underline{1,604}
 \end{aligned} \tag{d}$$

CORRECTION FOR EXCESS AIR ^b

Pounds of excess air per pound of fuel

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times \% \text{O}_2 \left(\frac{\text{N}_2 \text{ formed}}{28} + \frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ formed}}{44} + \frac{\text{H}_2\text{O formed}}{18} \right))}{20,95 - \% \text{O}_2 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\text{pounds of H}_2\text{O}}{\text{pounds of air required}} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \frac{(25,85 \times 5,0 \left(\frac{10,545(13)}{28} + \frac{3,203(9)}{44} + \frac{1,604(d)}{18} \right))}{20,95 - 5,0 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{0,145(c)}{13,715(7)} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \underline{4,896}
 \end{aligned} \tag{e}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Percent excess air} &= \frac{\text{pounds of excess air per pound of fuel}}{\text{air required}} \times 100 \\
 &= \frac{4,896(e)}{13,175(7)} \times 100 \\
 &= \underline{35,7}
 \end{aligned} \tag{f}$$

**EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET**
USC units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Total pounds of H₂O per pound of fuel (corrected for excess air)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left(\frac{\text{percent excess air}}{100} \times \text{pounds of moisture per pound fuel} \right) + \text{pounds of H}_2\text{O per pound fuel} \\
 &= \left[\frac{35,7(f)}{100} \times 0,145(c) \right] + 1,604(d) \\
 &= \underline{1,656}
 \end{aligned}$$

^a All values used in the calculations above shall be on a "per pound fuel" basis. Numbers in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the "Total per pound fuel" line of the combustion work sheet, and letters in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the corresponding lines of this work sheet.

^b If oxygen samples are extracted on a dry basis, a value of zero shall be inserted for line (e) where a value is required from lines (c) and (d). If oxygen samples are extracted on a wet basis, the appropriate calculated value shall be inserted.

STACK LOSS WORK SHEET
USC units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.2

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 1

Exit flue gas temperature, T_e : 450 °F

Component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
	Component formed pounds per pound of fuel	Enthalpy at T British thermal units per pound formed	Heat content British thermal units per pound of fuel
Carbon dioxide	3,203	86	275,46
Water vapour	1,656	175	289,80
Nitrogen	10,545	97,5	1 028,14
Air	4,896	95	465,12
Total	20,300	—	2 058,52

INSTRUCTIONS

In column 1 above, insert the values from the "Total per lb of fuel" line of the combustion work sheet for carbon dioxide (column 9) and nitrogen (column 13). Insert the value from line (e) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for air, and insert the value from line (g) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for water vapour.

In column 2 above, insert the enthalpy values from Figures G.6 and G.7 for each flue gas component.

In column 3 above, for each component insert the product of the value from column 1 and the value from column 2. This is the heat content at the exit gas temperature.

Total the values in column 3 to obtain the massic heat loss to the stack, h_s .

Therefore,

$$h_s = \sum \text{heat content at } T_e = 2\,058,5 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

G.7 Sample work sheets for a gas-fired heater with preheated combustion air from an internal heat source

NOTE See G.3.2.3.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 2

Fuel component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3 (1 × 2)	Column 4	Column 5 (3 × 4)
	Volume fraction %	Relative molecular mass	Total mass kg	Net heating value kJ/kg	Heating value kJ
Carbon, C		12,0		—	
Hydrogen, H ₂	0,038 2	2,016	0,077	120 000	9 240
Oxygen, O ₂		32,0		—	
Nitrogen, N ₂	0,099 6	28,0	2,789	—	—
Carbon monoxide, CO		28,0		10 100	
Carbon dioxide, CO ₂		44,0		—	
Methane, CH ₄	0,754 1	16,0	12,066	50 000	603 300
Ethane, C ₂ H ₆	0,023 3	30,1	0,701	47 490	33 290
Ethylene, C ₂ H ₄	0,050 8	28,1	1,428	47 190	67 387
Acetylene, C ₂ H ₂		26,0		48 240	
Propane, C ₃ H ₈	0,015 4	44,1	0,679	46 360	31 478
Propylene, C ₃ H ₆	0,018 6	42,1	0,783	45 800	35 861
Butane, C ₄ H ₁₀		58,1		45 750	
Butylene, C ₄ H ₈		56,1		45 170	
Pentane, C ₅ H ₁₂		72,1		45 360	
Hexane, C ₆ H ₁₄		86,2		45 100	
Benzene, C ₆ H ₆		78,1		40 170	
Methanol, CH ₃ OH		32,0		19 960	
Ammonia, NH ₃		17,0		18 600	
Sulfur, S		32,1		—	
Hydrogen sulfide, H ₂ S		34,1		15 240	
Water, H ₂ O		18,0		—	
Total	1,000 0		18,523		780 556
Total per kg of fuel	1,000 0		1,000		42 140

INSTRUCTIONS

If composition is expressed as volume fraction (%), insert in column 1; if composition is expressed as mass fraction (%), insert in column 3. Total all of the columns on the "Total" line and divide all of the column totals by the column 3 total to obtain the values for the "Total per kg of fuel" line. The excess air and relative humidity work sheet and the stack loss work sheet use the totals per kg fuel to calculate stack loss; for example, if one of the work sheets asked for "kg of CO₂", the value would be taken from the "Total per kg of fuel" line in column 9.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Column 6	Column 7 (3 × 6)	Column 8 ^a	Column 9 (3 × 8)	Column 10	Column 11 (3 × 10)	Column 12	Column 13 (3 × 12)
Air required kg of air per kg	Air required kg	CO₂ formed kg of CO ₂ per kg	CO₂ formed kg	H₂O formed kg of H ₂ O per kg	H₂O formed kg	N₂ formed kg of N ₂ per kg	N₂ formed kg
11,51		3,66		—		8,85	
34,29	2,640	—		8,94	0,688	26,36	2,030
—4,32		—		—		—3,32	
—	—	—		—		1,00	2,789
2,47		1,57		—		1,90	
—		1,00		—		—	
17,24	208,018	2,74	33,061	2,25	27,149	13,25	159,875
16,09	11,279	2,93	2,054	1,80	1,262	12,37	8,671
14,79	21,120	3,14	4,484	1,28	1,828	11,36	10,222
13,29		3,38		0,69		10,21	
15,68	10,647	2,99	2,030	1,63	1,107	12,05	8,182
14,79	11,581	3,14	2,459	1,28	1,002	11,36	8,895
15,46		3,03		1,55		11,88	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,33		3,05		1,50		11,78	
15,24		3,06		1,46		11,71	
13,27		3,38		0,69		10,20	
6,48		1,38		1,13		4,98	
6,10		—		1,59		5,51	
4,31		2,00		—		3,31	
6,08		1,88		0,53		4,68	
—		—		1,00		—	
	265,285		44,088		33,036		206,664
	14,322		2,380		1,784		11,157

^a SO₂ shall be included in the CO₂ column. Although this is inaccurate, the usually small quantities do not affect any of the final results.

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET ^a
 SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 2

Atomizing steam: 0 kg per kg of fuel (assumed or measured)**CORRECTION FOR RELATIVE HUMIDITY (RH)**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Moisture in air} &= \frac{P_{\text{vapour}}}{1013,3} + \frac{RH}{100} + \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \frac{4,87}{1013,3} + \frac{50}{100} + \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \underline{0,0015} \text{ kg of moisture per kg of air}
 \end{aligned} \tag{a}$$

where

 P_{vapour} = vapour pressure of water at the ambient temperature, in mbar absolute (from steam tables).

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{kg of wet air per kg of fuel required} &= \frac{\text{air required}}{1 - \text{moisture in air}} \\
 &= \frac{14,322(7)}{1 - 0,0015(a)} \\
 &= \underline{14,344}
 \end{aligned} \tag{b}$$

kg of moisture per kg of fuel = kg of wet air per kg of fuel required – air required

$$= \underline{14,344} (b) - \underline{14,322} (7) = \underline{0,022} \tag{c}$$

kg of H₂O per kg of fuel = H₂O formed + kg of moisture per kg of fuel + atomizing steam

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \underline{1,784} (11) + \underline{0,022} (c) + \underline{0} \\
 &= \underline{1,806}
 \end{aligned} \tag{d}$$

CORRECTION FOR EXCESS AIR ^b

kg of excess air per kg of fuel

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times \% \text{O}_2 \left(\frac{\text{N}_2 \text{ formed}}{28} + \frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ formed}}{44} + \frac{\text{H}_2\text{O formed}}{18} \right))}{20,95 - \% \text{O}_2 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\text{kg of H}_2\text{O}}{\text{kg of air required}} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times 3,5 \left(\frac{11,157(13)}{28} + \frac{2,380(9)}{44} + \frac{1,806(d)}{18} \right))}{20,95 - 3,5 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{0,022(c)}{14,322(7)} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \underline{3,201}
 \end{aligned} \tag{e}$$

$$= \frac{\text{kg of excess air per kg of fuel}}{\text{air required}} \times 100$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Percent excess air} &= \frac{3,201(e)}{14,322(7)} \times 100 \\
 &= \underline{22,35}
 \end{aligned} \tag{f}$$

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY WORK SHEET

SI units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Total kg of H₂O per kg of fuel (corrected for excess air)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left(\frac{\text{percent excess air}}{100} \times \text{kg of moisture per kg fuel} \right) + \text{kg of H}_2\text{O per kg fuel} \\
 &= \left[\frac{22,35 \text{ (f)}}{100} \times 0,022 \text{ (c)} \right] + 1,806 \text{ (d)} \\
 &= \underline{1,811}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{g}$$

^a All values used in the calculations above shall be on a "per kg of fuel" basis. Numbers in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the "Total per kg fuel" line of the combustion work sheet, and letters in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the corresponding lines of this work sheet.

^b If oxygen samples are extracted on a dry basis, a value of zero shall be inserted for line (e) where a value is required from lines (c) and (d). If oxygen samples are extracted on a wet basis, the appropriate calculated value shall be inserted.

STACK LOSS WORK SHEET
SI Units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 1

Exit flue gas temperature, T_e : 148,9 °C

Component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
	Component formed kg per kg of fuel	Enthalpy at T kJ/kg formed	Massic heat content KJ/kg of fuel
Carbon dioxide	2,380	116,3	276,8
Water vapour	1,811	244,2	442,3
Nitrogen	11,157	139,6	1 557,1
Excess air	3,201	133,7	471,3
Total	18,549	—	2 747,4

INSTRUCTIONS

In column 1 above, insert the values from the "Total per kg of fuel" line of the combustion work sheet for carbon dioxide (column 9) and nitrogen (column 13). Insert the value from line (e) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for air, and insert the value from line (g) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for water vapour.

In column 2 above, insert the enthalpy values from Figures G.6 and G.7 for each flue gas component.

In column 3 above, for each component insert the product of the value from column 1 and the value from column 2. This is the heat content at the exit gas temperature.

Total the values in column 3 to obtain the massic heat loss to the stack, h_s .

Therefore,

$$h_s = \sum \text{heat content at } T_e = 2\,747,4 \text{ kJ/kg of fuel}$$

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
USC units
Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 2

Fuel component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3 (1 × 2)	Column 4	Column 5 (3 × 4)
	Volume fraction %	Relative molecular mass	Total mass pounds	Net heating value British thermal units per pound	Heating value British thermal units
Carbon, C		12,0		—	
Hydrogen, H ₂	0,038 2	2,016	0,077 0	51 600	3 973
Oxygen, O ₂		32,0		—	
Nitrogen, N ₂	0,099 6	28,0	2,789	—	—
Carbon monoxide, CO		28,0		4 345	
Carbon dioxide, CO ₂		44,0		—	
Methane, CH ₄	0,754 1	16,0	12,066	21 500	259 410
Ethane, C ₂ H ₆	0,023 3	30,1	0,701	20 420	14 321
Ethylene, C ₂ H ₄	0,050 8	28,1	1,428	20 290	28 964
Acetylene, C ₂ H ₂		26,0		20 740	
Propane, C ₃ H ₈	0,015 4	44,1	0,679	19 930	13 535
Propylene, C ₃ H ₆	0,018 6	42,1	0,783	19 690	15 418
Butane, C ₄ H ₁₀		58,1		19 670	
Butylene, C ₄ H ₈		56,1		19 420	
Pentane, C ₅ H ₁₂		72,1		19 500	
Hexane, C ₆ H ₁₄		86,2		19 390	
Benzene, C ₆ H ₆		78,1		17 270	
Methanol, CH ₃ OH		32,0		8 580	
Ammonia, NH ₃		17,0		8 000	
Sulfur, S		32,1		—	
Hydrogen sulfide, H ₂ S		34,1		6 550	
Water, H ₂ O		18,0		—	
Total	1,000 0		18,523		335 623
Total per pound of fuel	1,000 0		1,000		18 120

INSTRUCTIONS

If composition is expressed as volume %, insert in column 1; if composition is expressed as mass %, insert in column 3. Total all of the columns on the "Total" line and divide all of the column totals by the column 3 total to obtain the values for the "Total per pound of fuel" line. The excess air and relative humidity work sheet and the stack loss work sheet use the totals per pound fuel to calculate stack loss; for example, if one of the work sheets asked for "pounds of CO₂", the value would be taken from the "Total per pound of fuel" line in column 9.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET
USC units
Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Column 6	Column 7 (3 × 6)	Column 8 ^a	Column 9 (3 × 8)	Column 10	Column 11 (3 × 10)	Column 12	Column 13 (3 × 12)
Air required pounds of air per pound	Air required pounds	CO ₂ formed pounds of CO ₂ per pound	CO ₂ formed pounds	H ₂ O formed pounds of H ₂ O per pound	H ₂ O formed pounds	N ₂ formed pounds of N ₂ per pound	N ₂ formed pounds
11,51		3,66		—		8,85	
34,29	2,640	—		8,94	0,688	26,36	2,030
−4,32		—		—		−3,32	
—	—	—		—		1,00	2,789
2,47		1,57		—		1,90	
—		1,00		—		—	
17,24	208,018	2,74	33,061	2,25	27,149	13,25	159,875
16,09	11,279	2,93	2,054	1,80	1,262	12,37	8,671
14,79	21,120	3,14	4,484	1,28	1,828	11,36	16,222
15,68		2,99		1,63		10,21	
14,79	10,044	3,14	2,132	1,28	0,869	12,05	8,182
13,29	10,407	3,38	2,647	0,69	0,540	11,36	8,895
15,46		3,03		1,55		11,88	
14,79		3,14		1,28		11,36	
15,33		3,05		1,50		11,78	
15,24		3,06		1,46		11,71	
13,27		3,38		0,69		10,20	
6,48		1,38		1,13		4,98	
6,10		—		1,59		5,51	
4,31		2,00		—		3,31	
6,08		1,88		0,53		4,68	
—		—		1,00		—	
	263,500		44,377		32,336		206,664 3
	14,226		2,396		1,746		11,157

^a SO₂ shall be included in the CO₂ column. Although this is inaccurate, the usually small quantities do not affect any of the final results.

EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET ^a
 USC units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 2

Atomizing steam: 0 pounds per pound of fuel (assumed or measured)**CORRECTION FOR RELATIVE HUMIDITY (RH)**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Moisture in air} &= \frac{P_{\text{vapour}}}{14,696} \times \frac{RH}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \frac{0,0707}{14,696} \times \frac{50}{100} \times \frac{18}{28,85} \\
 &= \underline{0,0015} \text{ pound of moisture per pound of air}
 \end{aligned} \tag{a}$$

where

 P_{vapour} = vapour pressure of water at the ambient temperature, in pounds per square inch absolute (from steam tables).

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Pounds of wet air per pound of fuel required} &= \frac{\text{air required}}{1 - \text{moisture in air}} \\
 &= \frac{14,322(7)}{1 - 0,015(a)} \\
 &= \underline{14,344}
 \end{aligned} \tag{b}$$

Pounds of moisture per pound of fuel = pounds of wet air per pound of fuel required – air required

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \underline{14,344} (b) - \underline{14,322} (7) \\
 &= \underline{0,022}
 \end{aligned} \tag{c}$$

Pounds of H₂O per pound of fuel = H₂O formed + pounds of moisture per pound of fuel + atomizing steam

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \underline{1,784} (11) + \underline{0,022} (c) + \underline{0} \\
 &= \underline{1,806}
 \end{aligned} \tag{d}$$

CORRECTION FOR EXCESS AIR^b

Pounds of excess air per pounds of fuel

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times \% \text{O}_2 \left(\frac{\text{N}_2 \text{ formed}}{28} + \frac{\text{CO}_2 \text{ formed}}{44} + \frac{\text{H}_2\text{O formed}}{18} \right))}{20,95 - \% \text{O}_2 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{\text{pounds of H}_2\text{O}}{\text{pounds of air required}} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \frac{(28,85 \times 3,5 \left(\frac{11,157(13)}{28} + \frac{2,380(9)}{44} + \frac{1,806(d)}{18} \right))}{20,95 - 3,5 \left[\left(1,6028 \times \frac{0,022(c)}{14,322(7)} \right) + 1 \right]} \\
 &= \underline{3,201}
 \end{aligned} \tag{e}$$

$$= \frac{\text{pounds of excess air per pound of fuel}}{\text{air required}} \times 100$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Percent excess air} &= \frac{3,201(e)}{14,322(7)} \times 100 \\
 &= \underline{22,35}
 \end{aligned} \tag{f}$$

**EXCESS AIR AND RELATIVE HUMIDITY
WORK SHEET**
USC units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 2 of 2

Total pounds of H₂O per pound of fuel (corrected for excess air)

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \left(\frac{\text{percent excess air}}{100} \times \text{pounds of moisture per pound of fuel} \right) + \text{pounds of H}_2\text{O per pound of fuel} \\
 &= \left[\frac{22,35(f)}{100} \times 0,022(c) \right] + 1,806(d) \\
 &= \underline{1,811}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{g}$$

^a All values used in the calculations above shall be on a "per pound fuel" basis. Numbers in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the "Total per pound fuel" line of the combustion work sheet, and letters in parentheses indicate values to be taken from the corresponding lines of this work sheet.

^b If oxygen samples are extracted on a dry basis, a value of zero shall be inserted for line (e) where a value is required from lines (c) and (d). If oxygen samples are extracted on a wet basis, the appropriate calculated value shall be inserted.

STACK LOSS WORK SHEET
USC units

Job No.: Sample Work Sheet for G.3.2.3

Date of report: _____

Page 1 of 1

Exit flue gas temperature, T_e : 300 °F

Component	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
	Component formed pounds per pound of fuel	Enthalpy at T British thermal units per pound formed	Heat content British thermal units per pound of fuel
Carbon dioxide	2,380	50	119,00
Water vapour	1,811	105	190,16
Nitrogen	11,157	60	669,42
Air	3,201	57,5	202,61
Total	18,549	—	1 181,19

INSTRUCTIONS

In column 1 above, insert the values from the "Total per lb of fuel" line of the combustion work sheet for carbon dioxide (column 9) and nitrogen (column 13). Insert the value from line (e) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for air, and insert the value from line (g) of the excess air and relative humidity work sheet for water vapour.

In column 2 above, insert the enthalpy values from Figures G.6 and G.7 for each flue gas component.

In column 3 above, for each component, insert the product of the value from column 1 and the value from column 2. This is the heat content at the exit gas temperature.

Total the values in column 3 to obtain the massic heat loss to the stack, h_s .

Therefore,

$$h_s = \sum \text{heat content at } T_e = 1181,2 \text{ Btu/lb of fuel}$$

G.8 Sample work sheets for a gas-fired heater with preheated combustion air from an external heat source

NOTE See G.3.2.4.

COMBUSTION WORK SHEET

The Combustion work sheet for this example is identical to the Combustion work sheet in Clause G.7 and has not been duplicated here.

STANDARDSISO.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ISO 13705:2012